Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes .............................................. 12

**Ezekiel** ........................................................................... 12

  - Introduction to Ezekiel .................................................. 13
  - Ezekiel 1 ................................................................. 15
  - Ezekiel 2 ................................................................. 45
  - Ezekiel 3 ................................................................. 56
  - Ezekiel 4 ................................................................. 84
  - Ezekiel 5 ................................................................. 102
  - Ezekiel 6 ................................................................. 120
  - Ezekiel 7 ................................................................. 136
  - Ezekiel 8 ................................................................. 164
  - Ezekiel 9 ................................................................. 183
  - Ezekiel 10 ............................................................... 195
  - Ezekiel 11 ............................................................... 218
  - Ezekiel 12 ............................................................... 245
  - Ezekiel 13 ............................................................... 274
  - Ezekiel 14 ............................................................... 299
  - Ezekiel 15 ............................................................... 324
  - Ezekiel 16 ............................................................... 333
  - Ezekiel 17 ............................................................... 397
  - Ezekiel 18 ............................................................... 422
  - Ezekiel 19 ............................................................... 455
  - Ezekiel 20 ............................................................... 470
  - Ezekiel 21 ............................................................... 520
  - Ezekiel 22 ............................................................... 554
  - Ezekiel 23 ............................................................... 587
  - Ezekiel 24 ............................................................... 637
  - Ezekiel 25 ............................................................... 666
  - Ezekiel 26 ............................................................... 684
  - Ezekiel 27 ............................................................... 707
  - Ezekiel 28 ............................................................... 744
  - Ezekiel 29 ............................................................... 772
  - Ezekiel 30 ............................................................... 795
  - Ezekiel 31 ............................................................... 822
  - Ezekiel 32 ............................................................... 841
  - Ezekiel 33 ............................................................... 875
  - Ezekiel 34 ............................................................... 909
  - Ezekiel 35 ............................................................... 942
  - Ezekiel 36 ............................................................... 958
  - Ezekiel 37 ............................................................... 997
  - Ezekiel 38 ............................................................. 1002
  - Ezekiel 39 ............................................................. 1050
  - Ezekiel 40 ............................................................. 1081
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 41</td>
<td>1131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 42</td>
<td>1158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 43</td>
<td>1179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 44</td>
<td>1207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 45</td>
<td>1240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 46</td>
<td>1266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 47</td>
<td>1291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel 48</td>
<td>1315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</strong></td>
<td>1351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract Nouns</td>
<td>1352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active or Passive</td>
<td>1354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apostrophe</td>
<td>1357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information</td>
<td>1359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background Information</td>
<td>1362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Distance</td>
<td>1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Volume</td>
<td>1368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Weight</td>
<td>1372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doublet</td>
<td>1374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellipsis</td>
<td>1376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphemism</td>
<td>1378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclamations</td>
<td>1380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'</td>
<td>1382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First, Second or Third Person</td>
<td>1384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forms of You</td>
<td>1386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractions</td>
<td>1387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Months</td>
<td>1390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Translate Names</td>
<td>1393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperbole</td>
<td>1397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetical Situations</td>
<td>1401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiom</td>
<td>1404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inclusive and Exclusive &quot;We&quot;</td>
<td>1406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of a New Event</td>
<td>1408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irony</td>
<td>1411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litotes</td>
<td>1414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merism</td>
<td>1416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaphor</td>
<td>1418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metonymy</td>
<td>1424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Adjectives</td>
<td>1426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>1428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of Events</td>
<td>1431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal Numbers</td>
<td>1433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parables</td>
<td>1435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallelism</td>
<td>1437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personification</td>
<td>1440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>1442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>1444</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reflexive Pronouns
Rhetorical Question
Simile
Symbolic Action
Symbolic Language
Symbolic Prophecy
Synecdoche
Textual Variants
Translate Unknowns
Verse Bridges
When Masculine Words Include Women

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words**
abomination, abominable
Abraham, Abram
adversary, enemy
alien, foreign, foreigner
Almighty
altar
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...
Amorite
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
anoint, anointed, anointing
appoint, appointed
Arabah
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
atonement, atone, atoned
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
barley
barren, dry
beast
Benjamin, Benjamite
bless, blessed, blessing
blood
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
bread
bronze
brother
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
burnt offering, offering by fire
bury, buried, burial
call, call out
camel
Canaan, Canaanite
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
cedar, cedarwood

6 / 1769
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chaldea, Chaldean</td>
<td>1511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chief</td>
<td>1512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ, Messiah</td>
<td>1513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision</td>
<td>1515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean, wash</td>
<td>1517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column, pillar</td>
<td>1519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfort, comforts, comforter, comforted</td>
<td>1520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command, commandment</td>
<td>1521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confirm, confirmation, legal</td>
<td>1522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consecrate, consecrated, consecration</td>
<td>1523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consume, devour</td>
<td>1524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...</td>
<td>1525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court, courtyard</td>
<td>1527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>covenant</td>
<td>1528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox</td>
<td>1530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crown, crowned</td>
<td>1531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry, cry out, outcry</td>
<td>1532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut off</td>
<td>1533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darkness</td>
<td>1534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David</td>
<td>1535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declare, proclaim, announce</td>
<td>1536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decree, decreed</td>
<td>1537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delight</td>
<td>1538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...</td>
<td>1539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descend, descendant</td>
<td>1540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desert, wilderness</td>
<td>1541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desolate, desolation, alone, deserted</td>
<td>1542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destroy, destruction, annihilate</td>
<td>1543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devour</td>
<td>1544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die, dead, deadly, death,</td>
<td>1545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious</td>
<td>1547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominion</td>
<td>1548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donkey, mule</td>
<td>1549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earth, earthen, earthly</td>
<td>1550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt, Egyptian</td>
<td>1551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elder, older, old</td>
<td>1552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephraim, Ephraimite</td>
<td>1553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia, Ethiopian</td>
<td>1554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evil, wicked, unpleasant</td>
<td>1555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins</td>
<td>1557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exalt, exalted, exaltation</td>
<td>1558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exile, exiled</td>
<td>1559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face, facial</td>
<td>1560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy</td>
<td>1561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famine</td>
<td>1563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear, afraid, dread</td>
<td>1564</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 / 1769
feast, feasting
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
firstfruits
flesh
flock, herd
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
forsake, forsaken, leave
freewill offering
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
Gad
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Gilead, Gileadite
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt...
glory, glorious, glorify
God
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
gold, golden
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
govern, government, governor, proconsul
grain offering
grain, grainfields
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
groan, groans, groanings
hand
hang, hung
head
heart
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
honey, honeycomb
honor
hope, hoped
horse, warhorse, horseback
horseman
house
inherit, inheritance, heir
iniquity
Israel, Israelite, Jacob
Israel, Israelites
Jerusalem
Jordan River, Jordan
Joseph (OT)
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
Judah
Judea
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>judge, judgment</td>
<td>1622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification</td>
<td>1624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king, kingdom, kingship</td>
<td>1626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kingdom</td>
<td>1627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish</td>
<td>1629</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamb, Lamb of God</td>
<td>1631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law</td>
<td>1633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>1635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levi, Levite, Levitical</td>
<td>1636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life, live, living, alive</td>
<td>1637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lion, lioness</td>
<td>1639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lord, Lord, master, sir</td>
<td>1640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lots, casting lots</td>
<td>1642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love, beloved</td>
<td>1643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messenger</td>
<td>1645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might, mighty, mighty works</td>
<td>1646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miracle, wonder, sign</td>
<td>1647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moab, Moabite</td>
<td>1649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mourn, mourner, weeping</td>
<td>1650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>1651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>1652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nebuchadnezzar</td>
<td>1654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negev</td>
<td>1655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new moon</td>
<td>1656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noble, nobleman, royal official</td>
<td>1657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oath, swear, swearing, swear by</td>
<td>1658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>1659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs</td>
<td>1660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>1661</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace, peaceful, peacemakers</td>
<td>1662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>1663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, people group,</td>
<td>1664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perish</td>
<td>1666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue</td>
<td>1667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persia, Persians</td>
<td>1668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philistines</td>
<td>1669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation</td>
<td>1670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest, priesthood</td>
<td>1672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...</td>
<td>1674</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profane, profaned</td>
<td>1675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise, promised</td>
<td>1676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess</td>
<td>1677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosper, prosperity, prosperous</td>
<td>1679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostitute, harlot, whored</td>
<td>1680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostrate, worship</td>
<td>1681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud, pride, prideful</td>
<td>1682</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prove, provoked, provocation
pure, purify, purification
purple
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
redeem, redeemer, redemption
reign, rule
remnant
repent, repentance
report, reported, reputation
rest, rested, restless
restore, restoration
return
Reuben
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...
robe, robed
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules
Sabbath
sackcloth
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
Samaria, Samaritan
sanctuary
save, saved, safe, salvation
scribe
seed, semen
seek, search, look for
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
set apart
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
sign, proof, reminder
silver
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
slaughter, slaughtered
son
spirit, spiritual
statute
strength, strengthen, strong
sword, swordsmen
temple
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
threshold, doorway
throne, enthroned
time, untimely, date
transgress, transgression
tremble, stagger
trespass
10 / 1769
tribe, tribal, tribesmen ....................................................... 1741
trumpet, trumpeters .......................................................... 1742
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness ......................... 1743
Tyre, Tyrians .................................................................... 1744
unleavened bread ............................................................... 1745
vine .................................................................................. 1746
vineyard ............................................................................ 1747
virgin, virginity .................................................................. 1748
voice .................................................................................. 1749
vow ..................................................................................... 1750
walk, walked ..................................................................... 1751
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out ......................................................... 1752
wheat ................................................................................... 1753
wine, wineskin, new wine .................................................... 1754
winnow, sift ........................................................................ 1755
wise men, advisor ............................................................... 1756
wrath, fury .......................................................................... 1757
Yahweh .............................................................................. 1758
zeal, zealous ....................................................................... 1760

Contributors ................................................................. 1761
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors ............... 1761
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors ......................... 1767
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors .................... 1768
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .......... 1768
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors ............... 1769
Introduction to Ezekiel

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Ezekiel

1. Yahweh calls Ezekiel to speak his words (1:1–3:27)
3. Ezekiel prophesies against nearby nations (25:1–32:32)
4. Yahweh explains the fall of Jerusalem (33:1–33)
5. Ezekiel brings messages of hope (34:1–48:35)
6. A new shepherd (34:1-31)
7. Edom destroyed (35:1–15)
8. Israel restored (36:1–37:28)

What is Ezekiel about?

The Book of Ezekiel contains words that Ezekiel prophesied between 592 B.C. and 573 B.C. The Jewish people were exiled in Babylonia. Ezekiel told them that God had punished them because they sinned against him. However, Ezekiel assured them that God would restore them. God was using Babylon to punish them. But eventually another nation would defeat the Babylonians. Ezekiel also prophesied about how God will restore Jerusalem and the temple so that the people can worship and sacrifice to him again. Ezekiel then described how the land will be divided again among the tribes of Israel.

How should the title of this book be translated?

“Ezekiel” or “The Book of Ezekiel” is the traditional name for this book. Translators may also call it “The Messages from God Brought by Ezekiel.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Who wrote the Book of Ezekiel?

Ezekiel wrote the prophecies in the Book of Ezekiel. He was a prophet and priest who lived near Babylon in the time of the exile.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was Ezekiel's temple?

Several chapters of the Book of Ezekiel give instructions about building a new temple. However, this temple is not the same as the temple the people would build after going back to Jerusalem. Because Ezekiel's temple has never been built, some scholars think that this temple is to be built in the future. Other scholars think that Ezekiel's temple is symbolic of the Church.

Do the sacrifices in Ezekiel follow the law of Moses?

The sacrifices in Ezekiel 46 are somewhat different than the required sacrifices in Numbers 28. This may be because Ezekiel prophesied about a new temple with new sacrifices.
Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How should one represent Ezekiel's visions in translation?

The Book of Ezekiel has many complicated visions. Some are similar to passages in other Scripture books that describe future events. Some of these visions are about God rescuing Israel in the distant future. (See: Symbolic Prophecy)

It is unclear whether Ezekiel actually traveled to the particular places named in the visions, or whether what he described were mental ideas. For this reason, Ezekiel's viewpoint is sometimes difficult to understand, even though the meanings of the visions may be clear.

Translators should avoid trying to explain these visions in their translations. Instead, they should present the visions just as they are in the source text.

What does “and you will know that I am Yahweh” mean?

This is a common phrase in the Book of Ezekiel. It is meant to assure the reader that these messages truly came from God, and that he will do what he has promised. The translator may also use the phrase “and you will understand that I am Yahweh and what I say will happen.” The UST translates it as “then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 1

Ezekiel 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call

Ezekiel had a vision of God calling him to prophetic ministry. (See: call, call out and prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
In the thirtieth year

This is the thirtieth year of Ezekiel's life. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month

“the fifth day of the fourth month.” This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is around the end of June on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

it came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

I was living among the captives

The word “I” refers to Ezekiel. “I was one of the captives”

I saw visions of God

“God showed me unusual things”

the Kebar Canal

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. “the Kebar River”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
• God
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Translation Words - UST

• heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
• God
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
Ezekiel 1:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

2 On the fifth day of that month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—

UST

1-2 “When I, Ezekiel, was thirty years old, I was living among the Israelite people by the Kebar Canal, which was south of Babylon. The Babylonians had taken us from the land of Judah and brought us here. On the fifth day of the fourth month of that year, it was as though the sky opened and I saw visions from God. The fifth day of the fourth month was almost five years after King Jehoiachin had been exiled.”
Ezekiel 1:3

to Ezekiel...upon him there

Ezekiel speaks of himself as if he were another person. Alternate translation: “to me, Ezekiel...upon me there” (See: Pronouns)

the word of Yahweh came to Ezekiel

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to Ezekiel” (See: Idiom)

Buzi

This is a man’s name. (See: How to Translate Names)

the hand of Yahweh was upon him

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. Alternate translation: “Yahweh was controlling him” (See: Metonymy)

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand
Ezekiel 1:4

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

a windstorm
This is a storm that has a lot of wind.

coming from the north
North is the direction to your left when you look toward the sun while it is rising.

a great cloud with fire flashing within it
This can be translated as a new sentence: “The storm had a very large cloud with fire flashing in it”

fire flashing
Possible meanings are 1) “flashing lightning” or 2) “constant lightning.”

brightness surrounding it and inside of it
“a very bright light was around the cloud and inside of it”

the color of amber
“bright yellow like amber” or “bright yellow” or “glowing yellow”

amber
a hard yellow resin that is used as a beautiful decoration on jewelry

Translation Words - ULT
- spirit, spiritual
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST
- spirit, spiritual
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 1:5

In the middle

“Inside the storm”

the likeness of four living creatures

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like these things. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “what looked like four living creatures” (See: Abstract Nouns)

This was their appearance

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “This is what they looked like” (See: Abstract Nouns)

They had the likeness of a man

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “The four creatures looked like people” (See: Abstract Nouns)
Ezekiel 1:6

but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings

“but each of them had four different faces and four wings.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head.

Translation Words - ULT
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST
• face, facial
Ezekiel 1:7

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

**but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf**

“but their feet looked like calf hooves” or “but their feet looked like the feet of calves”

hooves of a calf
the hard part of a calf’s foot

that shone like polished bronze

“that were shiny like bronze that has been polished.” This describes the feet of the creatures. Alternate translation: “and they shone like polished bronze” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- bronze
Ezekiel 1:8

**on all four sides**

“on all four sides of their bodies”

**For all four, their faces and wings were like this**

“For all four of the creatures, their wings and their faces were like this”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- hand
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- hand
- face, facial

ULT

8 Yet they had human hands under their wings on all four sides. For all four, their faces and wings were like this:

UST

8 On the four sides of their bodies under their wings there were hands like humans have.
Ezekiel 1:9

they did not turn as they went
“the creatures did not turn as they moved”

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 1:10

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

The likeness of their faces was like the face of a man
Ezekiel is describing the faces of the creatures on their front side. The abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a man’s face. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “The face of each creature looked like the face of a man” (See: Abstract Nouns)

The four of them had the face of a lion to the right side
“The face on the right side of each one’s head looked like the face of a lion”

the four of them had the face of an ox on the left side
“the face on the left side of the head of each one looked like the face of an ox”

They four had also the face of an eagle
“The face on the back of the head of each one looked like the face of an eagle”

Translation Words - ULT

- lion, lioness
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial (2)

Translation Words - UST

- lion, lioness
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial (2)
Ezekiel 1:11

their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing

“each creature held up two of his wings so that one wing touched the wing of the creature on one side of him, and the other wing touched the wing of the creature on the other side of him”

and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies

This can be translated as a new sentence: “The other two wings of each creature covered its body”

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
Ezekiel 1:12

Each went straight forward

“Each creature moved with a face looking forward”

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial
• walk, walked
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
• walk, walked
• walk, walked

ULT
12 Each went straight forward, so that wherever the Spirit directed them to go, they went without turning.

UST
12 The creatures went straight ahead in whatever direction the Spirit of God, who controlled them, wanted them to go, without changing directions while they were moving.
Ezekiel 1:13

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like these things. Both “likeness” and “appearance” are abstract nouns that can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “As for what the living creatures looked like, they were similar to burning coals” (See: Abstract Nouns)

there were flashes of lightning

“lightning came out from the fire.”

Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 1:14

The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they had the appearance of lightning

Lightning flashes and then disappears quickly, and the creatures moved from one place to another quickly. The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they looked like lightning” (See: Simile and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- return

Translation Words - UST

- return
Ezekiel 1:15

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision.

Translation Words - ULT
  • face, facial

Translation Words - UST
  • face, facial

ULT
15 Then I looked at the living creatures; and I saw one wheel on the ground beside each of living creatures with its four faces.

UST
15 While I looked at the four living creatures, I saw a wheel on the ground beside each of them.
Ezekiel 1:16

This was the appearance and structure of the wheels

“This is what the wheels looked like and how they were made”

like beryl

Beryl is a kind of clear, valuable stone, often of yellow or golden color. “clear and yellow like a beryl stone” or “clear and yellow like a precious stone”

the four had the same likeness

Here the abstract noun “likeness” refers to what the four wheels looked like. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “all four of the wheels looked the same” (See: Abstract Nouns)

their appearance and structure was like a wheel intersecting another wheel

The abstract nouns “appearance” and “structure” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “they appeared to be made with one wheel going through another wheel” (See: Abstract Nouns)
Ezekiel 1:17

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

de they went in any of their four directions

Possible meanings are 1) “their” refers to the creatures. Alternate translation: “they would go straight in any one of the four directions that the creatures looked towards” or 2) “their” refers to the wheels.

Translation Words - ULT
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST
• walk, walked

ULT
17 As they moved, they went in any of their four directions, without turning as they went.

UST
17 Whenever they moved, they would go straight in one of the four directions that the creatures were facing; they did not turn in another direction while they moved.
Ezekiel 1:18

As for their rims

“This is what the rims of the wheels looked like”

they were high and fearsome

“the rims were very tall and awe-inspiring” or “the rims where tall and frightening”

for the rims were full of eyes round about

“because the rims had very many eyes around all four of the wheels”

ULT

18 As for their rims, they were high and fearsome, for the rims were full of eyes round about.

UST

18 The rims of the wheels were imposing and frightening, and they were covered with eyes.
Ezekiel 1:19

When the living creatures rose up from the earth

The creatures were flying in the air after they left the ground. Alternate translation: “So when the creatures left the ground and went up into the air” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the wheels also rose up

“the wheels also left the ground and went into the air”

Translation Words - ULT

• walk, walked
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• walk, walked
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 1:20

Wherever the Spirit would go, they went

The word “they” refers to the creatures.

the wheels rose up beside them

“the wheels went up into the air with the living creatures”

the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels

Possible meanings are 1) Ezekiel is speaking of the “creatures” of verse 19 as if they were one creature. Alternate translation: “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or 2) Ezekiel is using an idiom. Alternate translation: “the spirit of life was in the wheels” or “the living spirit was in the wheels” or 3) the spirit in the creatures and in the wheels is the same. Alternate translation: “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- walk, walked
Ezekiel 1:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- appoint, appointed
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- appoint, appointed
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
21 Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels also moved; and when the creatures stood still, the wheels stood still; when the creatures rose up from the earth, the wheels rose up beside them, because the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.

UST
21 Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels moved. Whenever the creatures stood still, the wheels stopped. Whenever the creatures rose up from the ground, the wheels rose up with them.
Ezekiel 1:22

the likeness of an expansive dome

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like “an expansive dome.” The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “what looked like an expansive dome” (See: Abstract Nouns)

an expansive dome

A dome looks like a hollow ball that is cut in half. “Expansive” means very large. “a huge upside-down bowl”

awe-inspiring crystal

“awe-inspiring ice” or “crystal that makes people marvel when they look at it”

stretched out over their heads above

“and the expansive dome was spread out above the heads of the creatures” or “and the expansive dome took up a lot of space over the heads of the creatures”

Translation Words - ULT

- head
- head

Translation Words - UST

- head
- head
Beneath the dome

“under the dome”

Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body

“Each of the living creatures also had two other wings, which they used to cover their bodies”

Translation Words - ULT

• just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Translation Words - UST

• just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
Ezekiel 1:24

**General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision of the living creatures.

**Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of many waters. Like the voice of the Almighty whenever they moved. Like**

Other possible meanings are that the words “whenever they moved” refer to 1) all the words before them in this verse, “Whenever they moved, I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Like” or 2) to the words that follow, “wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Whenever they moved, it sounded like.”

**Like...waters. Like...moved. Like...rainstorm. Like...army.**

These sentences are not complete because Ezekiel was showing that he was excited about what he saw. They can be translated as complete sentences: “The wings sounded like...water. They sounded like...moved. They sounded like...rainstorm. They sounded like...army.” (See: **Simile**)

**many waters**

This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to a loud river or a large waterfall or the waves crashing at the ocean. All of these are very loud.

**Like the voice of the Almighty**

The Bible sometimes refers to thunder as “the voice of the Almighty.” Alternate translation: “It sounded like the voice of the Almighty God” or “It sounded like the thunder of the Almighty” (See: **Metonymy**)

**Like the sound of a rainstorm**

Possible meanings are: 1) “Like the sound of very big storm” or 2) “Like the sound of a very large crowd of people” Alternate translation: “There was a sound that was loud like a big storm” or “There was a sound that was loud like a very large crowd of people” (See: **Simile**)

**Whenever they stood still**

“Whenever the creatures stopped moving”

**they lowered their wings**

“the creatures let their wings hang down by their sides.” They did this when they were not using their wings to fly.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Almighty
Translation Words - UST

- Almighty
Ezekiel 1:25

A voice came from above the dome

“Someone who was above the dome spoke.” If you need to tell whose voice this is, you should probably identify it as the voice of Yahweh (Ezekiel 1:3).

the dome over their heads

“the dome that was over the heads of the creatures”

the dome

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:23.

Translation Words - ULT

• head

Translation Words - UST

• head
Ezekiel 1:26

over their heads
“over the heads of the living creatures”

was the likeness of a throne
Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a throne. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “was something that looked like a throne” (See: Abstract Nouns)

sapphire
a very valuable stone that is clear blue and very shiny

on the likeness of the throne was
The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “on what looked like a throne there was” (See: Abstract Nouns)

a likeness like the appearance of a man
The abstract nouns “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with verbal phrases. If you need to tell who this is, you should probably identify him as Yahweh (Ezekiel 1:3). Alternate translation: “something that looked similar to what appeared to be a man” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
- head
- throne, enthroned

Translation Words - UST
- head
- throne, enthroned
Ezekiel 1:27

General Information:
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.

from the appearance of his hips up
The person’s body above the hips looked like glowing metal that had fire in it. The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “from what appeared to be his hips up” (See: Abstract Nouns)

from the appearance of his hips downward the appearance of fire and brightness all around
The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “all around him below what appeared to be his hips, I saw what looked like fire and a bright light” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house

Translation Words - UST
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house
Ezekiel 1:28

Like the appearance of a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day was the appearance of the bright light surrounding it.

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “The brightness surrounding it appeared to be like the way a rainbow appears in the clouds on a rainy day” (See: Abstract Nouns)

rainbow

the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer

It was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of Yahweh.

The abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like the glory of Yahweh. Both “appearance” and “likeness” can be translated as with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “It appeared to be what looked like the glory of Yahweh” (See: Abstract Nouns)

I fell on my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: Idiom)

I heard a voice speaking

The word “voice” is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “I heard someone speaking” or “Someone spoke, and I heard his voice” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 2

Ezekiel 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call continues in this chapter. God appointed Ezekiel to be a prophet but warned him that the people were very rebellious and would not listen to him. (See: call, call out and appoint, appointed and prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
Ezekiel 2:1

General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

He said to me

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” (Ezekiel 1:26). It was not “the Spirit.”

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

• son
• appoint, appointed
Ezekiel 2:2

the Spirit

Other possible meanings are 1) “a spirit” or 2) “a wind.”

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual

ULT

2 Then, as he spoke to me, the Spirit entered into me and set me on my feet, and I heard him speaking to me.

UST

2 While he spoke to me, God's Spirit entered me and enabled me to stand up. Then I heard him speak to me.
He said to me, “Son of man, I am sending you to the people of Israel, to rebellious nations that have rebelled against me—both they and their ancestors have sinned against me up to this very day!

“even now” or “even today.” This means that the people of Israel were continuing to disobey God.

Translation Words - ULT
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Translation Words - UST
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
Ezekiel 2:4

General Information:
God continues to speak to Ezekiel.

Their descendants
the descendants of the past generations of Israel who had rebelled against God, referring to the people living in Israel at the time Ezekiel writes

have stubborn faces
“have expression on their faces that show that they are stubborn”

stubborn faces and hard hearts
The words "stubborn faces" refer to the way they act on the outside, and the words "hard hearts" refer to the way they think and feel. Together they emphasize that the people of Israel would not change how they lived in order to obey God. (See: Doublet)

stubborn
This describes a person who refuses to change what he thinks or what he is doing.

hard hearts
Rocks never change and become soft, and these people never change and become sorry when they do evil things. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- face, facial
Ezekiel 2:5

house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Alternate translation: “people group” (See: Metonymy)

a prophet has been among them

“the one whom they have refused to listen to was a prophet”

Translation Words - ULT

• prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

5 Either they will listen or they will not listen. They are a rebellious house, but they will at least know that a prophet has been among them.

UST

5 And when you tell them my messages, perhaps those rebellious people will heed those messages and perhaps they will not heed them; but they will know that a prophet has been among them!
Ezekiel 2:6

General Information:

God continues to speak to Ezekiel

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

briers and thorns and...scorpions

These words describe the people of Israel who will not treat Ezekiel kindly when he tells them what God says. (See: Metaphor)

briers and thorns

Briers are bushes with sharp points on the branches. The sharp points on the branches are called thorns.

scorpions

A scorpion is a small animal with two front claws, six legs, and a large tail with a poisonous stinger. Its sting is very painful.

Do not fear their words

“Do not be afraid of what they say.”

be dismayed by their faces

The words “their faces” are a metonym for the message the people express with their faces. Alternate translation: “lose your desire to serve me because of the way they look at you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- house

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
- house
Ezekiel 2:7

**General Information:**
God continues to speak to Ezekiel.

**are most rebellious**
“are very rebellious” or “totally rebel against me”

**ULT**
7 But you will speak my words to them, whether they listen or not, because they are most rebellious.

**UST**
7 Tell them my message, but do not expect them to pay attention to it, because they are very rebellious.
Ezekiel 2:8

house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- devour
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- devour
- house

ULT

8 But you, son of man, listen to what I am saying to you. Do not be rebellious like that rebellious house. Open your mouth and eat what I am about to give to you!”

UST

8 But son of man, you must pay attention to what I say. Do not be rebellious like they are. Now open your mouth and eat what I give to you.”
Ezekiel 2:9

a hand was extended out to me

It was as if 1) a person in the heavens had extended his hand out toward Ezekiel and all Ezekiel could see was from the hand to the elbow or shoulder or 2) the “one who looked like a man” (Ezekiel 1:26) extended his hand.

a written scroll

“a scroll that had writing on it”

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand
Ezekiel 2:10

He spread it out

The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” (Ezekiel 1:26).

it had been written on both its front and back

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone had written on both its front and its back” (See: Active or Passive)

written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “lamentations,” “mourning,” and “woe.” Alternate translation: “someone had written on it that these people would lament, be sad the way they would be if someone they loved had died, and have bad things happen to them” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial

ULT
10 He spread it out before me; it had been written on both its front and back, and written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe.

UST
10 He unrolled the scroll. On both sides of it were written words that expressed sorrow and mourning and words about trouble.
Ezekiel 3

Ezekiel 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call concludes in this chapter. God told Ezekiel more about what he should say to the people and how he should say it. (See: call, call out)
Ezekiel 3:1

**General Information:**
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

**He said to me**
The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” (*Ezekiel 1:26*).

**Son of man**
“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in *Ezekiel 2:1*. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**what you have found**
This refers to the scroll that God was giving him (*Ezekiel 2:9*).

**the house of Israel**
The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- devour
- house

**Translation Words - UST**
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- devour
- house
Ezekiel 3:2

**that scroll**

Many versions have “the scroll” or “this scroll.”

**Translation Words - Ult**

• devour

**Translation Words - UST**

• devour

ULT
2 So I opened my mouth, and he fed me that scroll.

UST
2 So I opened my mouth, and he gave me the scroll to eat it.
Ezekiel 3:3

feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll

The word “belly” refers to the part of the body people can see from the outside. The word “stomach” refers to the internal organs inside the belly.

it was as sweet as honey

Honey tastes sweet, and the scroll tasted sweet.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- devour
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- son
- devour
- devour

ULT

3 He said to me, “Son of man, feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll that I have given to you!” So I ate it, and it was as sweet as honey in my mouth.

UST

3 Then he said to me, “Son of Man, eat the scroll that I have given to you. Fill your stomach with it.” So I ate it, and in my mouth it tasted as sweet as honey.
Ezekiel 3:4

General Information:
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

he said to me

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” (Ezekiel 1:26). It was not “the Spirit.”

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• walk, walked
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• walk, walked
• house
Ezekiel 3:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- house

ULT
5 For you are not being sent to a people of strange speech or difficult language, but to the house of Israel—

UST
5 The people to whom I am sending you are not people whose language is very difficult to learn, a language which you do not understand. I am sending you to your Israelite people.
Ezekiel 3:6

of strange speech or a difficult language

“who speak a strange or difficult language”

not to many peoples of strange speech

“I am not sending you to a mighty nation whose people speak a strange language”

if I sent you to them, they would have listened to you

This is a hypothetical situation that could have happened but did not. Yahweh did not send Ezekiel to people who did not understand his language. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

if I sent you to them

The word “them” refers to a mighty nation other than Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

• people, people group,
Ezekiel 3:7

**strong browed and hard hearted**

These mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “very rebellious” or “very stubborn” (See: Doublet)

**strong browed**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “unwilling to change” (See: Idiom)

**hard hearted**

This phrase suggests that the people resist God and are unwilling to obey him. The heart is used to describe the place in the body where a person decides what they want to do. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

ULT

7 But the house of Israel will not be willing to listen to you, for they are not willing to listen to me. So all the house of Israel is strong browed and hard hearted.

UST

7 But because the Israelite people do not want to listen to me, they will not want to listen to you. They do not want to listen because they are all very rebellious.
Ezekiel 3:8

**General Information:**

The Spirit of God continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here alerts Ezekiel to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I have made your face as hard as their faces**

A hard face is a metaphor for being stubborn. Alternate translation: “I have made you as stubborn as they are” (See: Metaphor)

**I have made...your brow as hard as their brows**

The “brow” is the forehead or eyebrow and is a metonym for what the person thinks. Alternate translation: “I have made...you strong so you will not stop doing what you are doing” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong
- face, facial
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- strength, strengthen, strong
- strength, strengthen, strong
- face, facial
- face, facial
Ezekiel 3:9

I have made your brow like a diamond, harder than flint

“I have made your brow like the hardest stone, harder than flint”

flint

a stone that is hard enough to start a fire by hitting it with metal or another stone

house

This is a metonymy for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear, afraid, dread
• strength, strengthen, strong
• courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
• house

Translation Words - UST

• fear, afraid, dread
• strength, strengthen, strong
• courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement
• house
Ezekiel 3:10

take them into your heart and hear them with your ears

Here “heart” represents a person’s mind. Alternate translation: “remember them and listen carefully” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• son

Translation Words - UST
• son

ULT
10 Then he said to me, “Son of man, all the words that I announce to you—take them into your heart and hear them with your ears!

UST
10 He also said to me, “Son of Man, listen very carefully to what I say, and keep thinking about it.
Ezekiel 3:11

Then go to the captives

The word “captives” refers to the people of Israel who were living in Babylon.

your people

“your people group.” Ezekiel had lived in Judah before the Babylonians took him to Babylon.

Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• people, people group,
Ezekiel 3:12

General Information:
Ezekiel continues telling about the vision he saw.

I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!”

Some versions take “Blessed...place!” as a words that the “great earthquake” spoke: “I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake, which said, ‘Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!’” Others understand the sound of the earthquake as the sound of the glory of Yahweh leaving his place, “as the glory of Yahweh left its place, I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake.”

the sound of a great earthquake
It is not clear if the sound came from an earthquake, from a voice that was loud like an earthquake, or from the wings and wheels. Alternate translation: “a sound like the sound of a great earthquake” or “a voice speaking; the voice sounded like a great earthquake” or “a loud rumbling noise”

the glory of Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28.

the sound of a great earthquake
“a loud, deep and powerful rumbling sound like the sound of an earthquake”

Translation Words - ULT
- bless, blessed, blessing
- spirit, spiritual
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST
- bless, blessed, blessing
- spirit, spiritual
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
Ezekiel 3:13

There are no notes for this verse.
Ezekiel 3:14

General Information:

Ezekiel seems to have been angry because Yahweh had sent him to speak to the Israelite exiles, thus rebelling against Yahweh himself. Though he was supposed to speak to them, he sat in silence for seven days, even though he could feel the anger of Yahweh “powerfully pressing on” him.

away, and I went with bitterness in my spirit’s rage

The words “bitterness” and “rage” are types of anger. This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “away. I was bitter and my spirit was full of anger” or “away. I was very bitter and angry”

bitterness

Ezekiel speaks of his anger at Yahweh as if there were a bad taste in his mouth because Yahweh had forced him to eat something that tasted bad. (See: Metaphor)

for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me

Ezekiel speaks of being sad and tired because Yahweh had commanded him to do things he did not want to do as if Yahweh were pushing him down into the ground. (See: Metaphor)

the hand of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) the word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh” or 2) Ezekiel knew that Yahweh was angry with him because he was not obeying Yahweh by speaking to the Israelite exiles. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual
• spirit, spiritual
• Yahweh
• wrath, fury
• hand
• strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual
• spirit, spiritual
• Yahweh
• wrath, fury
• hand
• strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 3:15

Tel Aviv
A town in Babylon, about 80 kilometers southeast of the main city, which was also called Babylon. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Kebar Canal
This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:1.

overwhelmed in amazement
“unable to do anything because I was so amazed”

Translation Words - ULT
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Translation Words - UST
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
Ezekiel 3:16

**General Information:**
Ezekiel tells about his experience at Tel-Aviv.

**the word of Yahweh came**
This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
Ezekiel 3:17

watchman

God told Ezekiel to warn the people of Israel just as a watchman would warn the people of a city if enemies were coming, so that they could prepare and be safe. (See: Metaphor)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• house
Ezekiel 3:18

the wicked
“wicked people”

require his blood from your hand

This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. Alternate translation: “treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- report, reported, reputation
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- report, reported, reputation
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 3:19

he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds

The phrase “wicked deeds” means the same thing as “wickedness.” Alternate translation: “he does not stop doing wicked things” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration

ULT

19 But if you warn the wicked, and he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds, then he will die for his sin, but you will have rescued your own life.

UST

19 But if you warn wicked people and they do not turn from all their wicked behavior, they will die because of their sins, but you will have saved yourself from my punishment.
Ezekiel 3:20

set a stumbling block before him

Possible meanings are 1) “make something bad happen to him” or 2) “cause him to sin openly.” (See: Metaphor)

he will die in his sin

“he will die as a sinner” or “he will die as a guilty person because he has disobeyed me”

I will require his blood from your hand

This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:18. Alternate translation: “I will treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- hand
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- hand
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 3:21

since he was warned

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “since you warned him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
Ezekiel 3:22

the hand of Yahweh

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• hand
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• hand
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
22 So the hand of Yahweh was on me there, and he said to me, “Arise! Go out into the plain, and I will speak with you there!”

UST
22 I felt Yahweh take control, and he spoke to me and said, “Get up and go to the plain, and I will speak to you there.“
Ezekiel 3:23

the glory of Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28.

the Kebar Canal
This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:1.

I fell on my face
“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment
• glory, glorious, glorify
• appoint, appointed
• Yahweh
• face, facial
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment
• glory, glorious, glorify
• appoint, appointed
• Yahweh
• face, facial
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 3:24

he spoke with me

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” (Ezekiel 1:26). It was not “the Spirit.”

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- house

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- house

ULT
24 The Spirit came to me and stood me up on my feet; and he spoke with me, and said to me, “Go and shut yourself up within your house,

UST
24 Then the Spirit of God entered me and enabled me to stand up. He said to me, “Go into your house and stay inside it.”
Ezekiel 3:25

they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them

This is best translated literally.

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• son
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 3:26

General Information:
The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

the roof of your mouth
“the top of your mouth”

you will be mute
“you will not be able to speak”

house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• house

Translation Words - UST
• house
Ezekiel 3:27

I will open your mouth

“I will make you able to speak”

the one who will not listen will not listen

“the one who refuses to listen will not listen”

Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• house

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• house

ULT

27 But when I speak with you, I will open your mouth so you will say to them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says.’ The one who will hear will hear; the one who will not listen will not listen, for they are a rebellious house!”

UST

27 But then when I speak to you again, I will enable you to talk and tell them ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh is saying to you.’ The one who wants to hear me will hear me, but the one who ignores the message will come to an end, since they are a rebellious people!”
Ezekiel 4

Ezekiel 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Destruction of Jerusalem

The destruction of Jerusalem is pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the lack of food and water that would occur during the siege of Jerusalem.
Ezekiel 4:1

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He tells Ezekiel to take a brick and dirt and pieces of wood and act as if he were Yahweh destroying the city of Jerusalem.

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

carve the city of Jerusalem

You may need to make explicit that Ezekiel is to carve a picture. Alternate translation: “carve a picture of the city of Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jerusalem
Ezekiel 4:2

lay siege against it
“surround the city in order to capture it”

build forts against it
“build strong walls against it.” The walls would keep people from leaving the city.

Raise up an assault ramp against it
“Build a ramp outside of it for the enemies to get inside.” Jerusalem had a wall around it to protect the people inside. The enemies could only get inside if they had a ramp to climb up over the wall.

Place battering rams all around it
“Set around it huge poles people would use to break down the gates and get inside.” "Battering rams" are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside.

Translation Words - ULT
• appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST
• appoint, appointed
Ezekiel 4:3

set your face against it

This is a command to stare at the model of the city as a symbol of punishing the city. Alternate translation: “stare at the city” or “stare at the city so that it will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” refers to literally staring at something. (See: Metonymy)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- sign, proof, reminder
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- sign, proof, reminder
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- house
Ezekiel 4:4

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

Then, lie on your left side and put the sin of the house of Israel on it; you will carry their sin for the number of the days that you lie down against the house of Israel.

Then lie on your left side, and stay like that for 390 days. You will be symbolically bearing the punishment for the sins of the Israelites, the northern kingdom; you must lie like that one day for each year that I will punish them.

put the sin of the house of Israel on it

Possible meanings are 1) “symbolically bear the punishment for the sins of the Israelites” or 2) “suffer by lying on your side because of their sin.”

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

you will carry their sin

Possible meanings are 1) “you will be guilty of their sin” or 2) “you will be punished for their sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated “symbolically” by Ezekiel as noted in the UST.

lie down against the house of Israel

“lie facing the kingdom of Israel in a hostile manner”

Translation Words - ULT

• iniquity
• iniquity
• appoint, appointed
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• iniquity
• iniquity
• appoint, appointed
• Israel, Israelites
• house
Ezekiel 4:5

I myself am assigning to you one day to represent each year of their punishment

“I myself command you to lie on your side for the same number of days as the number of years that I will punish them”

each year of their punishment

Possible meanings are 1) each year that they will be punished for their sins or 2) each year that they have sinned.

390 days

“three hundred and ninety days” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• iniquity
• iniquity
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• iniquity
• iniquity
• Israel, Israelites
• house
Ezekiel 4:6

**General Information:**

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**these days**

the days Ezekiel lies down on his left side to illustrate the siege of the kingdom of Israel

**you will carry the sin**

Possible meanings are 1) “you will be guilty of the sin” or 2) “you will be punished for the sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated symbolically by Ezekiel as noted in the UST. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 4:4.

**the house of Judah**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: Metonymy)

**I am assigning to you one day for each year**

“I will make you do this one day for each year that I will punish them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- iniquity
- Judea
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- iniquity
- Judea
- house
Ezekiel 4:7

Set your face toward Jerusalem that is under siege

This is a command to stare at the model of Jerusalem as a symbol of punishing Jerusalem. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 4:3. Alternate translation: “Stare at Jerusalem that is under siege” or “Stare at Jerusalem that is under siege, so that it will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

Set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze. “Set your face” refers to literally staring at something. (See: Metonymy)

prophesy against it

“prophesy about the bad things that will happen to Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem
- face, facial
Ezekiel 4:8

**For behold**

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**I am placing bonds on you**

Bonds are ropes or chains that keep a person from moving. It is not clear whether the word “bonds” is a metaphor for something Yahweh does that is as if he had bound Ezekiel or if he is using literal, physical ropes. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- consume, devour

**Translation Words - UST**

- consume, devour
Ezekiel 4:9

General Information:
The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**wheat, barley...millet, and spelt**
These are different kinds of grains.

**beans**
vines whose seeds, which grow in a single row inside its otherwise empty fruit, can be eaten

**lentils**
These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat. (See: Translate Unknowns)

**390 days**
“three hundred and ninety days” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - **ULT**
• devour
• wheat

Translation Words - **UST**
• devour
• wheat
Ezekiel 4:10

**twenty shekels per day**

“20 shekels per day.” A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: 200 grams of bread each day” (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- devour
- devour

**Translation Words - UST**
- devour
- devour
Ezekiel 4:11

a sixth of a hin

“1/6 hin” or “a sixth part of a hin” or “about one-half liter” (See: Biblical Volume and Fractions)

a hin

A hin is 3.7 liters. (See: Biblical Volume)
Ezekiel 4:12

General Information:
The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

You will eat it
The word “it” refers to the bread (Ezekiel 4:9).

barley cakes
flat bread made of barley (Ezekiel 4:9) (See: Translate Unknowns)

you will bake it on excrement of human dung
“you will cook it over a fire made with pieces of human solid waste.“ Your language may have a way of expressing this politely.

Translation Words - ULT
• devour
• barley

Translation Words - UST
• devour
• barley
For Yahweh says, “This means that the bread that the people of Israel will eat will be unclean, there among the nations where I will banish them.”

That will symbolize that the Israelite people will be forced to eat food that is unacceptable to me when they are living in the nations to which I will force them to go.”
Ezekiel 4:14

Alas, Lord Yahweh

“Lord Yahweh, it would be wrong for me to do that.” Ezekiel is very troubled by what the Lord has told him to do.

Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4. Here Ezekiel is speaking to the Lord.

foul meat has never entered my mouth

“I have never eaten foul meat”

foul meat

“disgusting, unclean meat.” This refers to meat that is unclean because it has come from an animal that has died of sickness or old age or was killed by another animal. The word “foul” shows his disgust over meat like this.

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• flesh
• devour

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• flesh
• devour

ULT

14 But I said, “Alas, Lord Yahweh! I have never been unclean! I have never eaten either anything that died or anything killed by animals, from my youth until now, and foul meat has never entered my mouth!”

UST

14 Then I said, “No, Lord Yahweh! Do not force me to do that! I have never caused myself to become unacceptable to you. From the time when I was young, I have never eaten meat of any animal that was found dead or that had been killed by wild animals. And I have never eaten any meat that is unacceptable to you.”
Ezekiel 4:15

Look
“Listen” or “Pay attention to the important thing I will tell you now”

I have given you
“I will allow you to use”

cow manure
solid waste from cows. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this.

human dung
solid waste from humans. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 4:12.

Translation Words - ULT
• bread

Translation Words - UST
• bread
Ezekiel 4:16

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

I am breaking the staff of bread in Jerusalem

“I will stop the supply of food to Jerusalem”

the staff of bread

The supply is called a staff because some people need a staff to walk and do their work, and people need bread to live. Bread represents all kinds of food. Alternate translation: “the supply of food” (See: Metaphor and Synecdoche)

dey will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety

You may need to make explicit why they will ration the bread. “they will carefully divide their bread because they fear that there will not be enough” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

rationing

Giving small amounts of something of which there is not enough to many people

rationing it in trembling

The word “shaking” is a metaphor for being afraid and “trembling” represents fear. Alternate translation: “rationing it while shaking” or “rationing it in fear” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- bread
- bread
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jerusalem
- bread
- bread
- devour
Ezekiel 4:17

every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste away

Possible meanings are 1) “everyone will look at his brother and worry about how much food his brother eats and waste away” or 2) “every one of them will be dismayed and waste away” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

waste away

The phrase “waste away” is usually used of flesh or wood rotting. Here it is a metaphor for wicked people becoming thin and dying because they have no food. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- bread

ULT
17 Because they will lack bread and water, every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste away because of their iniquity.

UST
17 because water and food will be very scarce. They will see each other becoming extremely thin, and they will be appalled; but this will happen because they are being punished for the sins that they have committed.”
Ezekiel 5

Ezekiel 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The destruction of Jerusalem

The destruction of Jerusalem is continued to be pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the destruction of Jerusalem by fire and war.
Ezekiel 5:1

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. All instances of “the city” refer to the “city” that Ezekiel carved onto the brick (Ezekiel 4:1).

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

barber’s razor

“blade for cutting hair”

pass the razor over your head and your beard

“shave your head and your face” or “remove the hair from your head and the beard from your face”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
• head
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• son
• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
• head
• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 5:2

Burn a third of it

“Burn a third of your hair” (See: Fractions)

midst
middle

when the days of the siege are completed

“when the days of Jerusalem's siege have ended” or “when the days have ended that you show how Jerusalem will put under siege”

take a third of the hair

“take one of the three piles of hair” (See: Fractions)

strike it with the sword all around the city

“hit it with your sword all over the city”

scatter a third of it to the wind

“let the wind blow the last third of your hair in different directions” (See: Fractions)

I will draw out a sword to chase after the people

The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy soldiers who will attack with their swords, and to “draw out a sword” is to send the soldiers into battle. Alternate translation: “I will cause their enemies to pursue them and attack them with swords” (See: Metonymy)

I will draw out a sword

“I will pull a sword out of its container”

Translation Words - ULT

- winnow, sift
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- winnow, sift
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 5:3

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.

**a small number of hairs from them**

“a few hairs from the piles”

**tie them**

The word “them” refers to the hairs. Possible meanings are 1) the hairs were long enough so Ezekiel could tie them or 2) Ezekiel was to sew the hairs or otherwise attach them 3) Ezekiel was to place the hairs loosely in a fold of the garment.

**the folds of your robe**

Possible meanings are 1) “the cloth on your arms” (“your sleeves”) or 2) “the end of the cloth on your robe” (“your hem”) or 3) the fold in the garment where it is tucked into the belt.
Ezekiel 5:4

Then take

This continues the instructions Yahweh gives to Ezekiel beginning with the words “But take” in verse 3. Ezekiel was to “take a small number of hairs” and “take more of the hair and throw it” when he shaved his hair and beard (Ezekiel 5:1) and before he burned the hair (Ezekiel 5:2). You may need to place these verses before those verses. “But when you shave off your hair and beard, and before you burn them, take...After you have scattered the hair to the wind, then take” (See: Order of Events and Verse Bridges)

from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel

“from there a fire will spread out and burn up all the people of Israel.” Yahweh speaks of how he will punish Israel as if he were going to set fire to a house and of the people of Israel as if they were the family that lives in that house but were at that time outside the house. (See: Metaphor)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 5:5

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak.

Lord Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

This is Jerusalem
“This carving represents Jerusalem” (Ezekiel 4:1)

in the midst of the nations
Possible meanings are 1) other nations were on all sides of Jerusalem or 2) “more important than all other nations.”

I have placed her
Jerusalem is referred to as “her” and “she.” (See: Personification)

other lands
“the neighboring countries” or “the countries around her”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jerusalem
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jerusalem
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 5:6

The people have rejected my judgments

“The people of Israel and Jerusalem have refused to obey my judgments.”

Translation Words - ULT

• judge, judgment
• nation
• disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
• walk, walked
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• judge, judgment
• nation
• disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
• walk, walked
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
6 But she has in wickedness rejected my decrees more than the nations have, and my statutes more than the countries that surround her. The people have rejected my judgments and have not walked in my statutes.”

UST
6 But the wicked people of Jerusalem rebel against obeying my commands, and they show that they are more wicked than the people of the surrounding countries. They rejected my laws and refused to obey my commands.
Ezekiel 5:7

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

Lord Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

Because you are more troublesome than
“because your sinfulness is worse than” or “because you are more unruly than”

that surround you
“That are all around you.”

have not walked in my statutes
Walking is a metaphor for the way a person lives. Alternate translation: “have not lived according to my statutes” or “have not obeyed my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

or acted according to my decrees
“or obeyed my decrees”

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• judge, judgment
• nation
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• judge, judgment
• nation
• nation
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 5:8

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I will execute judgments within your midst

“I will judge you in various ways” or “I will punish you”.

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- judge, judgment
- nation

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- judge, judgment
- nation

ULT
8 therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, “Behold! I myself will act against you. I will execute judgments within your midst for the nations to see.

UST
8 Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am opposed to you people of Jerusalem. I will punish you, and the people of other nations will see it.
Ezekiel 5:9

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel and Jerusalem.

what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again

“as I have not done before and will not do in a similar way again” or “like I have never done before and will never do again”.

because of all your disgusting actions

“because of all the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods.

ULT
9 I will do to you what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again, because of all your disgusting actions.

UST
9 Because of all your detestable idols and practices, I will punish you people of Jerusalem like I have never done before and will never do again.
Ezekiel 5:10

fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers

Ezekiel is probably telling what will really happen when the people have no food.

I will execute judgment on you

“I will judge you” or “I will punish you severely”

scatter to every direction all of you who are left

“I will force all of you who are left to go to different places.”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• son
• spirit, spiritual
• remnant
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• devour
• devour

Translation Words - UST

• son
• son
• spirit, spiritual
• remnant
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• devour
• devour

ULT
10 Therefore fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers, since I will execute judgment on you and scatter to every direction all of you who are left.

UST
10 As a result, parents among you will eat their children, and children will eat their parents because there will be nothing else to eat. I will punish you severely, and I will cause those who will still be alive to be scattered in every direction.
Ezekiel 5:11

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

**Lord Yahweh**
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

**defiled...sanctuary**
ruined the place that Yahweh had set aside to be only for his use

**with all your hateful things**
“with all of those things of yours that I hate.” You may need to make explicit that this refers to idols: “with all your idols, which I hate” or “with all your disgusting idols.” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**with all your disgusting deeds**
“with all the disgusting things that you do”

**my eye will not have pity on you**
The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “I will not pity you” (See: and Synecdoche)

**I will not spare you**
“I will surely punish you”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir

**Translation Words - UST**
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 5:12

they will be consumed by famine in your midst

“many of them will die because of famine”

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- winnow, sift
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
- consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- winnow, sift
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
- consume, devour

ULT

12 A third of you will die by plague, and they will be consumed by famine in your midst. A third will fall by the sword surrounding you. Then I will scatter a third in every direction, and draw out a sword to chase after them as well.

UST

12 One-third of your people will die inside the city because of the plagues they will experience, or by famine. One-third of your people will be killed by your enemies’ swords outside the city. And one-third I will scatter in every direction, but your enemies will still pursue you and kill you with their swords.
Ezekiel 5:13

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

my wrath will be completed
“I will no longer be angry because I will have done everything I wanted to do because I was angry”

I will cause my fury toward them to rest
The word “fury” means violent anger, and here it is a metonym for punishment. “I will stop punishing them because I will have punished them fully.” (See: Metonymy)

I will be satisfied
You may need to make explicit why Yahweh will be satisfied. Alternate translation: “I will be satisfied that I have punished them enough” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

when I have completed my fury against them
“when I have finished punishing them”

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- rest, rested, restless
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- rest, rested, restless
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 5:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- nation

**Translation Words - UST**

- nation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ULT</th>
<th>UST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14 I will make you a desolation and a reproach to the nations that surround you in the sight of everyone who passes by.</td>
<td>14 I will cause your city to be a ruins, so that people of other nations that are around you will pass by and see it and sneer at you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ezekiel 5:15

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

**in wrath and fury**

The words "wrath" and "fury" mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is very angry. Alternate translation: "because I will be very angry with you" (See: Doublet)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- nation

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- nation

**ULT**
15 So Jerusalem will become something for other people to condemn and to mock, a warning and a horror to the nations that surround you. I will execute judgments against you in wrath and fury, and with a furious rebuke—I, Yahweh have declared this!

**UST**
15 They will scorn you and taunt you. When I severely punish you because of my great anger, they will be horrified and you will be a warning to them. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.
Ezekiel 5:16

**will send out harsh arrows of famine against you**

The word “arrows” is a metonym for the sharp pains that people feel when they have had no food for a long time. Alternate translation: “will make you feel the pain of intense hunger” (See: Metonymy)

**increase the famine on you**

“make the famine more severe for you” or “make the famine last longer for you” or “make sure that there is less and less for you to eat”

**break your staff of bread**

A “staff” was something that people leaned upon to support them. This phrase is a metaphor that means removing the supply of food that the people were depending upon. See how “staff of bread” is translated in Ezekiel 4:16. Alternate translation: “cut off your food supply” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- bread

**Translation Words - UST**

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- bread
Ezekiel 5:17

Plague and blood will pass through you

Sickness and violent death are spoken of as if they were soldiers going through the city killing everyone they could. Alternate translation: “Many people will die of disease, and many others will die in war” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- sword, swordsmen
- famine

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- sword, swordsmen
- famine

ULT

17 I will send a famine and disasters against you so you will be childless. Plague and blood will pass through you, and I will bring a sword against you—I, Yahweh, have declared this.”

UST

17 So I will cause you to experience a famine, and I will send wild beasts to attack you and your children, and all your children will be killed. You will experience plagues and wars, and I will cause your enemies to attack you with their swords. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”
Ezekiel 6

Ezekiel 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Shrines on the hill tops

God will destroy all those who have been worshiping idols at the hill top shrines.
Ezekiel 6:1

General Information:

Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people so that the people of Israel would hear the words and know that Ezekiel's words were for them. (See: Apostrophe)

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16.
Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 6:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

set your face against the mountains of Israel

This is a command to stare at the mountains as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 4:3. Alternate translation: “stare at the mountains of Israel” or “stare at the mountains of Israel so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face against the mountains of Israel

The mountains of Israel were far away, so Ezekiel could not see them, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming it. Alternate translation: “turn toward the mountains of Israel and stare” or “stare toward the mountains of Israel so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze. (See: Metonymy)

the mountains of Israel

“the mountains in the land of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

• son  
  • prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess  
  • Israel, Israelites  
  • face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• son  
  • prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess  
  • Israel, Israelites  
  • face, facial
Ezekiel 6:3

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

I am bringing a sword against you

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “I am bringing soldiers to come and kill you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 6:4

**General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “People will no longer worship at your altars and your enemy will destroy your pillars” (See: Active or Passive)

**I will throw down**

Yahweh was speaking of sending soldiers (Ezekiel 6:3) to do these things. Alternate translation: “I will send soldiers to throw down” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**your dead**

“your people who have died”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- altar
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

**Translation Words - UST**

- altar
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 6:5

I will lay...and scatter

Yahweh was speaking of sending soldiers (Ezekiel 6:3) to do these things. Alternate translation: "I will send soldiers to lay...and scatter" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• altar
• son
• Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

• altar
• son
• Israel, Israelites

ULT
5 I will lay the dead bodies of the people of Israel before their idols, and scatter your bones around your altars.

UST
5 Their corpses will lie in front of their idols, and their bones will be scattered around their altars.
Ezekiel 6:6

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

cities will be laid waste
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Enemy armies will lay waste your cities” (See: Active or Passive)

they will be broken
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “enemy armies will break your altars” or “enemy armies will break them” (See: Active or Passive)

your pillars will be cut down
This can be translated in active form. See how you translated “pillars” in Ezekiel 6:4. Alternate translation: “they will cut down your pillars” (See: Active or Passive)

your works will be wiped away
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will remember what you have done” or “they will destroy everything you have made” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar

Translation Words - UST

- altar
Ezekiel 6:7

The dead will fall down in your midst

“You will see the enemy kill many people”

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 6:8

General Information:

These are Yahweh’s words to the people of Israel.

some who escape the sword

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “some whom the soldiers do not kill” (See: Metonymy)

when you are scattered throughout the countries

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “when I scatter you in different countries” or “when I force you to live in other countries” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- nation
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- nation
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 6:9

I was grieved by their promiscuous heart that turned away from me

Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a woman who sleeps with many people. Alternate translation: “I was sad because they were like a wife who has left me to sleep with other men” (See: Synecdoche)

by their eyes that whored after their idols

Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a married woman who looks at other men and desires to sleep with them. Alternate translation: “by the way they desired strongly to worship idols” (See: Synecdoche)

they will show loathing on their face for the wickedness which they have committed

Possible meanings are 1) “their faces will show that they hate themselves because of the wicked things they have done” or 2) “their faces will show that they hate the wicked things that they have done.”

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- nation
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- nation
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- prostitute, harlot, whored
Ezekiel 6:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**ULT**
10 So they will know that I am Yahweh. It was for a reason that I said I would bring this evil to them.

**UST**
10 And you will realize that I, Yahweh, have punished you. You will realize that when I threatened to punish you, I surely intended to do that.
The Lord Yahweh says this: Clap your hands and stomp your foot! Say, ‘Alas!’ because of all the evil abominations of the house of Israel! For they will fall by sword, famine, and plague.

So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you, Ezekiel: Slap your hands and stamp your feet and cry out to show that you are distressed, and groan about what will happen to the Israelite people because of all their wicked and detestable behavior. They will be killed by their enemies’ swords, they will die from hunger, and they will die from plagues.
- house
Ezekiel 6:12

I will accomplish my fury against them

“I will satisfy my anger against them” or “I will punish them until I am no longer angry”

Translation Words - ULT

• wrath, fury
• sword, swordsmen
• famine

Translation Words - UST

• wrath, fury
• sword, swordsmen
• famine

ULT
12 The one far away will die by plague, and the one who is near will fall by the sword. Those who remain and survive will die by famine. In this way I will accomplish my fury against them.

UST
12 Those who are far from Jerusalem will die from plagues, those who are close to Jerusalem will be killed by their enemies’ swords. Those who are still alive after that will die from hunger. That is how I will punish them.
Ezekiel 6:13

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak

Another possible meaning is “hill, on all the mountain peaks, under every flourishing tree, and under every thick oak.”

flourishing
healthy and growing

oak
a large tree with strong wood that provided shade for worshipers

Translation Words - ULT

• altar
• Yahweh
• head
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• altar
• Yahweh
• head
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
13 Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when their dead lie among their idols, around their altars, on every high hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak—the places where they burned incense to all their idols.

UST
13 Some of your people's corpses will lie among their idols around their altars, on every high hilltop and on all the mountaintops, under every big tree—at all the places where they burned incense to honor their idols. When this happens you will realize that I, Yahweh, have done this.
Ezekiel 6:14

Diblah

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

14 I will strike with my hand and make the land desolate and a waste, from the wilderness to Diblah, throughout all the places where they live. Then they will know that I am Yahweh." [1]

6:14 [1] Instead of Diblah, some ancient copies and modern versions have Riblah.

UST

14 For I will display my power and cause every area in which they live in your country to become an empty wasteland, from the desert in the far south to the town of Diblah in the far north. Then they will realize that I, Yahweh, have done this."
Ezekiel 7

Ezekiel 7 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Now is the time for punishment

The people will be punished severely for their idol worship and the temple will be destroyed. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 7:1

General Information:
This starts God's prophecy of judgment on Israel.

The word of Yahweh came
This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh

ULT

1 The word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

UST

1 Yahweh gave me another message. He said,
Ezekiel 7:2

**the Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. Alternate translation: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

**to the land of Israel**

The word “land” is a metonym for the people who live on the land. Alternate translation: “to the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

**An end!**

“The end has come!”

**the four borders of the land**

“The entire land” The “four borders” are to the north, east, south, and west.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 7:3

**General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words to the people of Israel.

**the end is upon you**

The “end” is spoken of as if it were a robber attacking the people. Alternate translation: “your life is finished” (See: Personification)

**I am sending out my wrath on you**

“Wrath” is spoken of as if it were an arrow that Yahweh was shooting at the people. Alternate translation: “I am angry, and I will punish you” (See: Metaphor)

**according to your ways**

“according to the things you do” or “because of the wicked things you do”

**I will bring all your abominations upon you**

“I will punish you for doing those things that I hate so much”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- judge, judgment

**Translation Words - UST**

- judge, judgment
Ezekiel 7:4

For my eyes will not pity you

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “For I will not pity you” (See: Synecdoche)

I will bring your ways upon you

The way a person lives is spoken of as a path on which one walks. Alternate translation: “I will punish you for the things you have done” (See: Metaphor)

your abominations will be in your midst

Possible meanings are 1) “I will punish all of you because of your abominations” or 2) “this will happen as long as you continue to worship idols.”

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 7:5

General Information:
These are Yahweh’s words to the people of Israel.

The Lord Yahweh says this
Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:11. Alternate translation: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Lord Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

Disaster! A unique disaster! Behold, it is coming.
These exclaimations are meant to make the passage very strong. Alternate translation: “Behold, a terrible disaster is coming, one that no one has ever experienced before”

Behold, it
“You can be absolutely sure that it”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
Ezekiel 7:6

The end has woken up against you

The judgment that is coming is treated as if it were an enemy waking up from sleep. (See: Personification)

ULT
6 An end is surely coming. The end has woken up against you. Behold, it is coming!

UST
6 This will be the end of Israel; your country will be finished! And your lives will be ended!
Ezekiel 7:7

the mountains will no longer be joyful

The word “mountains” is a metonym for the people who live on the mountains. Alternate translation: “the people on the mountains will not have any more joy” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• time, untimely, date
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• time, untimely, date
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
7 Your doom is coming to you who inhabit the land. The time has come; the day of destruction is near, and the mountains will no longer be joyful.

UST
7 It will be the end of you people who live in the land of Israel. The time has come; the day when you will be destroyed is near. At that time the people who worship idols on the mountains will not be happy; they will panic.
Ezekiel 7:8

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

Now before long

“Very soon now”

I will pour out my fury against you and fill up my wrath upon you

Yahweh uses the terms "pour out" and "fill up" to speak of his anger as if it were water that he poured out into a jar. These phrases emphasize that Yahweh will punish the people severely. Alternate translation: “I will punish you severely because I am very angry” (See: Metaphor and Parallelism)

fury

“wrath” or “great anger”

Translation Words - ULT

• wrath, fury
• judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

• wrath, fury
• judge, judgment
For my eye will not look compassionately

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “I will not look on them with compassion” or “I will not be compassionate to them” (See: and Synecdoche)

I will not spare you

“I will not leave you without punishment” or “I will punish you”

your abominations will be in your midst so you will know that I am Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 7:4.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 7:10

General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

Behold, the day! Behold, it is coming!

“Behold! The day is coming!” You may need to make explicit which day is coming. Alternate translation: “Behold! The day when I will punish you is coming!” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

Doom has gone out

“Disaster has begun to come to Israel” or “Terrible things have begun to happen”

The rod has blossomed, arrogance has budded

Possible meanings are 1) “The people of Israel have grown very proud” or “The people of Israel have become very violent and very proud.” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 7:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

11 Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness—none of them, and none of their multitude, none of their wealth, and none of their importance will last!

UST

11 People are acting violently and doing more wicked things. And nothing that belongs to those people will be left, none of their money, and they will not be respected by anyone.
Ezekiel 7:12

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

The time is coming; the day has come close
Both “The time” and “the day” refer to the time when God will punish the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Israel's punishment will happen very soon” (See: Parallelism)

my anger is on the entire multitude
“I am angry with the whole multitude”

multitude
a very large number of people. Here it refers to the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

• time, untimely, date
• mourn, mourner, weeping
• joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

• time, untimely, date
• mourn, mourner, weeping
• joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

ULT
12 The time is coming; the day has come close. Do not let the buyer rejoice, nor the seller mourn, since my anger is on the entire multitude!

UST
12 Now is the time; that day has arrived. People who buy things should not rejoice because they bought things very cheaply and those who sell things should not be sad because they had to sell things cheaply, because Yahweh will be punishing everyone.
Ezekiel 7:13

as long as they both live

as long as "the buyer" and "the seller" (7:12) both live

the vision concerning the entire multitude will not be reversed

"God will surely do to the multitude what he has shown me"

none of them will be strengthened

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not strengthen any of them" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• restore, restoration
• restore, restoration (2)
• strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

• restore, restoration
• restore, restoration (2)
• strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 7:14

General Information:
These are Yahweh’s words about Israel.

They have blown the trumpet
“They have blown the trumpet to call people to fight against the enemy”

my anger is on the entire multitude
“I am angry with the whole multitude.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 7:12.

Translation Words - ULT
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 7:15

The sword is on the outside

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation:

When those things happen, your enemies will be outside the city with their swords, and there will be plagues and famines inside the city. Those who are caught outside of the city in the fields will be killed by their enemies’ swords, and those who are in the city will die from famines and plagues.

The building

while famine and plague will consume those in the city

The word “consume” is a metaphor for “totally destroy.” Alternate translation: “and most of the people in the city will die from hunger and sickness” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- sword, swordsmen
- famine
- house

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- sword, swordsmen
- famine
- house

ULT

15 The sword is on the outside, and plague and famine are inside the building. Those who are in the field will die by the sword, while famine and plague will consume those in the city.

15 When those things happen, your enemies will be outside the city with their swords, and there will be plagues and famines inside the city. Those who are caught outside of the city in the fields will be killed by their enemies’ swords, and those who are in the city will die from famines and plagues.
Ezekiel 7:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
16 But some survivors will escape from among them, and they will go to the mountains. Like doves of the valleys, all of them will moan—each man for his iniquity.

UST
16 Those who survive and escape will flee to the mountains, and they all will moan because of their sins, as pigeons moan.
Ezekiel 7:17

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

Every hand will falter and every knee will be weak as water

The hands and knees are synecdoches for the people themselves. Alternate translation: “Everyone will be so terrified that they will be unable to work and their knees will become weak so that they cannot stand” (See: Synecdoche)

falter
fail to do what it is supposed to do

every knee will be weak as water

Another possible translation is, “every knee will flow with water,” a euphemism for all the people losing control of their bladders because they are so frightened. (See: Euphemism)

knee...weak as water

Water cannot stand up, and the people's knees will be so weak that the people are unable to stand on their legs. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 7:18

terror will cover them

Terror is spoken of as if it were clothing. Alternate translation: “everyone will see how terrified they are” (See: Metaphor)

baldness on all of their heads

Shaving the head was a sign of sadness. Alternate translation: “all of them will shave their heads” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• sackcloth
• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
• head
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• sackcloth
• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
• head
• face, facial
Ezekiel 7:19

in the day of Yahweh’s rage

“in the day when Yahweh acts on his anger” or “when Yahweh punishes them”

the day

This can be a time period of more or less than one 24-hour day.

their hunger will not be satisfied

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will not be able to satisfy their hunger” or “they will still be hungry even after they eat all they have” (See: Active or Passive)

their iniquity has become a stumbling block

Possible meanings are 1) “because having a lot of gold and silver has led them to sin” or 2) “because they are evil, they are committing sins that show how evil they are.”

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• iniquity
• Yahweh
• silver
• silver
• gold, golden
• gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• iniquity
• Yahweh
• silver
• silver
• gold, golden
• gold, golden
Ezekiel 7:20

**General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words about Israel.

**ULT**

20 In their pride they took the beauty of his jeweled ornaments, and with them they made their idolatrous figures, and their detestable things. Therefore, I am turning these into an unclean thing to them.

**UST**

20 They were proud, so they used their beautiful jewelry to make detestable and disgusting idols of their false gods. So I will make them see how disgusting and unacceptable these things are.
Ezekiel 7:21

I will give those things into the hand of strangers

The word “hand” is used to refer to control. “I will give those idols into the control of people they do not know” or “I will give those idols to people they do not know” (See: Metonymy)

plunder

things that are stolen or taken by force

they will defile them

The strangers and wicked people will defile the idols that the people of Israel had made.

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• profane, profaned
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• profane, profaned
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 7:22

I will turn my face away

“I will not pay attention” or “I will look away” or “I will not notice”

my cherished place

“the place I love.” This refers to God’s temple.

bandits

violent people who steal and destroy

Translation Words - ULT

• profane, profaned
• profane, profaned
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• profane, profaned
• profane, profaned
• face, facial
Ezekiel 7:23

General Information:
These are Yahweh’s words to Ezekiel about Israel.

Make a chain
Chains are used to hold slaves or prisoners. God says this to show the people that they will become slaves or prisoners.

the land is filled with the judgment of blood
Possible meanings are 1) “everywhere in the country God is judging people because they violently killed others” or 2) “the courts everywhere in the country are murdering people.” The word “blood” here represents murder and death. (See: Metonymy)

the city is full of violence
The city is spoken of as if it were a container, and violence is spoken of as an object that can be put in a container. The abstract noun “violence” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “violence is everywhere in the city” or “many people in the city are doing violent things to others” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
- blood
- judge, judgment
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- blood
- judge, judgment
- earth, earthen, earthly
So I will bring the most wicked of the nations, and they will possess their houses, and I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty, for their holy places will be defiled!

So I will bring armies of the nations whose people are extremely wicked to take the houses of the Israelite people. I will make Israelite people realize that they are to no longer be proud. Your enemies will cause your places of worship to no longer be acceptable to be used.

**ULT**

24 So I will bring the most wicked of the nations, and they will possess their houses, and I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty, for their holy places will be defiled!

**UST**

24 So I will bring armies of the nations whose people are extremely wicked to take the houses of the Israelite people. I will make Israelite people realize that they are to no longer be proud. Your enemies will cause your places of worship to no longer be acceptable to be used.
Ezekiel 7:25

Fear will come
“The people will be afraid”

They will seek peace
“They will try to make peace with their enemies”

but there will be none
“but they will be unable to make peace with their enemies”

Translation Words - ULT

• peace, peaceful, peacemakers
• seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

• peace, peaceful, peacemakers
• seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 7:26

**General Information:**
These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

**Disaster upon disaster will come**
Disaster is spoken of as if it could move by itself. Alternate translation: “One disaster after another will happen” (See: Personification)

**they will seek a vision from the prophet**
“They will ask the prophets what visions they have seen”

**the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders**
“The priests will not teach the law, and the elders will not be able to give good advice.” This is because God will not give them wisdom.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- perish
- seek, search, look for

**Translation Words - UST**
- perish
- seek, search, look for

ULT
26 Disaster upon disaster will come, and there will be rumor after rumor. Then they will seek a vision from the prophet, but the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders.

UST
26 You will experience many disasters, and you will continually hear rumors about disasters that are happening in other places. People will plead with prophets to tell them what visions they have received, but the prophets will not have received any visions. Priests will no longer teach people the laws that I gave to Moses. Even the wise older people will not have any answers.
Ezekiel 7:27

the prince
Possible meanings are 1) “the king’s son” or 2) every male member of the royal family except the king.

will dress in despair
Possible meanings are 1) clothing is a metonym for what a person feels, “will have no hope,” or 2) “will dress in clothes that show he is mourning.” (See: Idiom and Metonymy)

the hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear
The word “hands” is a synecdoche for the people. Alternate translation: “the people of the land will be so afraid that their hands will tremble” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- hand
- people, people group,
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- hand
- people, people group,
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
27 The king will mourn and the prince will dress in despair, while the hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear. According to their own ways I will do this to them! I will judge them with their own standards until they know that I am Yahweh.”

7:5 (1) Instead of Disaster! A unique disaster! Some ancient copies have Disaster after disaster

UST
27 Your king will mourn, and his son will no longer expect that good things will happen. The hands of people throughout the country will tremble. And I will do to them what they deserve for their wicked behavior. I will judge and condemn them the same way they have judged and condemned others. Then they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 8

Ezekiel 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah's sin

The people have contaminated the temple with their worship of other gods and through their sin. (See: temple and god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)
Ezekiel 8:1

General Information:

Ezekiel tells about another vision he saw.

So it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the sixth year

You may need to make explicit the time period of which this is the sixth year. Alternate translation: “in the sixth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month

This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of September on Western calendars. Alternate translation: “the fifth day of the sixth month” (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me

This should be translated literally, as Ezekiel later sees something like a hand. Others may choose to consider the hand a metaphor for Yahweh's presence or power. (See: Metaphor)

Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:4.

fell upon

“took hold of”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- Judea
- hand
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- Judea
- hand
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 8:2

a likeness with the appearance of a man

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a man. Both “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “there was someone who appeared to be a man” (See: Abstract Nouns)

glowing metal

When metal is very hot, it glows with a yellow or orange light.

the appearance of his hips…the appearance of something shining

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “what appeared to be his hips…what appeared to be something shining” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 8:3

**General Information:**

Ezekiel continues telling about the vision from God.

**he reached out**

The word “he” probably refers to the “figure like a man” (Ezekiel 8:2).

**between earth and heaven**

“between the ground and the sky”

**in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem**

The words “in visions” mean that this experience is happening in Ezekiel's thoughts. His body would still be in his home while God shows him these things.

**the inner northern gate**

“the inner northern gate of the temple.” The temple was surrounded by two walls, one inside the other. This gate was on the north side of the inner wall. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**the idol that provokes great jealousy**

“the idol that causes God to be very jealous”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- Jerusalem
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- Jerusalem
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 8:4

down the vision I had seen on the plain

Possible meanings are 1) “who looked the same as what I had seen in the vision that I saw when I was on the plain” or 2) “who looked the same as what I saw when I was on the plain.”

the plain

a large area of flat land that has few trees.

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• glory, glorious, glorify
• Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

• God
• glory, glorious, glorify
• Israel, Israelites

ULT

4 Then behold, the glory of the God of Israel was there, according to the vision I had seen on the plain.

UST

4 And there in front of me was the very bright light of God himself whom the Israelite people previously worshiped. It was like the vision that I had seen in the plain.
**Ezekiel 8:5**

**General Information:**

The “figure like a man” (Ezekiel 8:2) speaks to Ezekiel.

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**lift up your eyes...lifted up my eyes**

This idiom means that he should look towards something. Alternate translation: “look up...looked up” or “turn your head and look...turned my head and looked” (See: Idiom)

**gate leading to the altar**

“gate through which people would walk so they could go to the altar”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- altar
- son

**Translation Words - UST**

- altar
- son

ULT

5 Then he said to me, “Son of man, lift up your eyes to the north.” So I lifted up my eyes to the north, and to the north of the gate leading to the altar, there in the entrance, was the idol of jealousy.

UST

5 God said to me, “Son of man, look toward the north!” So I looked, and I saw at the entrance of the gate near the altar that idol that caused Yahweh to be disgusted and furious.
Ezekiel 8:6

do you see what they are doing?

God uses this question to bring Ezekiel's attention to what the people were doing. Alternate translation: “I want you to understand why I hate what the people here are doing.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• restore, restoration
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• restore, restoration
• Israel, Israelites
• house

ULT

6 So he said to me, “Son of man, do you see what they are doing? These are great abominations that the house of Israel is doing here to make me go far from my own sanctuary. But you will turn and see even greater abominations.”

UST

6 He said to me, “Son of man, do you see what the Israelite people are doing? They are doing detestable things here, things that will cause me to abandon my temple. But you will see things that are even more detestable.”
Ezekiel 8:7

the courtyard

You may need to make explicit which courtyard. “the temple courtyard” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT
7 Then he brought me to the doorway of the courtyard, and I looked, and there was a hole in the wall.

UST
7 Then he brought me to the entrance of the courtyard. I looked and saw a hole in the wall.
Ezekiel 8:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT
8 He said to me, “Son of man, dig into this wall.” So I dug into the wall, and there was a door.

UST
8 He said to me, “Son of man, dig through the wall here.” So I dug through the wall, and I saw a doorway inside.
Ezekiel 8:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• abomination, abominable
• evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

• abomination, abominable
• evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

9 Then he said to me, “Go and see the wicked abominations that they are doing here.”

UST

9 He said to me, “Go in and see the wicked and detestable things that they are doing here!”
Ezekiel 8:10

**Behold**

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw. Your language may have a different word to show this.

**Every form of creeping thing and detestable beast**

“Carvings in the wall of all kinds of creeping animals and detestable beasts.” The phrase “creeping thing” refer to insects and other small animals.

**The house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: **Metonymy**)

**The wall all around**

You may need to make explicit which wall. Alternate translation: “the wall all around the temple” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- *Israel, Israelites*
- *cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox*
- *house*

**Translation Words - UST**

- *Israel, Israelites*
- *cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox*
- *house*
Ezekiel 8:11

Jaazaniah...Shaphan

men’s names (See: How to Translate Names)

censer

a pan that people burn incense in when they worship God or false gods

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- house

ULT

11 Seventy elders of the house of Israel were there, and Jaazaniah son of Shaphan was standing in their midst. They were standing in front of the images, and each man had his censer in his hand so that the smell of the cloud of incense went up.

UST

11 In front of them stood seventy elders of Israel. Jaazaniah son of Shaphan, was standing among them. Each of them was holding a pan in which incense was burning, and fragrant smoke of burning incense was rising up.
Ezekiel 8:12

do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark?

God is commanding Ezekiel to look at what the elders are doing. 
Alternate translation: “look at what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. 
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

the hidden chamber of his idol

“the room where no one can see him worship his idol”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
Ezekiel 8:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration

ULT
13 Then he said to me, “Turn again and see the other great abominations that they are doing.”

UST
13 He also said, “But you will see things that are even more detestable!”
Ezekiel 8:14

the entrance of the gate of Yahweh's house that was on the north side

This was the outer north gate—not the same one as in Ezekiel 8:3.

behold!

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

mourning for Tammuz

grieving because the false god Tammuz had died (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house
Ezekiel 8:15

**Do you see this...man?**

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. Alternate translation: “Think about this...man.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- restore, restoration

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- restore, restoration

---

**ULT**

15 So he said to me, “Do you see this, son of man? Turn again and see even greater abominations than these.”

**UST**

15 He said to me, “Son of man, do you see this? And you will see things that are more detestable than this!”
Ezekiel 8:16

_behold!_

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

_portico_

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support

_their faces toward the east_

“they were looking toward the east”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- temple
- temple
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- temple
- temple
- face, facial
- house
Ezekiel 8:17

Do you see this...man?

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. Alternate translation: “Think about this...man.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Is it a little thing for the house of Judah to do these abominations that they are doing here?

God uses this question to show that he is right to be angry at the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “I am right to be angry at the house of Judah because of these abominations that they are doing here.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

house of Judah

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: Metonymy)

they have filled the land with violence

“throughout the country they are doing violent things or “all over the country they are attacking one another”

to provoke me to anger

“to make me angry”

putting the branch to their noses

Possible meanings are 1) the people were using the branches in false worship or 2) the people were using the branches to show rebellion against Yahweh. The words “branch to...noses” may be a literal tree branch and literal noses, or they could be the term for a hand gesture. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- abomination, abominable
- son
- Judea
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- house

Translation Words - UST

- abomination, abominable
- son
- Judea
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- house
Ezekiel 8:18

my eye will not have compassion

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “I will not look on them with compassion” or “I will not be compassionate to them” (See: and Synecdoche)

I will not spare them

“I will still punish them”

Though they cry in my ears with a loud voice

“Though they yell their prayers to me with a loud voice”

I will not hear them

“I will not listen to them”

Translation Words - ULT

• wrath, fury
• declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

• wrath, fury
• declare, proclaim, announce
Ezekiel 9

Ezekiel 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sorrow over sin

God was looking for people who were sad that there was so much evil being done. Yahweh would keep these faithful people from being killed with the rest of the people. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and evil, wicked, unpleasant and faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy)
Ezekiel 9:1

General Information:
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision God gave him. It started in Ezekiel 8:1.

he cried in my hearing
“I heard him call out”

he cried
the “figure like a man” (Ezekiel 8:2) cried

weapon of destruction
weapon for destroying people or things

Translation Words - ULT
• hand
  • declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST
• hand
  • declare, proclaim, announce

ULT
1 Then he cried in my hearing with a loud voice, and said, “Let the guards come up to the city, each with his weapon of destruction in his hand.”

UST
1 Then Yahwehed call out loudly, “You men who are going to punish this city, bring your tools of destruction here.”
Ezekiel 9:2

**weapon of slaughter**

weapon for killing many people

**behold**

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**the upper gate that faces north**

“the upper northern gate” or “the north gate of the inner court”

**linen**

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. Alternate translation: “smooth cloth” (See: Translate Unknowns)

**scribe’s equipment**

tools that scribes write with

**bronze**

A dark gold-colored metal. It is made from mostly copper with tin added for strength. (See: Translate Unknowns)

**Translation Words - UST**

- altar
- scribe
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- bronze

**Translation Words - UST**

- altar
- scribe
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- bronze
Ezekiel 9:3

from the cherubim where it had been

Possible meanings are 1) “from above the four winged creatures” (Ezekiel 1:5) or 2) from between the two cherubim in the most holy place in the temple. Try to translate this literally. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

threshold of the house

The “house” refers to God's temple.

linen

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:2.

scribe's equipment

tools that scribes write with. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:2.

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- scribe
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

ULT

3 Then the glory of the God of Israel went up from the cherubim where it had been to the threshold of the house. He called to the man dressed in linen who had the scribe's equipment at his side.

UST

3 Then the glory that symbolized the presence of the God of Israel rose up from above the four winged creatures and moved to the entrance of the temple, and Yahweh called to the man wearing the linen robe,
Ezekiel 9:4

groan and sigh

These are sounds people make when they feel very sad or grieved about something. (See: Doublet)

the abominations being performed in the midst of the city

“the horrible things being done in the city” or “the detestable things that people are doing in the city

Translation Words - ULT

• abomination, abominable
• Yahweh
• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• abomination, abominable
• Yahweh
• Jerusalem

ULT

4 Yahweh said to him, “Pass through the midst of the city—the midst of Jerusalem—and make a mark on the foreheads of those who groan and sigh about all the abominations being performed in the midst of the city.”

UST

4 and said to him, “Go throughout Jerusalem and put a mark on the foreheads of those who are very sad because of the detestable things that are being done inside the city.”
Ezekiel 9:5

he spoke to the others within my hearing

The word “others” refers to the guards (Ezekiel 9:1).

Do not let your eyes have compassion

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “Do not have compassion” (See: and Synecdoche)

do not spare

“do not refrain from killing”
Ezekiel 9:6

**mark on his head**

These were the people who groaned about the abominations happening in Jerusalem. See how you translated “mark” in Ezekiel 9:4.

**Begin at my sanctuary**

You may need to make explicit what the people are to begin to do at the sanctuary. Alternate translation: “Begin to kill the ones who do not have the mark at my sanctuary” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**the elders**

Possible meanings are 1) the “seventy elders of the house of Israel” (Ezekiel 8:11) or 2) any “old man” (see the beginning of the verse).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- profane, profaned
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- profane, profaned
- house
Ezekiel 9:7

**General Information:**
God continuing to speak to the guards judging the people of Israel.

**the house**
the temple

**attacked the city**
The word “city” is a metonym for the people in the city. Alternate translation: “attacked the people in the city” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- command, commandment
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- command, commandment
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**ULT**
7 He said to them, “Defile the house, and fill its courtyards with the dead. Proceed!” So they went out and attacked the city.

**UST**
7 Then Yahweh said to those men, “Pollute the temple by filling the courtyard with the corpses of those whom you kill! Start now!” So they went out and starting killing people throughout the city.
Ezekiel 9:8

I fell on my face

“"I bowed down to the ground" or “I lay on the ground." Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28. (See: Idiom)

Ah, Lord Yahweh

Ezekiel says this because he is very troubled by what the Lord told the men to do to Jerusalem. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 4:14.

will you destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?

Ezekiel is pleading with Yahweh not to destroy the remnant. Alternate translation: “please do not destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem!” (See: Idiom and Rhetorical Question)

in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem

Wrath is spoken of as if it were a liquid that Yahweh could pour out of a container. The word "Jerusalem" is a metonym for the people in the city. The abstract noun "outpouring" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “when you pour out your wrath on Jerusalem” or “when you punish the people of Jerusalem because you are very angry with them” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- remnant
- Jerusalem
- cry, cry out, outcry
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- remnant
- Jerusalem
- cry, cry out, outcry
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 9:9

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

exceedingly great

“very great”

The land is full of blood and the city full of perversions

Here “land” is spoken of as if it were a container filled with blood. Here “blood” is metonym for murder. And “city” is spoken of as if it were a container and “perversions” were the contents inside of it. Alternate translation: “All over the land people are killing innocent people, and all over the city people are doing wicked things” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
Ezekiel 9:10

**my eye will not look with compassion**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “I will not look on them with compassion” or “I will not be compassionate to them” (See: and **Synecdoche**)

**bring it all on their heads**

To bring someone’s conduct on him represents punishing him for his bad conduct. Alternate translation: “punishing them as they deserve”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- head

**Translation Words - UST**

- head
Ezekiel 9:11

**Behold**

“Pay attention to what I am about to say”

**linen**

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:2. Alternate translation: “smooth cloth” (See: Translate Unknowns)

**He reported and said**

“He reported to Yahweh and told him”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- robe, robed

**Translation Words - UST**

- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- robe, robed

**ULT**

11 Behold! The man dressed in linen who had the scribe's equipment by his side came back. He reported and said, “I have done all that you have commanded.”

**UST**

11 Then the man wearing the linen robe returned, saying, “I have done what you commanded me to do.”
Ezekiel 10

Ezekiel 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God left the temple

God now abandoned Judah, and left the temple. This was devastating to the religious life of Judah. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 10:1

General Information:
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in Ezekiel 8:1.

toward the dome
“toward the curved roof”

cherubim
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:3.

like a sapphire
a valuable blue or green gemstone

with the appearance of the likeness of a throne
“that looked like something that looked like a throne.” Ezekiel is not willing to say for sure that it looked like a throne.

Translation Words - ULT

- head
- throne, enthroned

Translation Words - UST

- head
- throne, enthroned
Ezekiel 10:2

linen

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:2. Alternate translation: “smooth cloth” (See: Translate Unknowns)

Go between the wheels

Translate the word “wheels” as in Ezekiel 1:15.

fiery coals

Coals are the burned pieces of wood left over after a fire. They are black, but they glow red and orange when they are very hot. They are also called charcoal.

scatter them over the city

“sprinkle them over the city” or “spread them over the city”

Translation Words - ULT

• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 10:3

Connecting Statement:
Ezekiel interrupts his description of what was happening and describes what he saw.

The cherubim stood...inner courtyard
This is background information for the events that follow. (See: Background Information)

cherubim
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:3.

on the right side
As one faces east, “the right side” is toward the south. Alternate translation: “on the south side” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the house

Translation Words - ULT
- appoint, appointed
- house

Translation Words - UST
- appoint, appointed
- house

ULT
3 The cherubim stood on the right side of the house when the man went in, and a cloud filled the inner courtyard.

UST
3 The four winged creatures were standing on the south side of the temple when the man wearing the white robe entered. Then a cloud filled the inner courtyard of the temple.
Ezekiel 10:4

The glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28.

It filled

the glory of Yahweh filled

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- house
- house
Ezekiel 10:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Almighty

Translation Words - UST

• Almighty

ULT

5 The sound of the cherubim's wings was heard as far as the outer courtyard, like the voice of God Almighty when he speaks.

UST

5 I also heard the sound made by the wings of the winged creatures in the courtyard outside the temple. It was very loud, like the voice of Almighty God when he speaks.
It came about, when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said, “Take fire from between the wheels that are between the cherubim,” the man went in and stood beside a wheel.

When Yahweh commanded the man wearing the linen robe to take burning coals from among those winged creatures, the man went into the courtyard and stood beside one of the wheels.

The man dressed in linen

Translate “linen” as in Ezekiel 9:1.

Beside a wheel

Translate “wheel” as in Ezekiel 1:15.
Ezekiel 10:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

7 A cherub reached out his hand between the cherubim to the fire that was among the cherubim, and lifted it up and placed it into the hands of the one dressed in linen. The man took it and went back out.

UST

7 Then one of those winged creatures reached out his hand to the fire that was there among them. He picked up some of the coals and put them in the hands of the man wearing the linen robe, and that man took them and left.
Ezekiel 10:8

I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings

“I saw that the cherubim had something like a man's hand under their wings”

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT
8 I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings.

UST
8 Under the wings of the winged creatures was something that resembled a human's hands.
Ezekiel 10:9

**behold**
Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw

**wheels**
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:15.

**the appearance of the wheels was like a beryl stone**
The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "the wheels appeared to be like a beryl stone" or "what appeared to be wheels were like a beryl stone" (See: Abstract Nouns)

**beryl stone**
“Beryl” here is a very hard, valuable stone. This beryl was probably green or blue. (See: Translate Unknowns)
Ezekiel 10:10

Their appearance was the same likeness for all four of them

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “All four of them appeared to be similar” (See: Abstract Nouns)

a wheel intersecting another wheel

The word “intersecting” means “crossing” or “passing through.”
Ezekiel 10:11

**they went in any of their four directions**

Possible meanings are 1) “their” refers to the creatures. Alternate translation: “they would go straight in any one of the four directions that the creatures looked towards” or 2) “their” refers to the wheels.

**whenever direction the head faced, they followed**

Possible meanings for “the head” are 1) this refers to the winged creatures. Alternate translation: “they went in whatever direction the winged creatures were looking” or 2) this refers to the front wheel. Alternate translation: “they followed in whatever direction the front wheel went”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- chief
  - walk, walked
  - walk, walked (2)

**Translation Words - UST**

- chief
  - walk, walked
  - walk, walked (2)
Ezekiel 10:12

wheels

Translate the word “wheels” as in Ezekiel 1:15.

Translation Words - ULT

• flesh
• hand

Translation Words - UST

• flesh
• hand

ULT
12 Their whole body—including their backs, their hands, and their wings—was covered with eyes, and eyes covered the four wheels all around also.

UST
12 Their bodies, including their backs and hands and wings, were covered with eyes. The wheels were also covered with eyes.
**Ezekiel 10:13**

the wheels were called, “Whirling.”

The word “Whirling” means “Spinning.” Here it is the name of the wheels. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone called the wheels, ‘Whirling.’” or “the name of the wheels was ‘Whirling.’” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

• call, call out

**Translation Words - UST**

• call, call out

ULT

13 As I listened, the wheels were called, “Whirling.”

UST

13 I heard someone call them ‘the whirling wheels.’
Ezekiel 10:14

They had four faces each

“They had four faces each; the first face was the face of a cherub, the second face was the face of a man, the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- lion, lioness
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial (2)
- face, facial (3)
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- lion, lioness
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial (2)
- face, facial (3)
- face, facial
Ezekiel 10:15

living creatures

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:13.

rose up

“went up into the air”

ULT
15 Then the cherubim—these were the living creatures that I had seen by the Kebar Canal—rose up.

UST
15 Then the winged creatures rose up. They were the same living creatures that I had seen alongside the Kebar Canal.
Ezekiel 10:16

They still stayed beside them

“'The wheels stayed with the cherubim.’ Alternate translation: ‘The wheels moved with the cherubim’

Translation Words - ULT

• walk, walked
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• walk, walked
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
16 Whenever the cherubim moved, the wheels would go beside them, and whenever the cherubim lifted up their wings to rise up from the earth, the wheels did not turn. They still stayed beside them.

UST
16 When the winged creatures moved, the wheels moved with them. When the winged creatures spread their wings to fly over the ground, the wheels did not leave them but stayed beside them.
Ezekiel 10:17

stood still
“stayed still” or “did not move”

the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels

Possible meanings are 1) Ezekiel is speaking of the “creatures” of verse 15 as if they were one creature. Alternate translation: “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or 2) Ezekiel is using an idiom. Alternate translation: “the spirit of life was in the wheels” or “the living spirit was in the wheels” or 3) the spirit in the creatures and in the wheels is the same. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:20. Alternate translation: “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- appoint, appointed
Ezekiel 10:18

the glory of Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28.

the house
the temple

stood over
“stayed over” or “waited over”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- house

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- house
Ezekiel 10:19

came upon them from above

“went above the cherubim”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

ULT

19 The cherubim lifted up their wings and rose from the earth in my sight when they went out, and the wheels did the same beside them. They stood at the eastern entrance to Yahweh’s house, and the glory of the God of Israel came upon them from above.

UST

19 While I watched, the winged creatures spread their wings and started to fly, and the wheels went with them. They stopped at the gate on the east side of the temple, and the glory of God, the one whom the Israelites had worshiped, was above them.
Ezekiel 10:20

the living creatures

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:13.

the Kebar Canal

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:1.

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• Israel, Israelites
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• God
• Israel, Israelites
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
20 These were the living creatures that I had seen below the God of Israel by the Kebar Canal, so I knew that they were cherubim!

UST
20 These were the same four living creatures that I had seen alongside the Kebar Canal, and I realized that they were the winged creatures.
Ezekiel 10:21

the likeness of human hands

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like human hands. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “something that looked like human hands” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
- hand
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST
- hand
- face, facial
Ezekiel 10:22

the likeness of their faces was like the faces that I had seen

The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “their faces looked like the faces that I had seen” (See: Abstract Nouns)

went straight ahead

“faced forward” or “looked directly ahead”

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial
• face, facial
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
• face, facial
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 11

Ezekiel 11 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Safety
The people were trusting Jerusalem to keep them safe. But God was going to pull them out of Jerusalem. (See: trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor
The people in Jerusalem used the metaphor “this city is the pot and we are the meat in the pot” meaning they were safe in Jerusalem. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 11:1

**General Information:**
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in Ezekiel 8:1.

**to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house, facing east**

This gate was part of the wall that surrounded the temple area. Alternate translation: “the gate on the eastern side of the wall surrounding Yahweh's house” or “the gate on the eastern wall of the temple courtyard”

**Yahweh's house**
See how you translated this phrase in Ezekiel 8:16.

**behold**
The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**twenty-five men**
“25 men” (See: Numbers)

**Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah**
These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

**among them**
“among the twenty-five men”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- son
- son (2)
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

**Translation Words - UST**
- son
- son (2)
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
• house
Ezekiel 11:2

**General Information:**
Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT
2 God said to me, “Son of man, these are the men who devise iniquity, and who decide wicked plans in this city.

UST
2 Yahweh said to me, “Son of man, these are the new leaders in Jerusalem who are planning to do evil things and who are giving wicked advice to people in this city.
Ezekiel 11:3

The time to build houses is not now

This shows the people feel so secure they are not worried about building houses now. Other versions of the Bible read, “Now is the time to build our houses.” This would mean that the people want to build houses because they feel secure.

this city is the pot, and we are the meat

The people speak of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. The metaphor suggests that they are important and safe within the city. Alternate translation: “This city is like a pot that will protect us as a pot protects meat” (See: Metaphor)

the pot

Possible meanings are 1) a pot for storing meat or 2) a pot for cooking meat.

Translation Words - ULT

- house

Translation Words - UST

- house
Ezekiel 11:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• son

Translation Words - UST

• son

ULT

4 Therefore prophesy against them. Prophesy, son of man.”

UST

4 So, son of man, prophesy about the terrible things that will happen to them.”
Ezekiel 11:5

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to talk to the prophet Ezekiel.

**the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me**

Ezekiel speaks of the Spirit of Yahweh inspiring and empowering him to prophesy as if the Spirit of Yahweh fell upon him. Alternate translation: “the Spirit of Yahweh empowered me” (See: Metaphor)

**That is what you are saying**

“You are saying these things.” This refers to what the people were saying in Ezekiel 11:3.

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “Israelites” or “Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

**Translation Words - UST**

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 11:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
6 You have multiplied the people you have killed in this city and filled its streets with them.

UST
6 You have killed many people in this city and filled the streets with their corpses.
Ezekiel 11:7

The people you have killed...are the meat, and this city is the pot

Yahweh speaks of the people whom they have killed as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 11:3. Alternate translation: “The people you have killed...are like the meat in the pot, and this city is like the pot. (See: Metaphor)

But you are going to be brought out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But I am going to bring you out” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 11:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 11:9

**put you into the hands of foreigners**

Here the metonym “hands” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “put you into the power of foreigners” or “enable foreigners to capture you” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- command, commandment
- hand

**Translation Words - UST**
- command, commandment
- hand

ULT

9 I will bring you out of the midst of the city, and put you into the hands of foreigners, for I will bring judgment against you.

UST

9 I will expel you from this city and enable foreigners to capture you and punish you.
Ezekiel 11:10

You will fall by the sword

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “They will kill you with their swords” or “You will die in battle” (See: Metonymy)

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 11:11

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat

The people had spoken of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. Yahweh says that this is not true. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 11:3. Alternate translation: “This city is not like a pot that will protect you as a pot protects meat” (See: Metaphor)

within the borders of Israel

“in the land of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 11:12

**the one whose statutes you have not walked in**

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like person would walk along a road. Alternate translation: “the one whose statutes you have not obeyed” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh
- nation
- statute
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
- nation
- statute
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
12 Then you will know that I am Yahweh, the one whose statutes you have not walked in and whose decrees you have not carried out. Instead, you have carried out the decrees of the nations that surround you.”

UST
12 Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have predicted that would happen, because you have not obeyed my commands and decrees; instead, you have imitated the wicked behavior of the people of the nearby nations.”
Ezekiel 11:13

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Pelatiah son of Benaiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 11:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

I fell on my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: Idiom and Symbolic Action)

Alas, Lord Yahweh

The word “Alas” is an exclamation that expresses fear and sadness. Alternate translation: “Oh no, Lord Yahweh” or “Ah, Lord Yahweh” (See: Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- remnant
- cry, cry out, outcry
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- remnant
- cry, cry out, outcry
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 11:14

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 11:15

your brothers! Your brothers!

This is stated twice for emphasis.

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family, in this case the Israelites who are the descendants of Jacob. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The people living in Jerusalem say about all of them” (See: Active or Passive)

All of them are those of whom

Some versions have “All of them are those to whom”

This land was given to us as our possession

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has given this land to us as our possession” or “This land has become our possession” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
Ezekiel 11:16

General Information:
Yahweh gives this message to Ezekiel about the Israelites who were in exile.

I have been a sanctuary for them
Yahweh speaks of dwelling among the people who are in exile as if he were a sanctuary for them. Alternate translation: “I have been with them” or “I have been like their place of worship” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- nation

ULT
16 Therefore say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Though I have removed them far off among the nations, and though I have scattered them among the lands, yet I have been a sanctuary for them for a little while in the lands where they have gone.’

UST
16 So tell them, “This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Although I caused them to be taken far away from Israel and scattered them among other nations, for a short time I have become a sanctuary for them in the countries to which they have been taken.”
Ezekiel 11:17

**ULT**

Therefore say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands where you were scattered, and I will give you the land of Israel.’

**UST**

So also tell them, “This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Some day I will gather you from the nations to which you have been taken and bring you back to Israel, and you will live in your country again.”

**Ezekiel 11:17**

*I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands*

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The repetition emphasizes the surety of Yahweh’s promise to bring the exiles back to the land of Israel. Alternate translation: “I will bring you back from all of the nations” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**where you were scattered**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where I scattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 11:18

**every detestable thing and every abomination**

These words have similar meanings and emphasize that God will remove all the idols from Israel. (See: Doublet)

**every detestable thing**

This means things that cause hatred or disgust. Here it refers to idols.

ULT
18 Then they will go there and remove every detestable thing and every abomination from that place.

UST
18 When you return to your country, you will get rid of all the vile statues of gods and detestable idols.
Ezekiel 11:19

General Information:

God continues the prophecy of what will happen to the scattered Israelites.

I will give them one heart...give them a heart of flesh

Yahweh speaks of all of the Israelites who are in exile as if they are one person, with one heart and one spirit. (See: Metaphor)

I will give them one heart

Here the metonym “heart” represents the will and emotions. Yahweh speaks of causing all of the people to share the same new emotions as if he were giving them one heart. (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

I will put a new spirit within them

Here the metonym “spirit” represents the thoughts and disposition. Yahweh speaks of causing the people to think new thoughts as if he were giving them a new spirit. (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

I will take out the heart of stone from their flesh and give them a heart of flesh

Yahweh speaks of the people being stubborn as if they had a stone heart and of their being willingly obedient as if they had a heart of flesh. He speaks of causing them to become willingly obedient as if he were exchanging those two hearts. Alternate translation: “I will cause them to stop being stubborn and instead cause them to obey me willingly” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- heart
- heart
- heart
- spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- heart
- heart
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 11:20

they will walk in my statutes, they will carry out my decrees and do them

Each of these phrases have similar meanings and describes the people as obeying what Yahweh has commanded them to do. They are repeated for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)

they will walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like a person would walk along a road. Alternate translation: “they will obey my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- God
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 11:21

**those who walk with affection toward their detestable things**

Yahweh speaks of a person's conduct as if it were the person walking. Alternate translation: “those who conduct their lives out of devotion to their detestable things” (See: Metaphor)

**detestable things**

This means things that cause hatred or disgust. Here it refers to idols. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 11:18.

**I will bring their conduct on their own heads**

Here the metonym “conduct” represents the consequences of their actions. The idiom "bring...on their own heads" means they will experience these consequences. Alternate translation: “I will cause them to suffer the consequences of their actions” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- head
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- head
- walk, walked
Ezekiel 11:22

General Information:
The cherubim and the glory of God leave the temple and city.

cherubim
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:3.

Translation Words - ULT
- God
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST
- God
- Israel, Israelites

ULT
22 The cherubim lifted up their wings and the wheels that were beside them, and the glory of the God of Israel was high up over them.

UST
22 Then the winged creatures, with their wheels beside them, spread their wings and flew up into the air, and the dazzling brightness of Yahweh was above them.
Ezekiel 11:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• glory, glorious, glorify
• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• glory, glorious, glorify
• Yahweh

ULT
23 Then the glory of Yahweh went up from within the midst of the city and stood on the mountain to the east of the city.

UST
23 That light went up away from the city and stopped above the mountain to the east of the city.
Ezekiel 11:24

the vision that I had seen went up from upon me

Ezekiel speaks of the vision ending as if the vision was an object that had been upon him and then left him. Alternate translation: "the vision that I had seen ended" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Translation Words - UST

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

ULT

24 The Spirit lifted me up and brought me into Chaldea, to the exiles, in the vision from the Spirit of God, and the vision that I had seen went up from upon me.

UST

24 In the vision that I had been seeing, God's Spirit lifted me up and brought me back to the exiles in Babylon. Then the vision ended,
Ezekiel 11:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

ULT

25 Then I declared to the exiles all the things of Yahweh that I had seen.

UST

25 and I told the exiles everything that Yahweh had shown me in the vision.
Ezekiel 12

Ezekiel 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Exile

God warned that very soon the people in Jerusalem would be exiled to Babylon.
Ezekiel 12:1

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 12:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

a rebellious house

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “a rebellious people” (See: Metonymy)

they have eyes to see but they do not see...they have ears to hear but do not listen

People being unable to understand Yahweh’s message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were unable physically to see and hear. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• house
Ezekiel 12:3

General Information:
Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to act out another parable.

Therefore as for you
“So then, this is what I say to you”

in their sight
“as they watch”

Perhaps they will begin to see
People being able to understand Yahweh’s message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were able physically to see. (See: Metaphor)

a rebellious house
The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “a rebellious people” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• son
• house

Translation Words - UST
• son
• house
Ezekiel 12:4

General Information:

God is speaking to Ezekiel and describing how he should act out the parable.

in their sight

“as they watch”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

4 You will bring out your things for an exile in the day in their sight; go out in the evening in their sight in the way that anyone goes into exile.

UST

4 During the daytime, while they are watching, bring out the things that you want to take, and pack them. Then in the evening, while they are watching, do what those who are preparing to go into exile do.
Ezekiel 12:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment

ULT

5 Dig a hole through the wall in their sight, and go out through it.

UST

5 Dig through the city wall and take your things through the hole.
In their sight, lift up your things onto your shoulder, and bring them out in the darkness. Cover your face, for you must not see the land, since I have set you as a sign to the house of Israel.”

Put them in a sack on your shoulder while they are watching, and leave when it becomes dark. Cover your face so you cannot see the path. I want you to do this because I want you to warn the Israelite people.”

**ULT**

6 In their sight, lift up your things onto your shoulder, and bring them out in the darkness. Cover your face, for you must not see the land, since I have set you as a sign to the house of Israel.”

**UST**

6 Put them in a sack on your shoulder while they are watching, and leave when it becomes dark. Cover your face so you cannot see the path. I want you to do this because I want you to warn the Israelite people.”

**Ezekiel 12:6**

**have set you as a sign**

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. Alternate translation: “have made you to be a warning” (See: Metaphor)

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- miracle, wonder, sign
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- miracle, wonder, sign
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 12:7

General Information:
Ezekiel shows the people of Israel they will soon be forced into exile.

just as I was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “just as Yahweh commanded me” (See: Active or Passive)

dug a hole through the wall by hand

“dug a hole through the wall with my hands”

in the dark

“at night”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
7 So I did this, just as I was commanded. I brought out my things of exile in the daytime, and in the evening I dug a hole through the wall by hand. I brought my things out in the dark, and lifted them up on my shoulder in their sight.

UST
7 So I did what Yahweh told me to do. During the day I brought things out of my house as though I was packing to go into exile. Then in the evening I dug through the city wall. Then while people watched, I put my sack of belongings on my shoulder and left.
Ezekiel 12:8

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 12:9

Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, ‘What are you doing?’

God asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knew—that the people had asked him this question. Alternate translation: “Son of man, the house of Israel, that rebellious house, is asking, ‘What are you doing?’” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the house of Israel, that rebellious house

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate “rebellious house” as in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel, that rebellious people” (See: Metonymy)

What are you doing

Since the people had seen what Ezekiel was doing, their question implies their desire to know the reason why he was doing it. Alternate translation: “What is the meaning of the things you are doing” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- house
Ezekiel 12:10

in whose midst they are

The phrase “in whose midst” refers to Jerusalem, while “they” refers to the “house of Israel.” Alternate translation: “who are in Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

ULT
10 Say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: this prophetic action concerns the prince in Jerusalem, and all the house of Israel in whose midst they are.’

UST
10 So go back and say to them, ‘What I did is about the king in Jerusalem and all the other people of Israel who are there.’
Ezekiel 12:11

I am a sign to you

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Ezekiel speaks of himself and his actions as being this warning. Alternate translation: “I am a warning to you” (See: Metaphor)

so it will be done to them

The word “them” refers to the people living in Jerusalem. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so others will do to them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- miracle, wonder, sign
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- miracle, wonder, sign
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- walk, walked
Ezekiel 12:12

in the dark
“at night”

They will dig through the wall

The word “They” refers to the people living in Jerusalem.

He will cover his face

“He will cover his face”

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment
• face, facial
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment
• face, facial
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
12 The prince who is among them will lift up his things upon his shoulder in the dark, and will go out through the wall. They will dig through the wall and bring out their things. He will cover his face, so he will not see the land with his eyes.

UST
12 Their king will put his belongings on his shoulder when it becomes dark and he will try to escape. His servants will dig a hole through the city wall, and he will take his belongings through it. He will cover his face so others will not recognize him and he will not be able to see the land.
Ezekiel 12:13

I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare

Yahweh speaks of enabling the Chaldeans to capture the prince as if he himself were catching the prince in a trap that he had set. (See: Metaphor)

I will bring him to Babylon

Yahweh speaks of enabling the Chaldeans to bring the prince to Babylon as if he himself were bringing the prince there. Alternate translation: “I will cause the Chaldeans to bring him to Babylon” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

13 I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare; then I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans, but he will not see it. He will die there.

UST

13 But it will be as though I will spread a net for him to be captured; enemy soldiers will capture him, blind him, and take him to the city of Babylon where the Chaldean people live. But he will not be able to see it because he will be blind; and there he will die.
Ezekiel 12:14

I will send out a sword after them

The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy armies who will attack with their swords. Alternate translation: “I will send armies to pursue them with swords” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual
• winnow, sift
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual
• winnow, sift
• sword, swordsmen

ULT

14 I will also scatter in every direction all of those around him who were to assist him and his entire army, and I will send out a sword after them.

UST

14 I will scatter all those who have been around him—his advisors and his soldiers—in every direction; and I will cause his enemies to pursue them, with their swords ready to strike them.
**Ezekiel 12:15**

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “when I cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: Parallelism)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 12:16

I will spare...from the sword, famine, and plague

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. You may need to make explicit that they will not die from famine or plague. Alternate translation: “I will keep...from dying in battle, from starving to death, and from dying of disease” (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

16 But I will spare a few men from among them from the sword, famine, and plague, so they may record all of their abominations in the lands where I take them, so they will know that I am Yahweh.”

UST

16 But I will spare some of them from being killed by the sword, or starving to death, or dying of disease so they can record that they have been doing disgusting things, and they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 12:17

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 12:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- bread
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- son
- bread
- devour

ULT
18 “Son of man, eat your bread with trembling, and drink your water with shaking and worry.

UST
18 “Son of man, tremble while you eat your food, and shudder fearfully while you drink your water.
Then say to the people of the land, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this concerning the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the land of Israel, “They will eat their bread with trembling and drink their water while shaking, since the land will be despoiled of its fullness because of the violence of all those who live there.

Tell this to the Israelite people: ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says about those who are still living in Jerusalem and in other places in Israel. They also will be very anxious while they eat their food and drink their water, because their country will soon have everything taken away. That will happen because the people who live there continually act very violently.

the land will be despoiled of its fullness

The word “fullness” refers to everything in the land. The word “despoiled” means that people will empty the land of everything in it. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “others will empty the land of everything in it” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- bread
- people, people group,
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- bread
- people, people group,
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 12:20

_the cities that were inhabited will be desolate_

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cities where people lived will be desolate” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

20 So the cities that were inhabited will be desolate, and the land will become a wasteland; so you will know that I am Yahweh.”

UST

20 The towns where people live will be devastated, and the land will become barren. Then you people will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 12:21

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 12:22

what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel that says, ‘The days are prolonged, and every vision fails’?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel something he already knows. The question is a mild rebuke for the people who use the proverb. Alternate translation: “the people in the land of Israel have this proverb that says, ‘The days are prolonged, and every vision fails.’ (See: Rhetorical Question)

The days are prolonged

This idiom means that many days have passed. Alternate translation: “Many days have passed” or “Time has gone by” (See: Idiom)

every vision fails

This means that the visions that the prophets receive and communicate to the people fail to happen. Alternate translation: “every prophetic vision fails to happen” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- destroy, destruction, annihilate

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
Thereupon, tell them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: I will put an end to this proverb, and the people of Israel will no longer use it.’ Say to them, ‘The days have drawn near when every vision will be fulfilled.

So say to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I am going to prove that what they say is not correct, and then they will never say it again in Israel.’ Tell them, ‘It will soon be the time when everything that the prophets predict will happen.’
Ezekiel 12:24

General Information:
Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what to say to the people of Israel.

house of Israel
The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST
• Israel, Israelites
• house

ULT
24 For there will no longer be any false visions or favorable divinations within the house of Israel.

UST
24 No longer will prophets tell the Israelite people false visions, or tell people prophecies just to please them.
Ezekiel 12:25

I carry out the words that I speak

This idiom means that Yahweh does what he says. Alternate translation: “I do the things that I say” (See: Idiom)

The matter will no longer be delayed

The “matter” refers to the things that Yahweh says will happen. Alternate translation: “What I say will no longer be delayed” or “What I say will happen soon” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I will speak this word

“I will speak this message” or “I will speak this prophecy”

in your days

This idiom refers to the period of time in which a person lives. Alternate translation: “while you are alive” or “during you lifetime” (See: Idiom)

rebellious house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “rebellious people” (See: Metonymy)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- house
Ezekiel 12:26

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 12:27

Behold

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times

These phrases are both ways the people of Israel are saying Ezekiel’s warnings will not happen in their lifetime but will happen far in the future. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house

ULT

27 “Son of man! Behold, the house of Israel has said, ‘The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times.’

UST

27 “Son of man, the Israelite people are constantly saying about you, ‘The things that he sees in visions will not happen soon. They are about things that will happen many years from now, far in the future.’
Ezekiel 12:28

My words will not be delayed any longer

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will no longer delay the word I have spoken” or “I will no longer delay doing what I said I would do” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 13

Ezekiel 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

False prophets

God spoke against people who said they were prophesying but had not received any message from God. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

God said of people who encourage others to feel safe even when they continue to sin were not strengthening a wall but just putting whitewash on it to hide the imperfections. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and Metaphor)
Again, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

Yahweh gave me another message. He said,

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 13:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

prophesying out of their own imaginations

“prophesying only the things that they imagine”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 13:3

who follow their own spirit

Here the word “spirit” represents the thoughts and ideas of the person. To “follow” here is an idiom that means to do what their own ideas suggest for them to do. Alternate translation: “who act according to their own ideas” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- walk, walked

ULT
3 The Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit, but who have seen nothing!

UST
3 He says, “Terrible things will happen to those wicked prophets who proclaim their own ideas and have not seen any visions from me.”
Ezekiel 13:4

**like jackals in the wastelands**

Like jackals that scavenge for food and shelter among the abandoned ruins of cities, the prophets are using the destruction of Jerusalem for their own benefit. (See: Simile)

**jackals**

wild animals that are related to dogs and that scavenge for food in abandoned places.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites

**Translation Words - UST**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 13:5

the wall around the house of Israel

This refers to the wall surrounding the city of Jerusalem.

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

resist in battle

You can supply the implicit information here. Alternate translation: “resist the enemy armies” or “defend the city” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

day of Yahweh

This refers to the time when Yahweh will judge his people by means of an enemy army. Alternate translation: “the day of Yahweh’s judgment” or “the day when Yahweh judges you by sending enemy armies to attack you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
Ezekiel 13:6

Such and such
This is a phrase used to refer to anything the prophet may have said. Your language may have another way to say this. (See: Idiom)

Yahweh’s declaration
“is what Yahweh has declared”

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh
- confirm, confirmation, legal

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
- confirm, confirmation, legal

ULT
6 The people have false visions and make false predictions, those who say, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration.” Yahweh has not sent them, but they nevertheless have made people hope that their messages would come true.

UST
6 The visions and prophecies of those prophets are false. They say, ‘Yahweh told me this.’ I have not sent them to you to be my prophets, but you expect that what they prophesy will truly happen!
Ezekiel 13:7

Have you not had false visions...when I myself have not spoken?

Yahweh uses a question to rebuke the false prophets. Alternate translation: "You have had false visions...because I myself have not spoken." (See: Rhetorical Question)

had false visions and made false predictions

Since the false prophets have not really received a message from Yahweh, what they predict about the future is not true.

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 13:8

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT
8 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 8 ‘Because you have had false visions and have told lies—therefore this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration against you:

UST
8 Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you prophets have said what is false and because your visions are lies, I am opposed to you.
Ezekiel 13:9

**My hand will be against the prophets**

Here the word “hand” represents Yahweh’s power. That his hand will be against them is a metaphor that means that he will punish them with his power. Alternate translation: “I will punish the prophets” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

**They will not be in the assembly of my people**

This means that Yahweh will not consider these false prophets to be part of the people of Israel.

**or enrolled in the record of the house of Israel**

This probably refers to an official record of the citizens of Israel. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nor will anyone enroll their names in the record of the house of Israel” (See: Active or Passive)

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**know that I am the Lord Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am the Lord Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, the Lord Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- people, people group,
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- people, people group,
- house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 13:10

General Information:
In these verses, Yahweh speaks of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: Metaphor)

Because of this
The word “this” refers to the prophets reporting false visions to the people and telling them lies.

they led my people astray
Yahweh speaks of the prophets deceiving the people and getting them to believe lies as if the prophets had led the people away from the path upon which they should have been walking. (See: Metaphor)

they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash
Here “a wall” stands for peace and security that the false prophets told the people that Yahweh was promising to give them. (See: Metaphor)

whitewash
The word “whitewash” refers to a white liquid mixture or paint used to cover up impurities and make surfaces white.

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
Ezekiel 13:11

whitewashing

The word “whitewashing” refers to covering a surface with a white liquid mixture to cover up impurities and make the surface white.

I will send hailstones to make it fall down, and a windstorm wind to break it down

Yahweh refers to the judgment that he will send upon the people as if it were a severe storm that breaks down the wall. (See: Metaphor)

hailstones

balls of ice that sometimes falls from the sky during a rainstorm.

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 13:12

Have others not said to you, “Where is the whitewash that you put on it?”

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that others will ask the prophets what happened to their whitewash. Alternate translation: “Others will certainly say to you, ‘Where is the whitewash that you put on it?’” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Where is the whitewash that you put on it?

Possible meanings are 1) that this is an honest question for which the people expect and answer or 2) this is a rhetorical question that the people ask out of sarcasm. Alternate translation: “The whitewash that you put on it did no good.” (See: Rhetorical Question)
Ezekiel 13:13

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: Metaphor)

I will bring a windstorm...completely destroy it.

Yahweh refers to the judgment that he will send upon the people as if it were a severe storm that breaks down the wall. (See: Metaphor)

in my rage...in my wrath...in my rage

“because of my rage...because of my wrath...because my rage.”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- spirit, spiritual
- wrath, fury
- wrath, fury

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- spirit, spiritual
- wrath, fury
- wrath, fury
Ezekiel 13:14

**lay bare**

“uncover”

**you will be annihilated in the middle of it all**

The phrase “in the middle of it all” refers to the stones of the wall that Yahweh will break down. He speaks of destroying the people in his judgment as if the wall would crush them to death when he breaks it down. Alternate translation: “all of its stones will crush you to death” (See: Metaphor)

**annihilated**

“destroyed”

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 13:15

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: Metaphor)

I will annihilate in my fury
“Because I am very angry, I will annihilate

whitewashed it
The word “whitewash” refers to a white liquid mixture or paint used to cover up impurities and make surfaces white. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 13:10.

Translation Words - ULT
• wrath, fury

Translation Words - UST
• wrath, fury

ULT
15 For I will annihilate in my fury the wall and those who whitewashed it. I will say to you, “The wall exists no more, nor do the people who whitewashed it —

UST
15 In that way I will show that I am very angry with the wall and with those who covered it with whitewash. And I will say, “The wall is gone and those who whitewashed it have been killed.”
Ezekiel 13:16

the prophets of Israel who prophesied about Jerusalem and who had visions of peace for her

This phrase defines who “the people who whitewashed it” are.

visions of peace for her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
Ezekiel 13:17

set your face against the daughters

This is a command to stare at the women as a symbol of punishing them. Translate “set your face against” as you did in Ezekiel 4:3. Alternate translation: “stare at the daughters” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face against

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” represents staring. Alternate translation: “stare at” (See: Metonymy)

daughters of your people

This idiom refers to women who belong to the same people group as Ezekiel does. Alternate translation: “women of Israel” or “your countrywomen” (See: Idiom)

prophesy out of their own minds

“prophesying only the things that they think in their own minds.” See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 13:2.

prophesy against

“prophesy about the bad things that will happen to them.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 4:7.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- people, people group,
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- people, people group,
- face, facial
Ezekiel 13:18

sew magic charms onto every part of their hand

This means that they sew magic charms together and then attach them to their hands, not that they sew them directly onto their hands.

charms

objects believed to have magical powers.

used to hunt down people

Yahweh speaks of these women using beauty, mystery, and lies to deceive people as if the people were animals that the women hunted down and trapped with their charms. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that they use to hunt down people” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

make veils for their heads of every size

This means that they make veils to put on the heads of people of different height. Alternate translation: “make veils for the heads of women of every stature” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Will you hunt down my people but save your own lives?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to rebuke the women who do these things. The implicit answer is, “no.” Alternate translation: “Do not think that you will be able to save your own lives after you have hunted down my people!” (See: Rhetorical Question)
Ezekiel 13:19

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak against the false prophetesses in Israel.

handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread

Barley is a grain used to make bread and the word “crumb” is a small amount of bread. Both phrases are small amounts of food and are used to emphasize how small the payment was to the prophetesses. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- bread
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- profane, profaned
- barley

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- bread
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- profane, profaned
- barley

ULT

19 You have profaned me among my people for handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread, to kill people who should not die, and to preserve the lives of those who should not continue to live, because of your lies to my people who heard you.

UST

19 You dishonored me by telling lies in order to get from my people a few handfuls of barley and a few pieces of bread. My people listen to lies; and you women who are lying to them have caused people who did not deserve to die to be killed, and have spared those who should not continue to live.
Ezekiel 13:20

the magic charms that you have used to ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds

Yahweh speaks of these women using their magic charms to deceive people as if the people were birds that the women trapped with those charms. (See: Metaphor)

charms
objects believed to have magical powers

to ensnare
“to trap” “to catch in a snare”

tear them from your arms
“tear the charms from your arms”

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 13:21

rescue my people from your hand

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “rescue my people from your power” (See: Metonymy)

they will no longer be trapped in your hands

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. Yahweh speaks of the people being in the control of these women as if the women had trapped them with their hands. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will no longer trap them like prey in your hands” or “you will no longer control them with your power” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• hand
• people, people group,
• deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• hand
• people, people group,
• deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 13:22

discourage the heart of the righteous person

Here the word “heart” represents the person and his emotions. Alternate translation: “discourage the righteous person” (See: Synecdoche)

turn from his way

To stop doing something is referred to as turning in a different direction. Alternate translation: “stop what he is doing” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- heart
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- heart
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand

ULT

22 Because you discourage the heart of the righteous person with lies, even though I did not desire his discouragement, and because you encourage instead the actions of the wicked person so that he will not turn from his way to save his life—

UST

22 You have discouraged righteous people by telling them lies when I did not do things to cause them to be sad. And you have encouraged wicked people to keep on doing their wicked behavior; if they had turned away from it, they would have continued to live.
Ezekiel 13:23

have false visions or continue to make predictions

Both of these phrases refer to talking about what will happen in the future. Alternate translation: “continue to make false predictions” (See: Parallelism)

I will rescue my people out of your hand

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 13:21. Alternate translation: “I will rescue my people from your power” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 14

Ezekiel 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jerusalem deserves punishment

When the captives from Jerusalem arrive in Babylon, it will be obvious why God has punished them.
Ezekiel 14:1

Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me 

The elders sat before Ezekiel in order to inquire of the Lord through Ezekiel. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites

ULT

1 Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me.

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites

UST

1 One day some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat down in front of me.
Ezekiel 14:2

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 14:3

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

have taken their idols into their hearts

Yahweh speaks of the elders committing themselves to worshiping idols as if the elders had “taken their idols into their hearts.” Alternate translation: “have devoted themselves to idols” (See: Metaphor)

have put the stumbling block of their iniquity before their own faces

Yahweh speaks of the idols that the elders worship as if they were blocks over which the elders stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. Alternate translation: “have resolutely determined to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: Metaphor)

stumbling block of their iniquity

Possible meanings are 1) the idols are a stumbling block that leads to the elders’ iniquity or 2) worshiping idols is an iniquity that causes the elders to stumble.

Should I be inquired of at all by them?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the elders should not be inquiring of him. This question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Should I permit them to inquire of me at all?” or “They should not be inquiring of me at all.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- heart
- iniquity
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- son
- heart
- iniquity
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 14:4

Therefore announce this to them

The word “them” refers to the “men from the elders of Israel.”

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

who takes his idols into his heart

Yahweh speaks of the people committing themselves to worshiping idols as if they had taken their idols into their hearts. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 14:3. Alternate translation: “who devotes himself to idols” (See: Metaphor)

who puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face

Yahweh speaks of the idols that people worship as if they were blocks over which the people stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 14:3. Alternate translation: “who resolutely determines to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: Metaphor)

I, Yahweh, will answer him according to the number of his idols

This phrase refers to the many idols that the people worship. It is implied that the severity of Yahweh’s answer will as great as the number of idols that they worship. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh, will give him the answer that he deserves because he worships so many idols” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- house
Ezekiel 14:5

I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts

Here the word “hearts” represents the minds and affections of the people. Yahweh speaks of causing them to be devoted to him once again as if he were to capture their hearts. Alternate translation: “I will cause the people of Israel to be devoted to me again” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

their hearts that have been driven far from me through their idols

Here the word “hearts” represents the minds and affections of the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who have all left me to worship their idols” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- house

ULT
5 I will do this so that I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts that have been driven far from me through their idols.’

UST
5 I will do this so the Israelite people, who have abandoned me in order to worship their idols, will sincerely worship me again.’
Ezekiel 14:6

The house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Repent and turn away from your idols! Turn back your faces from all your abominations

Both of these phrases are ways to tell the people of Israel to stop worshiping idols. (See: Parallelism)

Repent and turn away

The words “repent” and “turn away” mean basically the same thing. Together they strengthen the command to stop worshiping idols. (See: Doublet)

Turn back your faces

Here the word “faces” represents the people. Alternate translation: “Turn back” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- return
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- return
- house
Ezekiel 14:7

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**who takes his idols into his heart**

Yahweh speaks of the people committing themselves to worshiping idols as if they had taken their idols into their hearts. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 14:3. Alternate translation: “who devotes himself to idols” (See: Metaphor)

**puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his own face**

Yahweh speaks of the idols that people worship as if they were blocks over which the people stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 14:3. Alternate translation: “who resolutely determines to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- house
Ezekiel 14:8

I will set my face against that man

Yahweh speaks of being opposed to a person as if he were to set his face against that person. Alternate translation: “I will be against that man” or “I will oppose that man” (See: Symbolic Action).

set my face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set my face” refers to staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: Metonymy).

make him a sign and a proverb

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. The word proverb refers to what people will say about that sign when they see it. Alternate translation: “I will make that man to be a warning and a proverb” (See: Metaphor).

I will cut him off from the midst of my people

Yahweh speaks of causing a person no longer to belong to his people as if he were cutting that person off from the people, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “I will cause him no longer to belong to my people” (See: Metaphor).

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information).

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- cut off
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- cut off
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 14:9

I will reach out with my hand against him

God’s “hand” refers to what he does. Alternate translation: “I will work against him” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- people, people group,
They will carry their own iniquity

Here the word “iniquity” represents the guilt that people incur for committing iniquity. Yahweh speaks of people suffering the consequences of their iniquity as if they were carrying the iniquity. Alternate translation: “They will suffer the consequences of their own iniquity” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- iniquity

Translation Words - UST
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- iniquity

ULT
10 They will carry their own iniquity; the iniquity of the prophet will be the same as the iniquity of the one who inquires from him.

UST
10 Both the prophet and the one who asks him for advice will be guilty, and I will punish both of them.
Ezekiel 14:11

house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

will no longer wander away from following me

Yahweh speaks of the people no longer worshiping him as if they were to wander away from him and no longer follow him. Alternate translation: “will no longer stop worshiping me” (See: Metaphor)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- house

ULT 11 Because of this, the house of Israel will no longer wander away from following me nor defile themselves any longer through all their transgressions. They will be my people, and I will be their God—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

UST 11 Then the Israelite people will no longer abandon me, and they will no longer become unacceptable to me because of their sins. They will be my people, and I will be their God. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.”
Ezekiel 14:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh

ULT

12 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying.

UST

12 Yahweh gave me another message. He said,
Ezekiel 14:13

when a land sins against me

Here the word “land” represents the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: “when the people who live in a land sin against me” (See: Metonymy)

break the staff of its bread

Yahweh speaks of the supply of bread as if it were a staff. The word “bread” represents all kinds of food. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 4:16. Alternate translation: “end the supply of its food” (See: Metaphor and Synecdoche)

cut off both man and beast from the land

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if he were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “kill both man and beast in the land” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- transgress, transgression
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- bread
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly
- famine

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- transgress, transgression
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- bread
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly
- famine
Ezekiel 14:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT

14 then even if these three men—Noah, Daniel, and Job—were in the land’s midst, they could only rescue their own lives by their righteousness—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

UST

14 even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were there, they would save only themselves because of their being righteous. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.
Ezekiel 14:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• evil, wicked, unpleasant
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Translation Words - UST

• evil, wicked, unpleasant
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

ULT
15 If I send evil beasts through the land and make it barren so that it becomes a wasteland where no man may pass through because of the beasts,

UST
15 Or, if I send wild animals throughout the country, and they attack and kill many of the people, so that travel in that country becomes very dangerous and no one travels through that country,
Ezekiel 14:16

these same three men

Noah, Daniel, and Job

as I live

“as surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: Idiom)

only their own lives would be rescued

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they could only rescue their own lives” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
Ezekiel 14:17

if I bring a sword against that land

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation:

Sword, go through the land

Here the word “sword” represents the soldiers of an enemy army who attack with swords. Alternate translation: “Army, go through the land” (See: Metonymy)

cut off both man and beast from it

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if it were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “kill both man and beast in the land” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 14:18

these three men
Noah, Daniel, and Job

only their own lives would be rescued
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they would only rescue their own lives” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

ULT
18 then even if these three men were in the midst of the land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued.

UST
18 as surely as I am alive, even if those three men were in that country, they would not be able to save even their own sons or daughters from being killed. They would save only themselves. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.
Ezekiel 14:19

Pour out my fury

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury as if his fury were a liquid that he pours out from a container. Alternate translation: “I will express my fury” (See: Metaphor)

cut off both man and beast

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if he were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “kill both man and beast” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• wrath, fury
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• cut off
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• wrath, fury
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• cut off
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

19 Or if I send a plague against this land and pour out my fury against it through bloodshed, in order to cut off both man and beast,

UST

19 Or, if I send a plague into that land and cause the people and the animals to die from the plague because I am very angry with those people,
Ezekiel 14:20

only their own lives would be rescued

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they would only rescue their own lives” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son

ULT

20 then even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were in that land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued by their righteousness.

UST

20 as surely as I am alive, even if Noah, Daniel and Job were in that country, they would not be able to save even their sons and daughters. They would save only themselves because of their being righteous. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.
Ezekiel 14:21

to cut off both man and beast from her

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if it were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. The word “her” refers to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “to kill both man and beast in Jerusalem” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jerusalem
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jerusalem
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen
**Ezekiel 14:22**

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues to speak with Ezekiel about the punishment of the people of Israel.

**Behold**
The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the information that follows.

**left in her**
The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

**be comforted concerning the punishment**
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will comfort you concerning the punishment” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jerusalem
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Jerusalem
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
22 Yet, behold! A remnant will be left in her, survivors who will go out with sons and daughters. Behold! They will go out to you, and you will see their ways and actions and be comforted concerning the punishment that I have sent to Jerusalem, and about everything else that I have sent against the land.

UST
22 But some of your people will remain alive, both adults and children. They will come to you, Ezekiel. And when you see their disgusting behavior and actions, you will realize that I had good reasons for causing the people of Jerusalem to experience those many great disasters that I have sent to them.
Ezekiel 14:23

done against her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

their ways and their actions

Both of these phrases refer to what the people of Israel have done. Alternate translation: “the way they live” or “the things they do” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

23 The survivors will comfort you when you see their ways and their actions, so you will know all these things I have done against her, that I have not done them in vain!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

UST

23 When you see those things that they do, you will know that there were very good reasons for me to do everything that I caused to happen to them. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”
Ezekiel 15

Ezekiel 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Useless

God said that the people of Jerusalem were useless to him. He uses a simile to show just how useless they were. (See: Simile)
Ezekiel 15:1

General Information:
Yahweh is talking to Ezekiel in this section.

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 15:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

how is a vine better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “a vine is not better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• vine

Translation Words - UST

• son
• vine
Ezekiel 15:3

Do people take wood from a vine to make anything?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “People do not take wood from a vine to make anything.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Do they make a peg from it to hang anything on it?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “they do not make a peg from it to hang things on it.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• hang, hung

Translation Words - UST

• hang, hung
Ezekiel 15:4

If it is thrown into a fire as fuel...is it good for anything?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “If it is thrown into a fire as fuel...it is not good for anything.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

If it is thrown into a fire as fuel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If a person throws it into a fire as fuel” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• devour
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

• devour
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 15:5

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking about the vine.

See!
The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

When it was complete
“When it was whole” or “Before the fire burned it”

it could not make anything
“no one could make anything from it”

Translation Words - ULT

• devour
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

• devour
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT
5 See! When it was complete, it could not make anything; surely then, when the fire has burned, then it still will not make anything useful.

UST
5 No; if it was not useful for anything before it was burned, it certainly cannot be made into something useful after the fire has burned and charred it.
Ezekiel 15:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jerusalem
- vine

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jerusalem
- vine

ULT

6 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Unlike the trees in the forests, I have given the vine as fuel for fires; I will act in the same way toward the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

UST

6 Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: The wood of grapevines is useful only for fuel in a fire. Similarly, the people who live in Jerusalem are useless.
Ezekiel 15:7

**General Information:**
Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.

**I will set my face against them**
Yahweh speaks of being opposed to them as if he were to set his face against them. Alternate translation: “I will be against them” or “I will oppose them” (See: Symbolic Action)

**set my face**
Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set my face” refers to staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: Metonymy)

**know that I am Yahweh**
When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Though they come out from the fire, yet the fire will consume them**
Yahweh speaks of the punishment that he will afflict upon the people as if it were a fire that burns them. (See: Metaphor)

**the fire will consume them**
Yahweh speaks of fire burning things as if the fire consumed them. Alternate translation: “the fire will destroy them” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh
- devour
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
- devour
- face, facial
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 15:8

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- transgress, transgression
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- transgress, transgression
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

8 Then I will make the land into an abandoned wasteland because they have committed sin—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

UST

8 I will cause your country to become a wasteland because your people have not been loyal to me. That is what I, Yahweh, the Lord, say.”
Ezekiel 16

Ezekiel 16 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

God compared Judah to an adulteress because she worshiped idols instead of God who had done so much to help her. Adultery is a common image used to describe the worship of idols by Israel. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 16:1

General Information:
In this chapter, Yahweh speaks about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful bride. He describes her growth from infancy to adulthood. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

the word of Yahweh came
This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 16:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Jerusalem
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

2 “Son of man, inform Jerusalem about her abominations,

UST

2 “Son of man, inform the people of Jerusalem about their detestable behavior.
Ezekiel 16:3

Your beginning and your birth

These two phrases share similar meanings. Yahweh speaks of when people founded the city as if it were the city's birth. (See: Doublet and Metaphor)

your father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite

The Amorites and Hittites were both pagan people groups who lived in the land before the people of Israel conquered it. Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem's father and mother belonging to these people groups to express that she was born into idolatry. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
Ezekiel 16:4

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were an infant. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

your mother did not cut your navel
Here “navel” refers to the umbilical cord that is attached to the navel. Alternate translation: “you mother did not cut your umbilical cord” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
- cut off

Translation Words - UST
- cut off

ULT
4 On the day of your birth, your mother did not cut your navel, nor did she purify you in water or rub you down with salt, or wrap cloth around you.

UST
4 It is as though on the day that you were born, your umbilical cord was not cut, and your body was not washed in water or rubbed with salt and wrapped in strips of cloth, like Israelite babies always are.
Ezekiel 16:5

No eye had compassion for you

Here the word “eye” represents the person who sees. Alternate translation: “Nobody who saw you had compassion for you” (See: Synecdoche)

with loathing for your life

“because your parents hated you”

you were thrown out into the open field

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “your parents threw you out into the open field” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• face, facial

ULT
5 No eye had compassion for you to do any of these things for you, to be compassionate toward you. On the day that you were born, with loathing for your life, you were thrown out into the open field.

UST
5 No one pitied you or acted kindly toward you by doing those things for you. Instead, it was as though they hated you. As soon as you were born they threw you into a field to die.
Ezekiel 16:6

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were an infant. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

But I passed by you
Yahweh is walking near the newborn baby.

I said to you in your blood
The implicit information can be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “I said to you as you were lying in your blood” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
Ezekiel 16:7

**I made you grow like a plant in a field**

Here Yahweh compares growing quickly with the way a plant grows quickly. (See: *Simile*)

**You multiplied and became great**

These two phrases share similar meanings. They both refer to her growing and becoming taller. Alternate translation: “You matured and grew taller” (See: *Doublet*)

**you became the jewel of jewels**

Here the woman, who represents Jerusalem, is spoken of as if she had become the finest of all jewels, that is, as if she had become the most beautiful of all women. (See: *Metaphor*)

**you became the jewel of jewels**

Some modern versions translate “You became old enough to wear jewels.”

**naked and bare**

These two words mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “completely naked” (See: *Doublet*)
Ezekiel 16:8

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

See!

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

the time of love came for you

This is to say that Yahweh sees the young woman is old enough to be married.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

8 I passed by you again, and I saw you. See! the time of love came for you, so I spread my robe over you and covered your nakedness. Then I swore to you and brought you into a covenant—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—and you became mine.

UST

8 When I saw you several years later, it was as though I spread the cloth of my robe over you to symbolize that I would marry you, with the result that you were no longer naked. I solemnly promised that I would marry you and made a marriage agreement with you, and you became my wife.’ That is what Yahweh the Lord says.
Ezekiel 16:9

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- clean, wash
- blood
- anoint, anointed, anointing

Translation Words - UST
- clean, wash
- blood
- anoint, anointed, anointing

ULT
9 So I washed you with water and rinsed your blood off you, and I anointed you with oil.

UST
9 And then it was as though I bathed you and washed the blood from you and put ointment on your body.
**Ezekiel 16:10**

**embroidered clothes**

“beautiful clothes.” To embroider is to sew a design into a piece of cloth.

---

ULT
10 I dressed you in embroidered clothes and placed leather sandals on your feet. I wrapped you with fine linen and covered you with silk.

UST
10 It was as though I put a fine linen robe on you and gave you expensive clothes. I put an embroidered dress on you and put leather sandals on your feet.
Ezekiel 16:11

I adorned you with jewelry

“I put jewelry on you”

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT

11 Next I adorned you with jewelry, and I put bracelets on your hands, and a chain around your neck.

UST

11 It was as though I put bracelets on your arms and a necklace around your neck. Those things all had nice jewels fastened to them.
Ezekiel 16:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• head
• crown, crowned

Translation Words - UST

• head
• crown, crowned

ULT
12 I put a nose ring in your nostrils and earrings in your ears, and a beautiful crown on your head.

UST
12 I put a gold ring in your nose and fastened earrings to your ears and put a beautiful crown on your head.
**Ezekiel 16:13**

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

you were adorned with gold and silver, and you were dressed in fine linen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I adorned you with gold and silver, and dressed you in fine linen” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- silver
- devour
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- gold, golden

**Translation Words - UST**

- silver
- devour
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- gold, golden

ULT 13 So you were adorned with gold and silver, and you were dressed in fine linen, silk, and embroidered clothes; you ate fine flour, honey, and oil, and you were very beautiful, and you became a queen.

UST 13 So it was as though you wore gold and silver ornaments. You had clothes made from fine linen and other expensive fabrics, and an embroidered dress. You ate fine flour, honey, and oil. You were the most beautiful woman and I made you into a queen.
Ezekiel 16:14

Your fame went out among the nations
“Many people in many nations knew who you were”

it was perfect
“your beauty was perfect”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- name
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- name
- nation

ULT
14 Your fame went out among the nations because of your beauty, for it was perfect in the majesty that I had given to you—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

UST
14 You were very beautiful, with the result that people in other nations heard about you, because they knew that I, Yahweh the Lord, am the one who had caused you to become very beautiful.
Ezekiel 16:15

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

you trusted in your own beauty

“you placed your confidence in your own beauty”

acted like a prostitute

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem as if the city were an unfaithful wife who sleeps with other men in exchange for payment. (See: Metaphor)

you poured out your acts of prostitution

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s immoral actions as if they were liquids and of committing those actions repeatedly as if it were pouring those liquids from a container. Alternate translation: “you repeatedly committed your acts of prostitution” (See: Metaphor)

so that your beauty became his

This Hebrew phrase is translated in many different ways by various modern versions. For example, some Bibles read “so that you gave yourself to him” or “his it was”

Translation Words - ULT

• name

Translation Words - UST

• name
Ezekiel 16:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
16 Then you took your clothes and with them you made high places for yourself decorated in various colors, and there you acted like a prostitute. This should not have happened. Nor should such a thing exist.

UST
16 It was as though you took some of your clothes to make beautifully decorated the high places, and that is where you slept with those men. Those things should certainly never occur!
Ezekiel 16:17

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

**male figures**

“statues of men” or “idols that look like men”

**you did with them as a prostitute would do**

Possible meanings are 1) this is a polite way to say the young woman was sleeping with the male figures. Alternate translation: “you slept with them” or 2) this is a metaphor in which Yahweh speaks of her worshiping the figures as if she were sleeping with them. Alternate translation: “you worshiped them” (See: Euphemism and Metaphor)
Ezekiel 16:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• oil

Translation Words - UST

• oil

ULT
18 You took your embroidered garments and covered them, and you set my oils and perfumes before them.

UST
18 You took some of your embroidered clothes to put on those idols, and you burned oil and incense in front of them to honor them.
Ezekiel 16:19

set before them

“placed as an offering in front of them”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- bread
- devour
- honey, honeycomb
- oil

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- bread
- devour
- honey, honeycomb
- oil

ULT
19 My bread I gave you—made with fine flour, oil, and honey—you set before them for a fragrant aroma, for this is what happened—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST
19 And the bread that was made from fine flour and the olive oil and honey that I gave to you to eat, you offered to be a fragrant sacrifice to those idols. I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that that is what happened.
Ezekiel 16:20

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

whom you bore for me

“who were my children”

you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food

Here Yahweh speaks of something that the people of Israel had actually done. They sacrificed their children to pagan idols. In these ancient pagan sacrifices, the people believed that the gods would eat the food that they offered to them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you sacrificed them to the images so that those images could devour them as food” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

Are your acts of prostitution a small matter?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the woman is acting as if her prostitution was not bad enough and so she decided to sacrifice her children as well. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You must think that your acts of prostitution are a small matter.” or “I do not think your acts of prostitution are a small matter.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• son

Translation Words - UST

• son
Ezekiel 16:21

made them pass through the fire

Here Yahweh speaks of something that the people of Israel had actually done. They sacrificed their children to pagan idols. It is implicit that she put them into the fire in order to offer them as burnt offerings to her images. Alternate translation: "sacrificed them as burnt offerings" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• slaughter, slaughtered

Translation Words - UST

• son
• slaughter, slaughtered
Ezekiel 16:22

naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 16:7. Alternate translation: “completely naked” (See: Doublet)
Ezekiel 16:23

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT
23 Woe! Woe to you!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—therefore, in addition to all this wickedness,

UST
23 So I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that terrible things will happen to you. In addition to all the other wicked things that you did,
Ezekiel 16:24

you built yourself a mound and made yourself a lofty shrine in every public place

Possible meanings are that she built a place where 1) she could worship her idols or 2) she could practice her prostitution.

ULT
24 you built yourself a mound and made yourself a lofty shrine in every public place.

UST
24 you built yourself a tall building in which you worship idols and you built a place to worship idols in every city square.
Ezekiel 16:25

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

at the head of every road

Yahweh speaks of the beginning of a road as if it were its head. Alternate translation: “at the beginning of every road” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• head

Translation Words - UST

• head

ULT

25 You built your high place at the head of every road and made your beauty a disgrace, and you spread your legs to anyone who passed by, and you multiplied your acts of prostitution.

UST

25 At the beginning of every street you built a tall building for the worship of idols, and showed people your beautiful body, offering it to sleep with every man who walked by, and so you were known as a prostitute and your fame for your immorality grew every day.
Ezekiel 16:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• flesh
• Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

• son
• flesh
• Egypt, Egyptian

ULT
26 You have acted like a prostitute with the Egyptians, your lustful neighbors, and you committed many more acts of prostitution, provoking me to anger.

UST
26 It was as though you had slept with men from Egypt who were eager to sleep with you, men who lived near Israel. You caused me to become very angry because you became more eager to sleep with more and more of them.
Ezekiel 16:27

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

See!

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

I will strike you with my hand

Here “hand” represents power. Alternate translation: “I will use my power to strike you” (See: Metonymy)

cut off your food

Yahweh speaks of stopping the supply of food as if it were cutting off the food. Alternate translation: “stop your food supply” (See: Metaphor)

I will hand your life over

Here “life” represents the person. Alternate translation: “I will hand you over” (See: Synecdoche)

the daughters of the Philistines

Here Yahweh speaks of the cities of Philistia as if they were the daughters of the Philistines. The cities represent the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the Philistine people” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• Philistines
• hand
• statute

Translation Words - UST

• heart
• Philistines
• hand
• statute
Ezekiel 16:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

ULT

28 You have acted like a prostitute with the Assyrians because you could not be satisfied. You acted like a prostitute and still were not satisfied.

UST

28 It was as though you slept with soldiers from Assyria, too, because you always wanted to sleep with more men. And after that, you still were not satisfied.
Ezekiel 16:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Chaldea, Chaldean
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• Chaldea, Chaldean
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
29 You performed many more acts of prostitution in the land of the merchants of Chaldea, and even this did not satisfy you.

UST
29 So you also slept with soldiers from Babylonia, a country full of merchants, but even that did not satisfy you.
Ezekiel 16:30

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.

How sick is your heart...that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute?

Yahweh asks the rhetorical question in order to rebuke Jerusalem. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your heart must be very sick...that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

How sick is your heart

Here the word "heart" represents the will and emotions. Yahweh speaks of her inability to control her desires as if her heart were sick. Alternate translation: "How weak-willed are you" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prostitute, harlot, whored
Ezekiel 16:31

**built your mounds...made your lofty shrines**

Possible meanings are that she built a place where 1) she could worship her idols or 2) she could practice her prostitution. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 16:24.

**at the head of every street**

Yahweh speaks of the beginning of a street as if it were its head. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 16:25. Alternate translation: “at the beginning of every street” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- head

Translation Words - UST

- head

ULT

31 You have built your mounds at the head of every street and made your lofty shrines in every public square. Yet you were not like a prostitute because you scoffed at taking payment.

UST

31 But when you built the houses on the hills to worship idols in every city square, you were not really like a prostitute because prostitutes charge money. You refused to take money for what you did!
Ezekiel 16:32

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

**you accept strangers instead of your husband**

This refers to accepting someone to sleep with her. Alternate translation: "you accept strangers into your bed instead of your husband" (See: Euphemism and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

32 You adulterous woman, you accept strangers instead of your husband.

**UST**

32 You are like a woman who commits adultery: You prefer to sleep with strangers rather than with your husband.
Ezekiel 16:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- love, beloved
- prostitute, harlot, whored

**Translation Words - UST**
- love, beloved
- prostitute, harlot, whored

**ULT**
33 People give payment to every prostitute, but you give your wages to all your lovers and bribe them to come to you from all around for your acts of prostitution.

**UST**
33 Prostitutes are paid, but it is as though you give gifts to all your lovers; you bribe them to come to you from everywhere to sleep with you.
Ezekiel 16:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST

• prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT

34 So there is a difference between you and other women. No one offers payment for you to act as a prostitute. You are the very opposite. You gave them payment and none was given to you.

UST

34 So although you act like you are a prostitute, you are actually the opposite of other prostitutes! Instead of them giving any money to you, you give men money to sleep with you!
Ezekiel 16:35

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: *Metaphor* and *Metonymy*)

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh
- prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT
35 Therefore, you prostitute, listen to the word of Yahweh.

UST
35 Therefore, you people of Jerusalem, you, who are like a prostitute, listen to what Yahweh the Lord is saying about you!
Ezekiel 16:36

you have poured out your lust

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s lust as if it were liquid and of committing actions repeatedly to gratify that lust as if it were pouring that liquid from a container. Alternate translation: “you repeatedly committed actions to gratify your lust” (See: Metaphor)

poured out your lust

Some modern versions translate “poured your wealth out.”

you gave them your children’s blood

This refers to killing children as a sacrifice to idols.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• love, beloved
• son

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• love, beloved
• son

ULT

36 The Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have poured out your lust and uncovered your nakedness through your acts of prostitution with your lovers and with all your detestable idols, and because you gave them your children’s blood,

UST

36 He says that what you have done is as though you have lusted for everyone around you and had slept with them and with the male idols you made, so that you even made your own children to be sacrifices to them.
Ezekiel 16:37

**behold**

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**so they see all your nakedness**

Stripping a person naked in front of others was an action intended to humiliate the person. The word “nakedness” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “so they can see you completely naked” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Abstract Nouns)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- love, beloved
- love, beloved

**Translation Words - UST**

- love, beloved
- love, beloved
Ezekiel 16:38

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

the shedding of blood

This phrase represents murder in any form. Alternate translation: “murder” (See: Metonymy)

I will bring on you the bloodshed of my anger and passion

Here "bloodshed" represents murder in any form. Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh speaks of punishing her for murder as if he were bringing bloodshed upon her. Alternate translation: “In my anger and passion, I will punish you for committing murder” or 2) Yahweh speaks of putting her to death as if he were bringing bloodshed upon her. Alternate translation: “In my anger and passion, I will shed your blood” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- blood
- wrath, fury
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- blood
- wrath, fury
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment
Ezekiel 16:39

I will give you into their hands

Here “hands” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “I will place you in their control” or “I will allow them to have power over you” (See: Metonymy)

throw down your vaulted chamber

Possible meanings are that they will destroy 1) the place where she worshiped her idols or 2) the place where she practiced her prostitution. See how you translated “vaulted chamber” in Ezekiel 16:24.

naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 16:7. Alternate translation: “completely naked” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT

39 I will give you into their hands so they will throw down your vaulted chamber and break down your high places and they will strip you of your clothes and take all of your jewelry. They will leave you naked and bare.

UST

39 I will allow your enemies who you thought loved you break apart your high places of idol worship and pagan altars. They will strip you naked and keep your clothes and jewelry, and abandon you with nothing to cover yourself with.
Ezekiel 16:40

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. He speaks about enemy soldiers as her lovers. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sword, swordsmen

ULT
40 Then they will bring up a crowd against you and stone you with stones, and they will cut you apart with their swords.

UST
40 They will bring a mob to attack you, and that mob will throw stones at you and cut you to pieces with their swords.
Ezekiel 16:41

will perform many acts of punishment on you

The word “punishment” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “will punish you in many different ways” (See: Abstract Nouns)

in the sight of many women

“where many women can see” or “while many women watch”

Translation Words - ULT

• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• house

Translation Words - UST

• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• house
Ezekiel 16:42

I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you

The words “fury” and “anger” refer to the punishment that Yahweh inflicts because he is angry. The two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “I will stop punishing you because I will no longer be angry with you” (See: Metonymy and Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

• wrath, fury
• rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

• wrath, fury
• rest, rested, restless
Ezekiel 16:43

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

call to mind
This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: Idiom)

have made me shake with anger because of all these things
Here “shake” refers to a physical response that a person has when he is extremely angry. As Jerusalem was doing these things, she did not think about what Yahweh had done when she was young.

behold!
The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• head

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• head

ULT
43 Because you did not call to mind the days of your youth and have made me shake with anger because of all these things, therefore, behold! I myself will bring down on your own head the punishment for what you have done—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration. Have you not added prostitution to all your other detestable practices?

UST
43 You have forgotten the wonderful things that I did for you in previous years. You have caused me to become extremely angry because of all the evil things that you have done. In addition to all the other detestable things that you did, you committed many sexual sins. So I Yahweh the Lord declare that I will punish you for doing those things.
Ezekiel 16:44

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Behold!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

ULT

44 Behold! Everyone who speaks proverbs concerning you will say, “As the mother is, so also is her daughter.”

UST

44 People who like to quote proverbs will quote this proverb about you: ‘Daughters behave like their mothers behave.’
Ezekiel 16:45

who detested her husband

“who hated her husband”

Your mother was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite

The Amorites and Hittites were both pagan people groups who lived in the land before the people of Israel conquered it. Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s father and mother belonging to these people groups to express that she was born into idolatry. See how you translated these phrases in Ezekiel 16:3. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

45 You are the daughter of your mother, who detested her husband and her children, and you are the sister of your sisters who detested their husbands and their children. Your mother was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite.

UST

45 You are like your mother; it was as though she detested her husband and her children. You are like your sisters, who also despised their husbands and their children. It was as though your father belonged to the Amor people group and your mother belonged to the Heth people group.
Ezekiel 16:46

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Your older sister was Samaria...your younger sister was the one living south of you, that is, Sodom

Samaria and Sodom were both cities that Yahweh had judged for their idolatry and wickedness. Yahweh speaks of these cities being Jerusalem’s sisters to express that she belonged to a family that practiced idolatry and wickedness. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Samaria, Samaritan

Translation Words - UST

• Samaria, Samaritan
Ezekiel 16:47

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

You not only walked in their ways

The way a person lives is spoken of as if the person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “You not only acted like them” (See: Metaphor)

copied their behavior and practices

Here the words “behavior” and “practices” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “copied the things that they did” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• walk, walked
ULT
48 As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—your sister Sodom and her daughters, have not done as much evil as you and your daughters have done.

UST
48 I, Yahweh the Lord, solemnly declare that as surely as I am alive, the people who lived in Sodom and other nearby cities never did the detestable things that you people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah have done.

Ezekiel 16:48

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 16:49

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned about anything

Yahweh describes Sodom as a rich woman who has more than enough food and lives in security. (See: Metaphor)

She did not strengthen the hands of the poor and needy people

Here the word “hands” represents the people who work with their hands. The words “poor” and “needy” emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. Alternate translation: “She did not help the people who could not help themselves” (See: Synecdoche and Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• iniquity
• hand
• bread
• strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

• iniquity
• hand
• bread
• strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 16:50

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
50 She was arrogant and committed disgusting actions before me, so I took them away just as you have seen.

UST
50 The people of Sodom and nearby cities were proud and did detestable things in my presence, so I got rid of them when I saw what they had been doing.
Ezekiel 16:51

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

you have shown that your sisters were better than you

Yahweh uses this phrase three times to emphasize that the wicked cities of Samaria and Sodom were more righteous than Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Translation Words - UST

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

ULT

51 Neither did Samaria commit even half of your sins; instead, you have done many more disgusting things than they did, and you have shown that your sisters were better than you because of all the disgusting things that you do!

UST

51 Also, the people of Samaria did not commit half as many sins as you commit. You have done more disgusting things than they have done. You cause the people of Samaria to appear to be good, compared to you.
Especially you, show your own shame

Yahweh uses this phrase twice to emphasize how shamefully the people of Jerusalem have acted.

**show your own shame**

“be ashamed” or “bear your disgrace”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

**Translation Words - UST**
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

ULT

52 Especially you, show your own shame; in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you, because of the sins you committed in all those disgusting ways. Your sisters now seem better than you. Especially you, show your own shame, for in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you.

UST

52 Your sins are worse than their sins, so they seem to be less wicked than you are. So I will punish you more than I punished them. As a result, you will be ashamed and disgraced.
Ezekiel 16:53

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Samaria, Samaritan
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured (2)
• return

Translation Words - UST

• Samaria, Samaritan
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured (2)
• return

ULT

53 For I will restore their fortunes—the fortunes of Sodom and her daughters, and the fortunes of Samaria and her daughters; but your fortunes will be among them.

UST

53 However, some day I will cause the people of Sodom and Samaria and the cities near to them to prosper again. And I will cause you to prosper again, too.
Ezekiel 16:54

you will show your shame

“you will be ashamed” or “you will bear your disgrace”

you will be humiliated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will humiliate you” (See: Active or Passive)

you will be a comfort to them

The noun “comfort” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “you will comfort Sodom and Samaria” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Translation Words - UST

• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
Ezekiel 16:55

**Your sister Sodom and her daughters will be restored to their former condition**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will restore your sister Sodom and her daughters to their former condition” (See: Active or Passive)

**Samaria and her daughters will be restored to their former estate**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will restore your sister Samaria and her daughters to their former estate” (See: Active or Passive)

**You and your daughters will be restored to your former condition**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will restore you and your daughters to your former condition” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration

**Translation Words - UST**

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration

ULT

55 So your sister Sodom and her daughters will be restored to their former condition, and Samaria and her daughters will be restored to their former estate. Then you and your daughters will be restored to your former condition.

UST

55 The people of Sodom and Samaria will prosper again, and you and the people in nearby cities will prosper also.
Ezekiel 16:56

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: *Metaphor* and *Metonymy*)

Sodom your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth

Here the word “mouth” represents the person who speaks. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You did not even mention your sister Sodom” (See: *Synecdoche* and *Active or Passive*)
Ezekiel 16:57

before your wickedness was revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “before you revealed your wickedness” or “before I revealed your wickedness” (See: Active or Passive)

you are an object of scorn

This refers to Jerusalem as something people talk badly about.

the daughters of Edom and to all the daughters of the Philistines

Here Yahweh speaks of the cities of Edom and Philistia as if they were the daughters of Edom and of the Philistines. The cities represent the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the Edomite people and to all the Philistine people” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

despise

hate very much

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Philistines
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Philistines
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- exile, exiled
Ezekiel 16:58

this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 16:59

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

despised your oath by breaking the covenant

Jerusalem broke her marriage covenant with Yahweh, thereby showing that she did not care about the oaths that she had made to him. Alternate translation: “despised your oath to me by breaking the covenant that you made with me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• covenant

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• covenant

ULT

59 The Lord Yahweh says this: I will deal with you as you deserve, you who have despised your oath by breaking the covenant.

UST

59 This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will continue to punish you like you deserve to be punished, because by rejecting the agreement that I made with you, you have despised that solemn agreement that you promised to obey.
Ezekiel 16:60

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

call to mind
This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: Idiom)

made in the days of your youth
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that I made with you when you were young” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- covenant
- covenant

Translation Words - UST
- covenant
- covenant
Ezekiel 16:61

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Translation Words - UST

• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

ULT

61 Then you will call to mind your ways and be ashamed when you receive your older sisters and your younger sisters. I will give them to you as daughters, but not because of your covenant.

UST

61 Then you will think about what you have done, and you will be ashamed about those things when you welcome the people of Sodom and Samaria, cities which are like your daughters, but they will not have the same agreement that I will make with you.
**Ezekiel 16:62**

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- covenant
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- covenant
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

62 I myself will establish my covenant with you, and you will know that I am Yahweh.

UST

62 I will establish my agreement with you, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.
Ezekiel 16:63

call everything to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember everything” (See: Idiom)

you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame

This means that Jerusalem will be too ashamed to speak.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT

63 Because of these things, you will call everything to mind and be ashamed, so you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame, when I have forgiven you for all that you have done—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

16:6 [1] Some modern versions leave out the second occurrence of I said to you in your blood, “Live!”.

16:57 [2] Instead of Edom , some ancient copies and modern versions have Aram , that is, Syria.

UST

63 Then when I have forgiven you for all your sins, you will think about all the sins that you committed and you will be ashamed. You will never again boast about them, because you will be humiliated.” I, the Lord Yahweh, have said so!” This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”
Ezekiel 17

Ezekiel 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Breaking allegiance

The king of Judah had vowed to obey Babylon but instead he followed Egypt. Therefore, God said he would not prosper. (See: vow)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Judah is compared to a vine that grows one direction and then another. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 17:1

General Information:
Ezekiel reports a message that God gives him.

The word of Yahweh came
This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 17:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

present a riddle and speak a parable

“give them a puzzle to think about” or “tell this story as an illustration”

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house
Ezekiel 17:3

**long pinions, full of feathers**

“The ends of its wings were long and full of feathers.” The word “pinion” means the outer end of the wings.

**that was multicolored**

The eagle’s feathers were many different colors.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Lebanon

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Lebanon

ULT

3 Say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: A large eagle with large wings and long pinions, full of feathers, and that was multicolored went to Lebanon and took hold of the top of a cedar tree.

UST

3 Say to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says: A huge eagle that had strong wings and long beautiful feathers of many colors flew to Lebanon. It grasped the top of a cedar tree.”
Ezekiel 17:4

It broke off the tips of the branches

“It broke off the highest part of the tree”

took them

“took the top of the tree” or “took the branches”

he planted it in a city of merchants

“he planted it in a city that had many merchants.” A merchant is a person who sells things.

Translation Words - ULT

• head
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• head
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
4 It broke off the tips of the branches and took them to the land of Canaan; he planted it in a city of merchants.

UST
4 and broke it off. Then the eagle carried it away to Canaan, a country that had many merchants, and planted it in one of the cities there.
Ezekiel 17:5

**General Information:**
This is a continuation of the parable about the eagle.

**He also took**
The word “he” is the eagle in the parable.

**fertile soil**
“good ground”

**He placed it beside a large body of water**
“the eagle planted the seed in a place where there was a lot of water”

**planted it...like a willow**
Willow trees grow in places where there is a lot of water. If the eagle planted the seed like a willow, it means that he planted it in a place with a lot of water. Alternate translation: “and planted the seed like one would plant a willow tree by water” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- descend, descendant
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**
- descend, descendant
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 17:6

Then it sprouted

“Then the seed began to grow into a plant”

a spreading vine low to the ground

“a vine that spreads out on the ground”

Its branches turned toward him

The branches of the vine turned toward the eagle. This means that they began to grow upward towards the sky.

its roots grew under it

Possible meanings are 1) “its roots grew under itself into the ground” or “the roots of the vine grew under the eagle.”

So it became a vine

“That is how the vine grew”

produced branches and sent out shoots

“grew branches and spread its shoots”

ULT

6 Then it sprouted and became a spreading vine low to the ground. Its branches turned toward him, and its roots grew under it. So it became a vine and produced branches and sent out shoots.

UST

6 It grew and became a low grapevine that spread along the ground. Its branches turned up toward the eagle, but its roots grew down into the ground. So it became a good vine and produced lots of branches and leaves.
Ezekiel 17:7

General Information:

The introductory “but” shows that a different eagle is being described other than the one before.

another great eagle

“another large eagle”

Behold!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

This vine turned its roots toward the eagle

Yahweh speaks of the vine as if it were able to behave like a person and intentionally turned its roots toward the other eagle to receive nourishment from it. Alternate translation: “The roots of the vine grew toward the eagle” (See: Personification)

from the place it had been planted so it would be watered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “from the place that the first eagle had planted it so that it would have water” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• vine

Translation Words - UST

• vine
Ezekiel 17:8

It had been planted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The first eagle had planted the vine” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Translation Words - UST
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

ULT
8 It had been planted in good soil beside a large body of water so it would produce branches and sprout fruit, to become a magnificent vine.

UST
8 That happened in spite of the fact that the vine had been planted in good soil, where there was plenty of water, with the result that it had produced branches and produced grapes and had become a very healthy vine.
Ezekiel 17:9

Will it prosper?
Yahweh asks this as a leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “It will not prosper.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will it not be uprooted and stripped of its fruit so that it withers, and all its fresh growth will wither?
Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the vine will certainly be judged. The question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone will pull up its roots and pluck out its fruit so all of its growth of leaves will wither away.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

No strong arm or many people will be needed to pull it out
The phrase “strong arm” represents a strong person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “There will be no need for a strong person or many people to pull it out” (See: Synecdoche and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
Ezekiel 17:10

** behold**

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

** will it grow? **

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to emphasize the negative answer. The question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “It will not grow.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Will it not wither when the eastern wind touches it?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that this will certainly happen. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “It will wither when the eastern wind touches it.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

** when the eastern wind touches it**

“when the eastern wind blows on it”

**Translation Words - ULT**

• spirit, spiritual

**Translation Words - UST**

• spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 17:11

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 17:12

the rebellious house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “the rebellious people” (See: Metonymy)

Do you not know what these things mean?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to provide the answer. The question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “This is what these things mean.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

her king and her princes

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Jerusalem
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Jerusalem
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 17:13

brought him under an oath

“made him swear an oath”

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- cut off
- descend, descendant
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- cut off
- descend, descendant
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

13 Then he took a royal descendant, made a covenant with him, and brought him under an oath. He took away the powerful people of the land,

UST

13 Then he took one of the king’s close relatives, appointed one of them as king, and made an agreement with him, forcing him to solemnly promise to remain loyal. The king of Babylon also took to Babylon the other important citizens of Judah,
Ezekiel 17:14

so the kingdom might become lowly and not lift itself up

The kingdom being small and weak is spoken of as if it were lowly and being large and powerful as if it lifted itself up. Alternate translation: “so the kingdom might remain small and not become great” (See: Metaphor)

the land will survive

Here the word “land” represents the kingdom of Judah and the people in it. Alternate translation: “the kingdom will continue to exist” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• covenant
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• covenant
• kingdom
Ezekiel 17:15

General Information:
Yahweh speaks about the king of Jerusalem rebelling against the king of Babylon.

Will he succeed?
Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “He will certainly not succeed.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will the one doing these things escape?
Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This may be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “The one doing these things will not escape.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

If he breaks the covenant, will he escape?
Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “If he breaks the covenant, he will certainly not escape.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- covenant
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- messenger
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST
- covenant
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- messenger
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- horse, warhorse, horseback
Ezekiel 17:16

the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised

“the land of the king of Babylon who made him King of Judah, the king of Babylon whose oath he despised”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
16 As I live!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—he will surely die in the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he broke. He will die in the middle of Babylon.

UST
16 I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, the king of Judah will die in Babylon, in the city where the king of Babylon appointed him to be the king of Judah. He will die because he despised the solemn agreement and refused to do what he promised to do.
Ezekiel 17:17

General Information:

Yahweh speaking about the king of Jerusalem.

**his mighty army and a great company of men**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how large and strong Pharaoh's army is. (See: Doublet)

**will not help him**

Here the word “him” refers to the king of Judah.

**siege walls**

this refers to a tower with ladders that can be placed next to a wall and allow soldiers to get over the wall and into the city.

**to cut off many lives**

“to kill many people”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- cut off

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- cut off
Ezekiel 17:18

Behold, he reached out

“He did something even worse than that: he reached out”

reached out with his hand to make a promise

This refers to taking hold of another person's hand as a sign of friendship and agreement. Here it represents the covenant oath that he made with the king of Babylon. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- covenant
- hand

Translation Words - UST
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- covenant
- hand

ULT
18 For the king despised his oath by breaking the covenant. Behold, he reached out with his hand to make a promise and yet he did all these things. He will not escape.

UST
18 The king of Judah despised the solemn agreement by disregarding the treaty. Although he had solemnly promised to be under the control of the king of Babylon, he sent officials to request help from Egypt. Therefore he will not escape being punished by the king of Babylon.
Ezekiel 17:19

was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke?

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the affirmative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “it was my oath that the king of Jerusalem despised and my covenant that he broke.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

I will bring his punishment on his head

The idiom “bring...on his head” means that he will experience this punishment. See how you translated this idiom in Ezekiel 11:21. Alternate translation: “I will cause him to suffer his punishment” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• covenant
• head

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• covenant
• head

ULT
19 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: As I live, was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke? So I will bring his punishment on his head!

UST
19 Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Just as surely as I am alive, I will cause the king of Judah to be punished for ignoring the solemn agreement that he made with the king of Babylon and then refusing to obey it, since this violates what I expect.
Ezekiel 17:20

I will spread my net out over him, and he will be caught in my hunting net

Yahweh speaks of enabling the enemy army to capture the king as if he were trapping the king in a net. (See: Metaphor)

he will be caught in my hunting net

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will catch him in my hunting net” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- judge, judgment
- transgress, transgression
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- judge, judgment
- transgress, transgression
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
Ezekiel 17:21

All of his refugees...armies will fall by the sword

The word “fall” is a euphemism for “die.” Here the word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people with swords. Alternate translation: “Soldiers will kill all his refugees...armies” (See: Metonymy)

the ones who remain will be scattered in every direction

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the ones who remain alive will flee in every direction” or “the enemy soldiers will scatter in every directions the ones who remain alive” (See: Active or Passive)

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 17:22

General Information:

Yahweh resumes the parable that he had told in Ezekiel 17:1 and speaks about Jerusalem as if it were a branch that he plants on the mountains of Israel. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- head
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- head
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

22 The Lord Yahweh says this, ‘So I myself will take away the highest part of the cedar tree, and I will plant it away from its tender branches. I will break it off, and I myself will plant it on a high mountain.

UST

22 This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: “It will be as though I will take a shoot from the top of a very tall cedar tree and plant it in another place. I will plant it on a very high mountain.
Ezekiel 17:23

bear branches
“grow new branches”

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites
• fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
• noble, nobleman, royal official

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites
• fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
• noble, nobleman, royal official

ULT
23 I will plant it on the mountains of Israel so it will bear branches and produce fruit, and it will become a majestic cedar so that every winged bird will live under it. They will nest in the shade of its branches.

UST
23 It will be as though I will plant it on a mountain in Israel, and it will grow and become a beautiful cedar tree. Many kinds of birds will make their nests in the tree, and they will have shade in its branches.
Ezekiel 17:24

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a branch that he plants on the mountains of Israel and of other nations as if they were other trees. (See: Metaphor)

Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh

Yahweh speaks of trees as if they are people who can know about him. The trees represent the nations and the people who live in them. (See: Personification and Metaphor)

I bring down the high trees and I raise up the low trees

“I cut down the tall trees and I cause the little trees to grow”

withers

when a plant dries up and dies.

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 18

Ezekiel 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Inherited Guilt

God does not punish children for the sins of their parents, but only punishes them for their own sins. Despite this, the parents’ sins may still have consequences for their children. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)
Ezekiel 18:1

The word of Yahweh came to me again

The phrase “the word of Yahweh came” is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke to me again” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 18:2

What do you mean, you who use this proverb...‘Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt’?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel something he already knows. The question is a rebuke for the people who use the proverb. Alternate translation: “The people in the land of Israel have this proverb...‘Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt.’” (See: Rhetorical Question)

What do you mean, you who use this proverb

Here the word “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

land of Israel

This refers to the people of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt

This proverbs means that children experience the consequences of their parents' actions. (See: Proverbs)

the children's teeth are made blunt

The idiom “teeth are made blunt” refers to the sour taste in one's mouth that is a result of eating unripe or sour fruit. Alternate translation: “the children get a sour taste in their mouths” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour
Ezekiel 18:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites

ULT

3 As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—there will certainly no longer be any occasion for you to use this proverb in Israel.

UST

3 But I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, you Israelite people will no longer say this proverb.
Ezekiel 18:4

Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

The soul who sins

Here the word “soul” represents the person. Alternate translation: “The person who sins” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT
4 Behold! Every life belong to me—the life of the father as well as the life of the son, they belong to me! The soul who sins is the one who will die!

UST
4 Everyone who is alive belongs to me. That includes children and their parents; they all belong to me. And it is those who sin who will die because of their sins.
Ezekiel 18:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

* righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
* judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

* righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
* judge, judgment

ULT
5 What can be said about a man who is righteous and who carries out justice and righteousness—

UST
5 So suppose that there is a righteous person, one who always does what is fair and right.
Ezekiel 18:6

he does not eat upon the mountains

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has not participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. Alternate translation: “he does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the mountains” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

lift up his eyes to the idols

The idiom “lift up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. Alternate translation: “worship the idols” or “pray to the idols” (See: Symbolic Action)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

approached a woman during her monthly period

It is implicit that he has not approached a woman in order to sleep with her. Alternate translation: “approached a woman to sleep with her during her monthly period” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- house

Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- house

ULT

6 if he does not eat upon the mountains or lift up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, and he does not defile his neighbor's wife, nor approached a woman during her monthly period, is he a righteous man?

UST

6 He does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops; he does not request help from idols as the rest of Israel has been doing. He does not sleep with someone else's wife or with a woman during her monthly menstrual period.
Ezekiel 18:7

gives back to the debtor what was put up as security for a loan

“He returns to the debtor the item that the debtor gave him as security for the loan”

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- bread

ULT

7 What can be said about a man who does not oppress anyone, and he gives back to the debtor what was put up as security for a loan, and he does not commit theft but gives his food to the hungry and he covers the naked with clothes, is he a righteous man?

UST

7 He does not mistreat people; if a person borrows money from him and gives him something to guarantee that he will pay the money back, this man always gives it back to that person before the sun goes down. He does not rob people. He gives food to hungry people. He gives clothing to people who need clothes.
Ezekiel 18:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues to describe the actions of the righteous man.

interest
This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

establishes faithfulness between people
This means that he judges fairly the disputes that may arise between people.

Translation Words - ULT

• restore, restoration
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• judge, judgment
• hand

Translation Words - UST

• restore, restoration
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• judge, judgment
• hand

ULT
8 What can be said about a man who does not charge too much interest for the money he loans, and he does not take too much profit for what he sells? It is said of him that he carries out justice and establishes faithfulness between people.

UST
8 When he lends money to people, he does not do it to make him pay interest. He does not do things that are evil. He always decides things fairly.
Ezekiel 18:9

that man walks in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path in which the person walks. Alternate translation: “that man obeys my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• life, live, living, alive
• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• statute
• walk, walked
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• life, live, living, alive
• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• statute
• walk, walked
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 18:10

who sheds blood

This phrase represents murder in any form. Alternate translation: “who murders” (See: Metonymy)

any one of these things

This refers to the sinful actions that Yahweh had mentioned beginning in Ezekiel 18:5.

Translation Words - ULT

• brother
• son
• blood

Translation Words - UST

• brother
• son
• blood
Ezekiel 18:11

eats upon the mountains

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 18:5. Alternate translation: "eats meat sacrificed to idols upon the mountains" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- devour

Translation Words - UST
- devour
Ezekiel 18:12

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about the violent son.

the poor and needy

The words “poor” and “needy” share similar meanings and emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. (See: Doublet)

he lifts up his eyes to the idols

The idiom “lifts up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 18:6. Alternate translation: “he worships the idols” or “he prays to the idols” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

• restore, restoration
Ezekiel 18:13

interest

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

should that man live? Surely he will not!

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to emphasize the negative answer. Alternate translation: “he will certainly not live!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

his blood will be on him

Here the word “blood” represents death. For blood to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that death. Alternate translation: “he will be responsible for his own death” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• abomination, abominable
• blood

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• abomination, abominable
• blood
Ezekiel 18:14

**Behold!**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

**Translation Words - UST**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

**ULT**

14 But behold! Suppose there is a man who bears a son, and his son sees all the sins that his father has committed, and though he sees them, he does not do those things.

**UST**

14 But suppose that man has a son who sees all the sins that his father commits, but he himself does not do those things.
Ezekiel 18:15

That son does not eat upon the mountains

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has not participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 18:6. Alternate translation: “That son does not eat meat sacrificed to idols upon the mountains” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he does not lift up his eyes to the idols

The idiom “lifted up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 18:6. Alternate translation: “he does not worship the idols” or “he does not pray to the idols” (See: Symbolic Action)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites
• devour
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites
• devour
• house
Ezekiel 18:16

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak about the son who does not commit the same sins as his father.

Translation Words - ULT
• bread

Translation Words - UST
• bread

ULT
16 That son does not oppress anyone, or seize a pledge, or take stolen things, but instead gives his food to the hungry and covers up the naked with clothes.

UST
16 He does not mistreat people. If he lends money to someone, he does not require that person to give him something to guarantee that he will pay the money back. He does not rob anyone. He gives food to those who need it. He gives clothes to those who need clothes.
Ezekiel 18:17

interest

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

walks according to my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if his statutes were a path in which the person walks. Alternate translation: “obeys my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration
• judge, judgment
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• hand
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration
• judge, judgment
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• hand
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 18:18

General Information:
Yahweh speaks about the son’s father who has not obeyed God’s law.

extortion
to take something from someone else by using threats or force.

robbed his brother
“robbed his fellow Israelite”

behold, he
“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: he”

in his iniquity
“because of his iniquity”

Translation Words - ULT

• brother
• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

• brother
• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
Ezekiel 18:19

Why does the son not bear the iniquity of his father?

Yahweh speaks of a person being responsible for or guilty of iniquity as if the iniquity were an object that the person carries. Alternate translation: "Why is the son not responsible for the iniquity of his father?" or "Why is the son not guilty of the iniquity of his father?" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- judge, judgment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- judge, judgment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

19 But you say, ‘Why does the son not bear the iniquity of his father?’ Because the son carries out justice and righteousness and keeps all my statutes; he does them. He will surely live!

UST

19 If you ask, ‘Why should the man’s son not suffer for the evil things that his father did?’, I will answer that the son has done what is fair and right and has obeyed all my laws, so he will surely remain alive.
Ezekiel 18:20

The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself

For righteousness to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that righteousness. Alternate translation: “The one who acts rightly will be responsible for his own righteousness” (See: Idiom)

The wickedness of the wicked will be on himself

For wickedness to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that wickedness. Alternate translation: “the wicked person will be responsible for his own wickedness” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

20 The one who sins, he is the one who will die. A son will not bear his father’s iniquity, and a father will not bear his son’s iniquity. The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself, and the wickedness of the wicked will be on himself.

UST

20 It is those who sin who will die because of their sins. I will not punish people because their parents have sinned, or because their children have sinned. I will reward people who live rightly, and I will punish the wicked people, those who live wrongly.
Ezekiel 18:21

**General Information:**

Yahweh speaking of the wicked person who changes and does what is righteous.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- restore, restoration
- judge, judgment

**Translation Words - UST**

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- restore, restoration
- judge, judgment

ULT

21 But if the wicked turns away from all his sins that he has done, and keeps all my statutes and performs justice and righteousness, then he will certainly live and not die.

UST

21 But if a wicked person stops doing all the evil things that he did previously, and if he starts to obey faithfully all my laws, and if he does what is fair and right, he will surely remain alive; I will not kill him.
Ezekiel 18:22

All the transgressions that he has committed will not be called to mind against him

The idiom “call to mind” means to remember. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will not remember all the transgressions that he has committed and will not hold them against him” (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

by the righteousness that he practices

“because of the righteous things he has done”

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
Ezekiel 18:23

General Information:
Yahweh speaks about his desire for wicked people.

Do I greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked...and not in his turning away from his way so that he may live?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question in order to emphasize the opposite. Alternate translation: “I do not greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked...but I do greatly rejoice if he turns away from his way so that he may live.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration
Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

not in his turning away from his way
Yahweh speaks of a person's lifestyle or behavior as if it were a way on which the person walks. The idiom “to turn away” from something means to stop doing that thing. Alternate translation: “not in his ceasing to live the way that he lives” (See: Metaphor and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- delight

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- delight
Ezekiel 18:24

General Information:

Yahweh gives an example of a man who turns from righteousness to wickedness.

then will he live?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the negative answer. Alternate translation: “then he will surely not live.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

All the righteousness that he had done will not be called to mind

The idiom “call to mind” means to remember. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will not remember all the righteousness that he had done” (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

treason

crime done against a country or against God, by someone who is expected to be loyal

he will die in the sins

“he will die because of the sins”

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• trespass
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• abomination, abominable
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Translation Words - UST

• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• trespass
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• abomination, abominable
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
Ezekiel 18:25

house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Are my ways unfair?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the negative answer. Alternate translation: “My ways are not unfair.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Is it not your ways that are unfair?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the positive answer. Alternate translation: “It is your ways that are unfair.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- house
Ezekiel 18:26

dies because of them...die in the iniquity that he has done

These phrases repeat the thought of a man dying because of his sin to express that it was his fault and the fault of no one else. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• die, dead, deadly, death,
Ezekiel 18:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• judge, judgment

ULT

27 But when a wicked man turns away from his wickedness that he has done and performs justice and righteousness, then he will preserve his life.

UST

27 But if a wicked person turns away from doing wicked things and does what is just and right, he will save himself from dying.
Ezekiel 18:28

he has seen

Yahweh speaks of the person thinking about and understanding something as if the person were seeing it. Alternate translation: “he has considered” or “he has understood” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- return

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- return
Ezekiel 18:29

General Information:
Yahweh continues to teach the people of Israel why his way is fair.

house of Israel
The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

The way of the Lord is not fair...How is my way not fair...It is your ways that are not fair
Actions or behaviors are spoken of as if they were a way or path that a person travels. Alternate translation: “The Lord does not act fairly...How do I not act fairly...It is you who do not act fairly” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites (2)
• house
• house (2)

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites (2)
• house
• house (2)
Ezekiel 18:30

according to his ways

Yahweh speaks of a person's actions as if the person were walking along a path. Alternate translation: “according to his actions” (See: Metaphor)

turn away from all your transgressions so that they will not be stumbling blocks of iniquity against you

Yahweh speaks of “transgressions” causing people to rebel against him as if they were blocks over which the people stumble. (See: Metaphor)

stumbling blocks of iniquity against you

Possible meanings are 1) the stumbling blocks cause the person to commit more iniquity. Alternate translation: “stumbling blocks that cause you to commit more iniquity” or 2) The word “iniquity” is a metonym for the punishment that a person receives for his iniquity. Alternate translation: “stumbling blocks that lead to your punishment” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• iniquity
• restore, restoration
• Israel, Israelites
• return
• house

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• iniquity
• restore, restoration
• Israel, Israelites
• return
• house
Ezekiel 18:31

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.

Throw away from yourselves all of the transgressions that you have committed
Yahweh speaks of the people determining to stop committing transgressions as if the transgressions were objects, such as clothing, that they removed and threw away. Alternate translation: “Get rid of all of the transgressions that you have committed” (See: Metaphor)

make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit
Here the word “heart” represents the will and emotions and the word “spirit” represents the thoughts and disposition. Yahweh speaks of the people having new emotions and thoughts as if they were making a new heart and spirit for themselves. Alternate translation: “get for yourselves new emotions and a new way of thinking” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Why should you die, house of Israel?
Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to comfort the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “There is no reason for you to die, house of Israel.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

house of Israel
The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- Israel, Israelites
- house

Translation Words - UST
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- Israel, Israelites
- house
Ezekiel 18:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- delight
- return

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- delight
- return

ULT

32 For I have no delight in the death of the one who dies—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—so repent and live!"

18:10 [1] Some ancient copies and many modern versions leave out to a brother .

UST

32 I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that I am not pleased if you die. So turn away from your sins and stay alive!"
Ezekiel 19

Ezekiel 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah destroyed

The first king was taken as a captive to Egypt, the next was taken as a captive to Babylon. Now Judah is not prospering.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The kings of Judah are compared to man-eating lions. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 19:1

**General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to the people of Israel. He tells a story where the nation of Israel is a lioness and some of the past kings in the kingdom of Judah are her cubs. (See: Metaphor)

**take up a lamentation**

This idiom means to sing a lamentation. Alternate translation: “sing a lamentation” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Israel, Israelites

**Translation Words - UST**

- Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 19:2

Who was your mother?

Yahweh asks this ask a leading question in order to introduce the answer. Alternate translation: “This is who your mother is.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

lioness

a female lion

ULT
2 and say, 'Who was your mother? A lioness, she lived with a lion's son; in the midst of young lions, she nurtured her cubs.

UST
2 “Ezekiel, sing a sad funeral song which will be a parable about the leaders of Israel. Say to the Israelite people, 'It is as though your mother had been a brave female lion who raised her cubs among other lions.
Ezekiel 19:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• devour

Translation Words - UST

• devour

ULT
3 She is the one who raised up one of her cubs to become a young lion, a lion who learned to tear apart his victims, and then he devoured men.

UST
3 She taught one of them to hunt for other animals to kill, and he even learned to kill and eat people.
Ezekiel 19:4

He was caught in their trap

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They caught him in their trap” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 19:5

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- perish
- hope, hoped

**Translation Words - UST**

- perish
- hope, hoped

ULT

5 Then she saw that although she had waited for his return, her expectation was now gone, so she took another of her cubs and raised him to become a young lion.

UST

5 His mother waited for him to return, but soon she stopped hoping for that to happen. So she raised another cub who also became very fierce.
Ezekiel 19:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• devour

Translation Words - UST

• devour

ULT 6 This young lion roamed about in the midst of lions. He was a young lion and learned to tear his victims; he devoured men.

UST 6 He hunted along with other lions for animals to kill, and he even learned to kill and eat people.
Ezekiel 19:7

He seized their widows

“He seized the widows of the men whom he devoured”

The land and its fullness were abandoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People abandoned the land and its fullness” (See: Active or Passive)

its fullness

“everything in it”

Translation Words - ULT

• earth, earthen, earthly
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• earth, earthen, earthly
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 19:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs. (See: Metaphor)

from the surrounding provinces
“from the provinces surrounding the land of Israel”

He was caught in their trap
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They caught him in their trap” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- nation

Translation Words - UST
- nation
Ezekiel 19:9

his voice would no longer be heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people would no longer hear his voice” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
9 With hooks they put him in a cage and then they brought him to the king of Babylon. They brought him to the strongholds so that his voice would no longer be heard on the mountains of Israel.

UST
9 They pulled him with hooks in his flesh and put him into an iron cage, then they took him to the king of Babylon. There they locked him up so that the sound of his voice could never be heard echoing on the hills of Israel.’
Ezekiel 19:10

General Information:

Yahweh speaks of the nation of Israel as though it was the mother of the leaders of Israel. Here he begins to tell a story where she is a prosperous vine. (See: Metaphor)

a vine planted in your blood

Possible meanings are that “blood” represents 1) the violence of the kings of Judah who had murdered people. Alternate translation: “a vine planted by means of violence” or 2) The plentiful wine of Judah which had become a symbol of prosperity. Alternate translation: “a vine planted in your prosperity” (See: Metonymy and Symbolic Language)

ULT
10 Your mother was like a vine planted in your blood beside the water, [2] it was fruitful and full of branches because of the abundance of water.

UST
10 It is as though your mother were a grapevine fertilized in blood, and growing up beside a stream. There was plenty of water, so it had lots of branches and produced a lot of grapes.
strong branches that were used for rulers’ scepters

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “branches strong enough that people used them for rulers’ scepters” (See: Active or Passive)

its height was seen by the greatness of its foliage

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people could see how tall it was by the greatness of its foliage” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• dominion
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

• dominion
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT
11 It had strong branches that were used for rulers’ scepters, and its size was exalted above the branches, and its height was seen by the greatness of its foliage.

UST
11 That grapevine grew and became taller than all the nearby trees; everyone could see that it was very strong and healthy. And those branches were good for making scepters that symbolize the power of a king.
Ezekiel 19:12

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell a story in which the nation of Israel is a vine. (See: Metaphor)

**the vine was uprooted in fury and thrown down**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh uprooted the vine in fury and threw it down” or “people uprooted the vine in fury and threw it down” (See: Active or Passive)

**Its strong branches were broken off and withered**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh broke off its strong branches and they withered” or “People broke off its strong branches and they withered” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- spirit, spiritual
- wrath, fury
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

**Translation Words - UST**

- spirit, spiritual
- wrath, fury
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 19:13

in a land of drought and thirst

The very dry land is spoken of as if it were thirsty. Alternate translation: “in a very dry land of drought” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• desert, wilderness
• barren, dry

Translation Words - UST

• desert, wilderness
• barren, dry

ULT

13 So now it is planted in the wilderness, in a land of drought and thirst.

UST

13 Now Yahweh has planted that vine in a hot, dry desert.
**Ezekiel 19:14**

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell a story in which the nation of Israel is a vine. (See: Metaphor)

**no scepter to rule**

The implicit information may be supplied from Ezekiel 19:11. Alternate translation: “no branch strong enough for a ruler’s scepter” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**will be sung as a lamentation**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must sing it as a lamentation” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- command, commandment
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- rule, ruler, ruling, overrules
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

**Translation Words - UST**

- command, commandment
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- rule, ruler, ruling, overrules
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

**ULT**

14 For fire went out from her large branches and consumed its fruit. There is no strong branch on it, no scepter to rule. ‘This is a lamentation and will be sung as a lamentation.’

19:7 [1] Instead of He seized their widows, some ancient copies and many modern versions have He destroyed their fortresses.

19:10 [2] Instead of in your blood, some ancient copies and many modern versions have in your vineyard.

**UST**

14 A fire started to burn its stem, and then started to burn the branches; it burned all the grapes. Now not even one strong branch remains; they will never become scepters for a king. ‘This funeral song must be sung very sadly.”
Ezekiel 20

Ezekiel 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Rebels cannot ask for help

The people of Israel have rebelled against God again and again. Now they cannot come to God for help in their troubles.
Ezekiel 20:1

It came about

This phrase is used to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

in the seventh year

The implicit information may be supplied. Alternate translation: “in the seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the tenth day of the fifth month

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of August on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

before me

“in front of me”

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 20:2

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 20:3

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

As I live

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: Idiom)

Have you come to inquire of me?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the elders should not be inquiring of him. Alternate translation: “You should not come to inquire of me.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- elder, older, old
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- elder, older, old
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 20:4

Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man?

Yahweh asks Ezekiel the same question twice in order to secure Ezekiel's commitment to pronounce the judgement. Alternate translation: “Are you ready to pronounce judgment on them, son of man?” (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• son
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

4 Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man? Let them know about their fathers' abominations.

UST

4 If you are willing to warn them, remind them of the disgusting things that their ancestors did.
Ezekiel 20:5

I...raised my hand to swear an oath

Here “raised my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I...solemnly swore an oath” (See: Symbolic Action)

the house of Jacob

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate “the house of” as in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Jacob” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• God
• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• Egypt, Egyptian
• Israel, Israelite, Jacob
• hand
• hand
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• God
• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• Egypt, Egyptian
• Israel, Israelite, Jacob
• hand
• hand
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
5 Say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I chose Israel and raised my hand to swear an oath to the descendants of the house of Jacob, and made myself known to them in the land of Egypt, when I raised my hand to swear an oath to them. I said, “I am Yahweh your God”—

UST
5 Then say to them, ‘On the day that I chose you Israelite people to belong to me, I made a solemn oath to your ancestors while they were still in Egypt.’ I said to them, ‘I am Yahweh, your God.’
Ezekiel 20:6

It was flowing with milk and honey

“It was a land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” Yahweh speaks of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. Alternate translation: “It was land that was excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

the most beautiful ornament among all the lands

The lands in which people live are spoken of as if they are jewelry or other things that are pleasant to look at. Alternate translation: “the most beautiful of all lands” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- honey, honeycomb
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

6 on that day I raised my hand to swear an oath to them that I would bring them out of the land of Egypt into a land that I had carefully selected for them. It was flowing with milk and honey; it was the most beautiful ornament among all the lands.

UST

6 I will bring you out of Egypt and lead you to a land that I have chosen for you. It is the most fertile and beautiful land in the world.
Ezekiel 20:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

7 I said to them, “Let each man throw away the detestable things from before his eyes and the idols of Egypt. Do not make yourselves unclean; I am Yahweh your God.”

Each of you must get rid of the disgusting idols that you love, and the idols which you learned to worship in Egypt, and with which you made it impossible for me to accept you. I, Yahweh your God, am saying this to you.’

the detestable things from before his eyes

Yahweh speaks of the people worshiping the detestable things as if they had placed those idols in front of their eyes. Alternate translation: “the detestable things that he worships” (See: Metaphor)

the idols of Egypt

“throw away the idols of Egypt”

Do not make yourselves unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• Yahweh
• Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

• God
• Yahweh
• Egypt, Egyptian
Ezekiel 20:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

they rebelled against me
The word “they” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”

were unwilling to listen to me
“would not obey me”

the detestable things from before his eyes
Yahweh speaks of the people worshiping the detestable things as if they had placed those idols in front of their eyes. Alternate translation: “the detestable things that he worshiped” (See: Metaphor)

to pour out my fury upon them
Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. Alternate translation: “to act against them in my fury” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- wrath, fury
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- wrath, fury
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 20:9

for my name's sake

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: “for the sake of my reputation” (See: Metonymy)

so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations” (See: Active or Passive)

in the eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “in the opinion” or “in the judgment” (See: Metaphor)

the nations

The word “nations” is a metonym for the people who live in the nations. Alternate translation: “the people who live in other nations” (See: Metonymy)

they were staying

“they were living”

I made myself known to them, in their eyes

Here the word “them” refers to the nations. The idiom “in their eyes” refers to being in a position where people can see. Alternate translation: “I revealed myself to them, in their presence” (See: Idiom)

bringing them

“bringing the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
**Ezekiel 20:10**

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**I sent them**
The word “them” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- command, commandment
- Egypt, Egyptian

**Translation Words - UST**
- command, commandment
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

10 So I sent them out of the land of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness.

UST

10 Therefore I led your people out of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness.
Ezekiel 20:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• judge, judgment
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• judge, judgment
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 Then I gave them my statutes and made my decrees known to them, by which a man will live if he obeys them.

UST

11 I gave them all my laws and decrees, in order that they would obey them, and as a result they would live for a long time.
Ezekiel 20:12

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• consecrate, consecrated, consecration
• Yahweh
• Sabbath

Translation Words - UST

• consecrate, consecrated, consecration
• Yahweh
• Sabbath

ULT

12 I also gave them my Sabbaths as a sign between myself and them, for them to know that I am Yahweh who makes them holy.

UST

12 Also, I established the Sabbath days to be a reminder between me and them, so they would know that I am Yahweh, the one who sets them apart for my honor.
Ezekiel 20:13

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

They did not walk in my statutes
Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path along which a person walks. Alternate translation: “They did not obey my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

I would pour out my fury upon them
Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:8. Alternate translation: “I would act against them in my fury” (See: Metaphor)

in order to end them
The euphemism “to end them” refers to killing them. Alternate translation: “in order to kill them” (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- desert, wilderness
- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- desert, wilderness
- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
- walk, walked
- house

ULT
13 But the house of Israel rebelled against me in the wilderness. They did not walk in my statutes; instead, they rejected my decrees, by which a man will live if he obeys them. They greatly profaned my Sabbaths, so I said I would pour out my fury upon them in the wilderness in order to end them.

UST
13 But the Israelite people rebelled against me in the wilderness also. They did not obey my commands; they rejected them, even though they would have lived a long time if they had obeyed them, and they treated the Sabbath days like any other day. So I said that I would destroy them in the wilderness, because that would show that I was very angry with them.
Ezekiel 20:14

I acted for my name's sake

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh's reputation. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:9. Alternate translation: “I acted for the sake of my reputation” (See: Metonymy)

so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:9. Alternate translation: "so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations" (See: Active or Passive)

in the eyes of the nations

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:9. Alternate translation: “in the thoughts of the people in other nations” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

in whose sight I had brought them out of Egypt

“in whose presence I brought my people out of Egypt”

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- name
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 20:15

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

I myself also raised my hand to swear an oath

Here “raised my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:5. Alternate translation: “I myself also solemnly swore an oath” (See: Symbolic Action)

to them

“to the house of Israel”

a land flowing with milk and honey

“a land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” Yahweh speaks of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:6. Alternate translation: “a land that was excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

the most beautiful ornament among all the lands

The lands in which people live are spoken of as if they are jewelry or other things that are pleasant to look at. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:6. Alternate translation: “the most beautiful of all lands” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• desert, wilderness
• honey, honeycomb
• earth, earthen, earthly
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• desert, wilderness
• honey, honeycomb
• earth, earthen, earthly
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 20:16

did not walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if they were a path along which a person walks. Alternate translation: “did not obey my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

their hearts walked after their idols

Here the word “heart” represents the person’s thoughts and emotions. Yahweh speaks of being dedicated to idols as if a person’s heart walked after them. Alternate translation: “they were dedicated to worshiping their idols” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• Sabbath
• walk, walked
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• heart
• Sabbath
• walk, walked
• walk, walked

ULT
16 I swore this because they had rejected my decrees and did not walk in my statutes, and they profaned my Sabbaths, since their hearts walked after their idols.

UST
16 I made this oath, because they had rejected and disobeyed all my laws, and because they were treating the Sabbath days like any other day. And they insisted on worshiping their idols.
Ezekiel 20:17

my eye spared them

Here the word “eye” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I spared them” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
• desert, wilderness

Translation Words - UST
• desert, wilderness
Ezekiel 20:18

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

Do not walk in the statutes of your fathers
Yahweh speaks of a person obeying statutes as if the statutes were paths along with a person walks. Alternate translation: “Do not obey the statutes of your parents” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• judge, judgment
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• desert, wilderness
• walk, walked
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

• son
• judge, judgment
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• desert, wilderness
• walk, walked
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT
18 I said to their children in the wilderness, “Do not walk in the statutes of your fathers, or keep their rules, or defile yourselves with their idols.

UST
18 I said to their children, the next generation, ‘Do not do the things that your parents always do. Do not worship their idols and so make it impossible for me to accept you.”
Ezekiel 20:19

**walk in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying statutes as if the statutes were paths along with a person walks. Alternate translation: “Do not obey the statutes of your parents…obey my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

**keep my decrees and obey them**

To “keep” Yahweh's decrees is the same as to “obey them.” (See: Doublet)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

**Translation Words - UST**

- God
- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

19 I am Yahweh your God, walk in my statutes; keep my decrees and obey them.

UST

19 I am Yahweh your God. Carefully obey my laws and commands.
Ezekiel 20:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- God
- Yahweh
- Sabbath

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- God
- Yahweh
- Sabbath

ULT
20 Keep my Sabbaths holy so that they will be a sign between me and you, so that you will know that I am Yahweh your God.”

UST
20 Respect my Sabbath days, in order that by doing that, it will remind you that you belong to me.
Ezekiel 20:21

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

They did not walk in my statutes
Yahweh speaks of a person obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path along which the person walks. Alternate translation: “They did not obey my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

to pour out my fury upon them
Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:8. Alternate translation: “to act against them in my fury” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- son
- wrath, fury
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- desert, wilderness
- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST
- son
- wrath, fury
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- desert, wilderness
- disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 20:22

I turned my hand away

Here the word “hand” represents Yahweh and turning his hand away means that he does not do what he was going to do. Alternate translation: “But I did not do that” (See: Synecdoche and Idiom)

for my name’s sake

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. Alternate translation: “for the sake of my reputation” (See: Metonymy)

so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:9. Alternate translation: “so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations” (See: Active or Passive)

in the eyes of the nations

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “in the thoughts of the people in other nations” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- hand
- nation
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- name
- hand
- nation
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 20:23

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

I myself also lifted up my hand to swear

Here “lifted up my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I myself also solemnly swore” (See: Symbolic Action)

scatter them among the nations and disperse them among the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 12:15. Alternate translation: “cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- desert, wilderness
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- desert, wilderness
- nation
Ezekiel 20:24

Their eyes were longing after their fathers’ idols

Here the word “eyes” represents the person who looks to the idols to worship them. Alternate translation: “They were longing after their fathers’ idols” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

I decided to do this since they had not obeyed my decrees, and since they had rejected my statutes and profaned my Sabbaths. Their eyes were longing after their fathers’ idols.

UST

because they had rejected and disobeyed all my laws, and because they were treating the Sabbath days like any other day—and because they were eager to worship the idols that their parents had worshiped.
Ezekiel 20:25

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live

The words statutes in this phrase do not refer to God's law. God permitted them to live by human laws and judgments that were not good.

gave them

The word “them” refers to the children of those whom Yahweh brought out of Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
• statute
• statute

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
• statute
• statute
Ezekiel 20:26

they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb

The phrase “firstborn of the womb” refers to the firstborn child of a woman. The phrase “made a sacrifice” can be translated with the verb “sacrifice.” Alternate translation: “they sacrificed every woman’s firstborn child” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT 26 I declared them to be unclean through their gifts—they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb and caused them to pass through the fire—that I might fill them with horror so they will know that I am Yahweh!

UST 26 I allowed them to do things that made it impossible for me to accept them: I allowed them to sacrifice their firstborn children in fire. I allowed them to do that in order that they would be horrified at themselves, and in order that they would know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.
Ezekiel 20:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- transgress, transgression
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- transgress, transgression
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

ULT

27 Therefore, son of man, speak to the house of Israel and say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: In this also your fathers blasphemed me when they were unfaithful to me.

UST

27 Therefore, son of man, speak to the Israelite people. Say this to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you: This is one way that your ancestors dishonored me by turning away from me.’
When I brought them into the land that I had sworn to give them, and then whenever they saw any high hill and leafy tree, they offered their sacrifices, they provoked me by their offerings, and there they also burned their fragrant incense and poured out their drink offerings.

After I brought them into the land that I had sworn to give them, every time that they saw a high hill or a big green tree, they offered sacrifices to idols there. They made offerings to them, and that caused me to become angry. They presented to those idols their fragrant incense, and they poured out wine offerings to them.
Ezekiel 20:29

What is this high place where you bring offerings there?

Yahweh asks this question in order to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: “This is not a high place where you are to bring offerings!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

The name is called Bamah

The name “Bamah” means “high place,” a place for worshiping idols. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people have called that place Bamah” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• name
• declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

• name
• declare, proclaim, announce
Ezekiel 20:30

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

Why do you make yourselves unclean with the ways of your fathers?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: “You should not make yourselves unclean by doing the things that your fathers did.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Why do you make yourselves unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

So why do you act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: “You should not act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

why do you act like prostitutes

Yahweh speaks of the people being unfaithful to him as if they were acting like women who sleep with men to whom they are not married. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- house
Ezekiel 20:31

So why should I let you seek me, house of Israel?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: “I will not let you come close to me, house of Israel.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for
- house
Ezekiel 20:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

32 The thought that is forming in your mind will never happen. You say, “Let us be like the other nations, like the clans in the other lands who worship wood and stone.”

UST

32 You say, 'We want to be like the other people groups in the world. We want to worship idols made of wood and stone like they do.' But what you want will never happen.'
Ezekiel 20:33

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

with a mighty hand, a raised arm

The words “hand” and “arm” both represent power. Alternate translation: “with very great power” (See: Metonymy and Doublet)

fury that will be poured out on you

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury as if the fury were a liquid that he pours out on the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fury that I will pour out on you” or “I will express my fury towards you” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 20:34

among whom you have been scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “among whom I have scattered you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- hand
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- hand
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
34 I will bring you out from the other peoples and will gather you out of the countries among whom you have been scattered. I will do this with a mighty hand and with fury poured out.

UST
34 With my great power I will gather you from the places to which I scattered you.
Ezekiel 20:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

35 Then I will bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I will judge you face to face.

UST

35 I will bring you to a wilderness that is surrounded by other nations. There, while I am looking at you, I will judge you.
Ezekiel 20:36

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Egypt, Egyptian
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• desert, wilderness
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Egypt, Egyptian
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• desert, wilderness
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
36 As I judged your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so also I will judge you—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST
36 I will punish you, as I punished your ancestors in the wilderness near Egypt.
Ezekiel 20:37

I will cause you to pass under my rod

This refers to the practice of a shepherd counting and inspecting his sheep as the sheep walked under his staff. Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh will count his people whom he gathers from the nations to ensure that they are all present. Alternate translation: “I will count you carefully as a shepherd counts his sheep” or 2) Yahweh will inspect each person as they pass under his staff in order to separate the faithful from the unfaithful. Alternate translation: “I will inspect you carefully as a shepherd inspects his sheep” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
Ezekiel 20:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
38 I will purge from among you the rebels and those who revolt against me. I will send them out from the land where they are staying as foreigners, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

UST
38 I will destroy the people among you who rebel against me. Although I will bring them out of Babylonia, where they are now living, they will not enter Israel. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.
Ezekiel 20:39

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

to listen to me

“to obey me” or “to pay attention to me”

profane my holy name

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “dishonor me” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• walk, walked
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• house

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• walk, walked
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• house
Ezekiel 20:40

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

to require your offerings
“to require you to bring your offerings”

the firstfruits of your tribute
Yahweh speaks of the best things among all that they give to him as if they were “firstfruits.” Alternate translation: “the best of your contributions” (See: Metaphor)

your holy things
“the offerings that you set aside to give to me”

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• Israel, Israelites
• firstfruits
• sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
• seek, search, look for
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• house

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• Israel, Israelites
• firstfruits
• sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
• seek, search, look for
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• house

ULT
40 For on my holy mountain, on the mountain peak of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—all of the house of Israel will worship me there in the land. I will be pleased to require your offerings there, and also the firstfruits of your tribute with all your holy things.

UST
40 I, Yahweh your Lord, declare that there on my sacred hill, Zion, that high hill in Israel, you will bring gifts to me, and I will accept them. I will require you to bring to me gifts and offerings there, and your sacrifices that you will set apart for me.
Ezekiel 20:41

I will accept you like fragrant incense

Yahweh speaks of his people worshiping him as they should as if the people themselves were the incense offering. (See: Metaphor)

bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will bring his people back from all of the nations to which he had scattered them. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 20:34. (See: Parallelism)

where you have been scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where I have scattered you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• set apart
• people, people group,
• nation
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• set apart
• people, people group,
• nation
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 20:42

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

I have lifted up my hand to swear
Here “lifted up my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I have solemnly sworn” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• hand
• earth, earthen, earthly
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• hand
• earth, earthen, earthly
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
42 Then, when I bring you to the land of Israel, to the land that I have lifted up my hand to swear to give to your fathers, you will know that I am Yahweh.

UST
42 Then, when I bring you into the land of Israel, the land that I swore to give to your ancestors, you will know that I, Yahweh, have done it.
Ezekiel 20:43

you will call to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “you will remember” (See: Idiom)

you defiled yourselves

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were defiled. (See: Metaphor)

you will despise yourselves in your own eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “you will hate yourselves” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

• evil, wicked, unpleasant
Ezekiel 20:44

because of my name's sake

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: “because of my reputation” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
  • lord, Lord, master, sir
  • Yahweh
  • name
  • Israel, Israelites
  • evil, wicked, unpleasant
  • house
  • know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
  • lord, Lord, master, sir
  • Yahweh
  • name
  • Israel, Israelites
  • evil, wicked, unpleasant
  • house
  • know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

44 So you will know that I am Yahweh when I do this to you because of my name's sake, and not because of your evil deeds, and not because of your corrupt deeds, house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

UST

44 When I act toward you Israelite people to protect my reputation, and not because of your evil deeds and corrupt behavior, you Israelite people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do. That is what Yahweh the Lord declares.”
Ezekiel 20:45

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh

ULT

45 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying.

UST

45 Yahweh gave me another message. He said,
Ezekiel 20:46

set your face toward the southern lands

This is a command to stare at the southern lands as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 4:3. Alternate translation: “Stare at the southern lands” or “Stare at the southern lands so that they will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” represents staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• son
• prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
• face, facial
Ezekiel 20:47

The fiery flame will not be quenched

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The fiery flame will not go out” or “No one will be able to quench the fiery flame” (See: Active or Passive)

every face from the south to the north will be burned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the fire will burn every face from the south to the north” (See: Active or Passive)

every face from the south to the north

Here the word “face” represents the person. By mentioning the opposite directions, Yahweh refers to everyone who lives in the north, in the south, and everywhere in between. Alternate translation: “every person who lives in that area” (See: Synecdoche and Merism)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Yahweh
• Negev
• devour
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Yahweh
• Negev
• devour
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• face, facial

ULT

47 Say to the forest of the Negev, ‘This is Yahweh’s declaration—the Lord Yahweh says this: See, I will set a fire among you. It will devour every fresh tree and every dried tree among you. The fiery flame will not be quenched; every face from the south to the north will be burned.

UST

47 Say to the forest in the southern wilderness of Israel: Listen to this message that Yahweh the Lord is saying about you: I am about to start a fire in your midst, and it will burn up all your trees, both the green trees and the withered trees. Nothing will extinguish the blazing flames. And the fire will scorch the faces of everyone who lives in that area, from the south to the north.
Ezekiel 20:48

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the forest of the Negev.

all flesh will see
Here the word “flesh” represents all humans. The idiom to “see” means to understand. Alternate translation: “all people will understand” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

it will not be quenched
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “it will not go out” or “no one will quench it” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• flesh
• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST
• flesh
• Yahweh
Ezekiel 20:49

Alas
a word that expresses distress or grief

Is he not a mere teller of parables?
The people use this question to insult Ezekiel and dismiss what he is telling them. Alternate translation: “He is merely telling parables” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 21

Ezekiel 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Refusing to learn

Judah has refused to learn from their punishment, so God is about to destroy the nation in war.
Ezekiel 21:1

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity” or “Mortal person” or “Human.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1.

set your face toward Jerusalem

This is a command to stare at Jerusalem as a symbol of punishing the people there. Alternate translation: “stare at Jerusalem” or “stare at Jerusalem so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face toward Jerusalem

Jerusalem was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming it. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 6:2 Alternate translation: “Turn toward Jerusalem and stare” or “stare toward Jerusalem so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- face, facial
Ezekiel 21:3

I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you.

This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. Alternate translation: “I am opposed to you, and it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath to kill both the righteous and the wicked people among you” (See: Metaphor)

the righteous person and the wicked person

“righteous people and wicked people.” This refers to multiple people, not just one righteous person and one wicked person.

sheath

something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it

cut off

This is a euphemism that means to kill. Alternate translation: “kill” (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:4

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the land of Israel.

**cut off**

This is a euphemism that means to kill. Alternate translation: “kill” (See: Euphemism)

**the righteous…the wicked**

This refers to righteous and wicked people. Alternate translation: “those who are righteous…those who are wicked” or “the righteous people…the wicked people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

**from you**

“among you”

**my sword will go out from its sheath against**

This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. Alternate translation: “it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath and strike” (See: Metaphor)

**all flesh**

Here “flesh” is a metonym for “people.” Alternate translation: “all people” (See: Metonymy)

**from the south to the north**

This is a merism that refers to the area to the north, and to the south, and all places in between. Alternate translation: “in every direction” or “everywhere” (See: Merism)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- flesh
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- flesh
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 21:5

that I, Yahweh, have drawn my sword from its sheath

This speaks of Yahweh causing people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. Alternate translation: “it is as though I, Yahweh, have struck people with my sword” (See: Metaphor)

It will no longer hold back

This speaks of Yahweh not holding back his sword from attacking people as if his sword were a person that was no longer holding itself back from attacking. Alternate translation: “and I will not put it back in its sheath again” or “I will not hold back from attacking people” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 21:6

General Information:
Yahweh is speaking to Ezekiel.

groan as your loins break
Yahweh tells Ezekiel to groan as a sign to accompany his message. He tells him to groan deeply as if his abdomen was in great pain. “groan deeply as if your loins were in great pain” or “groan deeply with great sorrow” (See: Idiom)

In bitterness groan
“With great grief” or “With great sorrow”

before their eyes
Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
- son
groan, groans, groanings
groan, groans, groanings

Translation Words - UST
- son
groan, groans, groanings
groan, groans, groanings
Then it will happen that they will ask you, ‘For what reason are you groaning?’ Then you will say, ‘Because of the news that is coming, for every heart will faint away, and every hand will falter! Every spirit will grow faint, and every knee will flow like water. Behold! It is coming and it will be like this!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

And when they ask you, ‘Why are you groaning?’ tell them that it is because of the news that they soon will hear. Everyone will be very fearful, and their hands will tremble uncontrollably, while their knees become as weak as water. A great disaster will soon occur. This is what Yahweh the Lord is promising.”

The news that is coming
This speaks of the “news” as if it were a person that was soon coming to them. Alternate translation: “the news that they will soon hear” (See: Personification)

For every heart will faint away
This speaks of people becoming afraid, as if their hearts were fainting. Also, this speaks of the people fainting as a result of fear. Alternate translation: “for everyone will become fearful” (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

Will falter
“will be weak”

Every spirit will grow faint
This speaks of people becoming fearful in their spirits as if their spirits were about to faint. Alternate translation: “Everyone will be fearful in their inner being” (See: Metaphor)

every knee will flow like water
“every knee will be as weak as water.” This is a euphemism for people being so afraid that they lose their bladder control and urinate on themselves. Alternate translation: “every leg will be wet with urine” or “everyone will lose control of their urine” (See: Euphemism)

This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration
Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- hand
- walk, walked
- groan, groans, groanings

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- hand
- walk, walked
- groan, groans, groanings
Ezekiel 21:8

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 21:9

**A sword! A sword! It will be sharpened and polished!**

This passage describes the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for an enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. This metaphor begins here and continues through Ezekiel 21:17. (See: Metaphor)

**It will be sharpened and polished**

This phrase indicates that the sword is ready for someone to use it. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is sharp and polished” (See: Active or Passive)

**polished**

Someone made the sword smooth, shiny, and clean by rubbing it with a rough material.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:10

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: Metaphor)

It will be sharpened...It will be polished in order to

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will sharpen it...I will polish it so that it will” (See: Active or Passive)

in order to be like lightning

This means that the sword will be so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. Alternate translation: “so that it flashes like lightning” or “so that light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning” (See: Simile)

Should we rejoice in my son's scepter?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that the people of Israel will not celebrate their king's power, because it cannot resist the “sword.” Alternate translation: “The people of Judah will not celebrate about their king's scepter.” or “we should not celebrate the power of our king's scepter.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Should we

The word “we” refers to Ezekiel and the people of Israel. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

in my son's scepter

Here Yahweh refers to the king of Judah as his son. The king's scepter represents his rule as king. It is important to maintain the image of the king's scepter here, as the words “every such rod” refer to the scepter. Alternate translation: “in the king's scepter” or “in the power that the king's scepter represents” (See: Metonymy)

The coming sword hates every such rod

Here the “sword” is personified as coming to attack the people. This speaks of the king not being able to resist the “sword”, as if the “sword” were hating the king's scepter. Alternate translation: “the sword will overpower his scepter like that of any other ruler” or “for the king will not be able to resist when the sword is brought against him” (See: Personification)

such rod

This phrase is used to mock the king's scepter by calling it a “rod.” Alternate translation: “such scepter” (See: Irony)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

• son
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen
Ezekiel 21:11

the sword will be given to be polished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will polish the sword” (See: Active or Passive)

then to be grasped by the hand

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “then the right person will hold it in his hand” (See: Active or Passive)

it is to be given into the hand of the one who kills

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “it is ready for the killer to use” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:12

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: Metaphor)

that sword has come against my people! It is against all

This speaks of Yahweh's sword attacking his people as if the sword itself were the attacker. Alternate translation: "I will use my sword to kill my people! I will bring it against all" (See: Personification)

They are thrown against the sword with my people

This speaks of the leaders of Israel being killed with a sword as if they are thrown against the sword. Alternate translation: "They are killed with the sword along with my people" or "The sword will kill them along with my people" (See: Metaphor)

slap your thigh

In Ezekiel's culture, slapping one's thigh was a sign of grief. Some other translation use the gesture of beating one's breast which is a sign of grief in many cultures. Alternate translation: “beat your chests” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:13

the scepter

Here the king of Judah is represented by his scepter. Alternate translation: “the king” (See: Metonymy)

does not last

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “cannot resist” or “is destroyed” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT
13 For there is a trial, but what if the scepter does not last?—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

UST
13 I am about to test my people, and what will happen if the scepter cannot resist? That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.
Ezekiel 21:14

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: Metaphor)

hit your two hands together

This means for him to clap his hands as a sign of his grief. Alternate translation: “clap your hands to show that you are very sad” (See: Symbolic Action)

even a third time

This is an idiom that means multiple times. Alternate translation: “again and again” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Idiom)

A sword for the ones to be slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is a sword for slaughtering people” (See: Active or Passive)

It is a sword for the many to be slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is a sword for slaughtering many people” (See: Active or Passive)

piercing them everywhere

“attacking them from every side.” Some Bibles translate this as “which enters into their rooms.” This means no matter where they hide, the sword will kill them.

piercing them

The word “them” refers to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- hand
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- hand
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:15

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: Metaphor)

to melt their hearts

This speaks of causing the people to be so terrified that it is as if their hearts were melting. Alternate translation: “to fill them with terror” or “to cause them to be terrified” (See: Metaphor)

to multiply their fallen

Here “fallen” refers to the people killed in battle. This means there will be a greater number of people killed. Alternate translation: “to kill many people among them” (See: Metonymy)

set the sword for slaughter

Here the sword of Yahweh represents men with swords that are to attack Jerusalem. Also, the word “slaughter” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “placed soldiers armed with swords at their gates, ready to slaughter the people” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

their gates

The word “their” refers to the people of Jerusalem.

It is made like lightning

This compares how the sword is well polished and how it reflects light to appear like lightning. Alternate translation: “My sword is polished and flashes like lightning” or “It is polished and reflects light as being like lightning” (See: Simile)

it is grasped for slaughter

The sword of Yahweh represents the men with swords that are to attack Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “released to slaughter the people” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:16

You, sword! Strike to the right!...Go wherever your face is turned.

Here Yahweh speaks to those who will attack his people as if they could hear him and as if they were a sword that they would use in the attack. He does this to emphasize that he is in control of what is happening during the attack. The phrase “wherever your face is turned” is an idiom for “wherever you desire to go.” Alternate translation: “I tell those attacking with swords, ‘Strike to the right!...Attack in every direction.’” (See: Apostrophe and Metonymy and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
Ezekiel 21:17

hit my two hands together

“clap my hands.” Here clapping hands is a sign of triumph. Alternate translation: “clap my hands in triumph” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• wrath, fury
• hand
• hand
• rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• wrath, fury
• hand
• hand
• rest, rested, restless
Ezekiel 21:18

The word of Yahweh came to me again

The phrase “the word of Yahweh came” is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 18:1. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke to me again” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Yahweh

Translation Words - UST
  • Yahweh
Ezekiel 21:19

the sword of the king of Babylon

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “the soldiers of the king of Babylon” or “the Babylonian army” (See: Metonymy)

a signpost will mark one of them as leading to a city

This is a sign posted where the road divides into two roads. Alternate translation: “a sign will be posted where the road divides into two roads” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- hand
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- hand
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

19 “Now you, son of man, assign two roads for the sword of the king of Babylon to come. The two roads will start in the same land, and a signpost will mark one of them as leading to a city.

UST

19 “Son of man, draw on a map two roads for the king of Babylonia to march on with his army. When they depart from their own country, they will come to a signpost where a single road divides into those two roads.
Ezekiel 21:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- Jerusalem
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea
- Jerusalem
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

20 Mark one road for the Babylonian army to come to Rabbah, the city of the Ammonites. Mark the other to lead the army to Judah and the city of Jerusalem, which is fortified.

UST

20 If they take one of those roads, they will attack the city of Rabbah, the capital of the Ammon people group. If they take the other road, they will come to Judah and Jerusalem, a city with walls around it.
Ezekiel 21:21

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message.

at the crossroads, at the junction
Both of these phrases refer to the place where the two roads meet. Alternate translation: “at the crossroads” (See: Parallelism)

He will shake some arrows and ask direction from some idols and he will examine a liver
These are divination practices.

Translation Words - ULT
- appoint, appointed
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST
- appoint, appointed
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
**Ezekiel 21:22**

**In his right hand will be an omen about Jerusalem**

This means the he will hold one of the articles of his divination that was read as an omen against Jerusalem in his right hand. Alternate translation: “In his right hand will be an article of divination with an omen against Jerusalem” (See: Metonymy)

**batterling rams**

A battering ram was a cut tree or large log with a sharpened end or an end covered in metal. It was held by several men who would pound the end against a wall.

**to build a ramp**

These were large dirt ramps that the Babylonian soldiers built so that they could get onto the walls of Jerusalem.

**siege towers**

These were wooden towers that the Babylonian soldiers built around Jerusalem to enable them to shoot arrows over the walls of Jerusalem.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jerusalem
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jerusalem
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 21:23

in the eyes of the ones in Jerusalem

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “in the thoughts of the people in Jerusalem” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT
23 It will seem to be a useless omen in the eyes of the ones in Jerusalem, those who had sworn an oath to the Babylonians! But the king will accuse them of violating their treaty in order to besiege them!

UST
23 The people in Jerusalem who had promised to be loyal to the king of Babylonia will think that those magic rituals must be wrong. They will think that his army should not be attacking them. But he will remind them of the disloyalty of which they are guilty, and he will say that they have violated their agreement with him.
Ezekiel 21:24

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem.

Because you have made your guilt to be remembered

“Because you remind me of your iniquity”

you will be taken in hand

This can be stated in active form. The “enemy's hand” represents the enemy's control. Alternate translation: “your enemy will take you in his hand” or “your enemies will capture you and take you into captivity” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• iniquity

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• iniquity

ULT

24 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have made your guilt to be remembered, making your transgressions to be revealed, so that in all your actions your sins will be seen—because you have done this you will be taken in hand.

UST

24 Therefore, tell the Israelite people that this is what Yahweh the Lord says: ‘You people have allowed everyone to see that you are openly rebelling against the king of Babylonia, and by doing that you have shown that everything that you do is sinful. Therefore he will capture you and take you to Babylonia.’
Ezekiel 21:25

**General Information:**
Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Israel.

**whose day of punishment has come**
This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “whom Yahweh will now punish” (See: Idiom)

**whose time of committing iniquity has ended**
“at the time when Yahweh ends iniquity”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites

**Translation Words - UST**
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites

ULT
25 As for you, profane and wicked ruler of Israel, whose day of punishment has come, and whose time of committing iniquity has ended,

UST
25 Also, say to the king of Judah, ‘You very wicked king of Israel, it is your time to die. It is the time for Yahweh to punish you.’
Ezekiel 21:26

the turban

“the king’s turban.” A turban is a beautiful piece of cloth that kings wore wrapped on their heads as a symbol of their authority.

the lowly...the exalted

This refers to people with low status and people who are exalted. Alternate translation: “those who are lowly...those who are exalted” or “those with low status...those with high status” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- exalt, exalted, exaltation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- exalt, exalted, exaltation

ULT
26 the Lord Yahweh says this to you: Remove the turban and take off the crown! Things will no longer be the same! Exalt the lowly and humble the exalted!

UST
26 And this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you about your king in Jerusalem, ‘Take off the king’s turban and his crown, because now things will be different than they were before. I will give power to those who had none, and I will disgrace those who had power.
Ezekiel 21:27

**It will not be restored**

Here the crown represents the position of king. The kingship will not be restored until the Messiah comes. Alternate translation: “There will no longer be a king” (See: *Metonymy*)

**the one comes who is assigned**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the one comes who I assign” (See: *Active or Passive*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

**Translation Words - UST**

- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

ULT

27 A ruin! A ruin! I will make it a ruin! It will not be restored until the one comes who is assigned to execute judgment.

UST

27 I will cause the Babylonians to destroy everything. No one will be king of Judah again, not until the man comes who deserves to be king. Then I will make him become king.”
Ezekiel 21:28

classification\ their\ coming\ disgrace

The word “disgrace” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “about how he will disgrace them” (See: Abstract Nouns)

A sword, a sword is drawn! It is sharpened for the slaughter

This refers to the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the soldiers that Yahweh uses to kill a large number of people who have been disobedient to him. Alternate translation: “Swords! My soldiers have drawn their swords! They are sharpened for the slaughter” (See: Metaphor)

is drawn

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “is out of its sheath”

It is sharpened for the slaughter in order to devour

This speaks of the soldiers killing people as if they were animals devouring their prey. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is sharp in order to slaughter and to kill people”

so it will be like lightning

This means that the sword is so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. Alternate translation: “and light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 21:29

empty visions for you...with lies for you

“empty visions for you Ammonites...with lies for you Ammonites.” The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon. In the original Biblical language, the word “your” is feminine singular and refers to the nation of Ammon. Nations were often thought of as a woman. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

empty visions

This speaks of visions being false and meaningless as if they were empty containers. Alternate translation: “visions that are not true” or “false visions” (See: Metaphor)

the wicked

This refers to wicked people. Alternate translation: “those who are wicked” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

who are about to be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who are about to die” (See: Active or Passive)

whose day of punishment has come and whose time of iniquity is about to end

The phrases “day of” and “time of” are idioms. Alternate translation: “for the time has come for them to be punished and for their iniquity to end” or “for the time has come for me to punish them and for them to no longer be able to commit wickedness” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• iniquity

Translation Words - UST

• iniquity
Ezekiel 21:30

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.

Return the sword to its sheath

“Later the sword will be put back in its sheath.” This speaks of the soldiers withdrawing from attacking Jerusalem, by saying that Yahweh’s sword is put back in its sheath. Alternate translation: “But later the soldiers will return their swords to their sheaths, for the time of slaughter will be over” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

sheath

This is something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 21:3.

In the place of your creation

The word “creation” may be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “In the place that I created you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

• restore, restoration
Ezekiel 21:31

I will pour out my indignation on you

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the Babylonians because of his indignation against them as if his indignation were a liquid that he poured out of a container upon them. Alternate translation: “I will punish you because of indignation against you” or “Out of my anger I will punish you” (See: Metaphor)

I will fan the fire of my rage against you

This compares Yahweh’s rage to a consuming fire. Alternate translation: “I will bring my rage upon you like a blazing fire” or “I will punish you in my fierce anger” (See: Metaphor)

the hand of cruel men

The “hand” of the men refers to their control. Alternate translation: “the control of cruel men” (See: Metonymy)

craftsmen of destruction

“men who cause great destruction”

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 21:32

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.

You will become fuel for the fire
“The fire will burn up your bodies”

Your blood will be in the midst of the land
“Your blood will soak into the ground of your land”

You will not be remembered
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one will remember you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
32 You will become fuel for the fire! Your blood will be in the midst of the land. You will not be remembered, for I, Yahweh have declared this!”

UST
32 They will be like fuel that is burned in a fire. Their blood will flow in their own land. No one will remember them anymore. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Introduction to Ezekiel :: Ezekiel 21:32
Ezekiel 22

Ezekiel 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Continuous evil

Murder, idolatry and all sorts of evil have been done in Jerusalem; so God will destroy the city and scatter the people among the nations. (See: evil, wicked, unpleasant)
Ezekiel 22:1

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 22:2

Now you, son of man, will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood?

This rhetorical question functions as a command. AT. “Son of man, go and judge. Go and judge the city of blood.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

the city of blood

The word “blood” is a metonym for murder. Alternate translation: “the city where many people murder their neighbors” (See: Metonymy)

her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem. Cities were often thought of as a woman. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women and Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 22:3

her...herself

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem. Cities were often thought of as a woman. This continues through verse 32. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women and Personification)

This is a city that pours...her midst

Here the “city” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “The people who live in this city pour...its midst” (See: Metonymy)

that pours out blood in her midst

The word “blood” is a metonym for murder. Alternate translation: “where many people murder their neighbors” (See: Metaphor)

so that her time may come

This refers to the time when Yahweh will destroy them. Alternate translation: “so that the time of her destruction may come” or “so that the time may come for her to be destroyed” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- blood
Ezekiel 22:4

General Information:
Yahweh continues to speak through Ezekiel to the people of Jerusalem.

by the blood that you have poured out
This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. Alternate translation: “because you murdered innocent people” (See: Metaphor)

unclean
A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

You have drawn your days to a close, and the end of your years has come
The images of days being brought to a close and years coming to an end are both idioms representing ending by death or by destruction. By saying that Jerusalem has brought her days to a close, Yahweh implies that Jerusalem would soon be destroyed because of the people’s sin. Alternate translation: “Because of these things you have done, you are approaching the end of your time” or “You are bringing your existence to an end” (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

have drawn your days to a close
“have brought your days to an end” or “have ended your life”

I will make you a reproach to the nations and a laughingstock to all the lands
This can be reworded so that the nouns “reproach” and “laughingstock” are expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: “I will make the nations reproach you and all the lands ridicule you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

a reproach
someone whom people disapprove of or rebuke

a laughingstock
a person whom people ridicule or mock

to all the lands
This generalization refers to the places who are familiar with Jerusalem and represents the people who live in these places. Alternate translation: “of the people of every nearby land” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- nation
Translation Words - UST

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 22:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
5 Both those who are near and those who are far away from you will mock you—you unclean city—with the reputation known everywhere as being full of confusion.

UST
5 People in countries that are near you and people who live far from you will make fun of you, because your city is full of confusion, and because you have made it impossible for me, your own God, to accept you.
Ezekiel 22:6

General Information:
Yahweh speaking about the ruler of Israel in Jerusalem.

Behold
“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

each one by his own power, have come
“have each used their authority to come to you.”

come to you
Yahweh speaks to the city of Jerusalem itself as if it were a woman who could hear him speak. Alternate translation: “come to Jerusalem” (See: Apostrophe)

to pour out blood
This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. Alternate translation: “to murder people” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- blood
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST
- blood
- Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 22:7

They have dishonored fathers

“The rules of Israel have dishonored their fathers”

within you...in your midst...within you

Yahweh speaks to the city of Jerusalem itself as if it were a woman who could hear him speak. Alternate translation: “within Jerusalem... in the midst of Jerusalem...within Jerusalem.” The words “you” and “your” refer to Jerusalem.

performed oppression on

“oppressed”

Translation Words - ULT

• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

7 They have dishonored fathers and mothers within you, and they have performed oppression on the foreigners in your midst. They have mistreated the orphans and the widows within you.

UST

7 Your people do not respect their parents; they have oppressed foreigners; they mistreat orphans and widows.
Ezekiel 22:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Sabbath

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Sabbath

ULT
8 You have despised my holy things and have profaned my Sabbaths.

UST
8 You despise my sacred places and practices, and you treat the Sabbath days like any other day.
Ezekiel 22:9

they eat on the mountains

Here “the mountains” refer to the altars on the mountains that are dedicated to idols. They men eat meat that has been sacrificed to the idols in order to be have the blessing of false gods. Alternate translation: “they eat the meat that has been sacrificed to idols” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

perform wickedness in your midst

“do evil things among you”

Translation Words - ULT

• blood
• devour

Translation Words - UST

• blood
• devour

ULT
9 Slanderous men have come within you in order to pour out blood, and they eat on the mountains. They perform wickedness in your midst.

UST
9 Among you are men who tell lies in order to cause others to be executed. There are those who go to the hilltops and eat food offered to idols, and they openly perform evil acts.
Ezekiel 22:10

**General Information:**

God continues to speak through Ezekiel about the terrible things that the people of Jerusalem have done. He speaks to the people of Jerusalem as if they were the city itself, and of the city of Jerusalem as if it were a woman. The word “you” is always feminine singular. (See: *Apostrophe* and *Metonymy* and *Metaphor*)

**Within you**

In all instances of this phrase, the writer refers to the people of Jerusalem as if they were the city itself, and of the city of Jerusalem as if it were a woman. Alternate translation: “within this city” or “among you people of Jerusalem” (See: *Apostrophe* and *Metonymy* and *Metaphor*)

**men uncover the nakedness of their father**

This means that a son sleeps with his father’s wife. Alternate translation: “there are men who sleep with their father’s wife” (See: *Euphemism*)

**they have violated unclean women during their menstrual period**

These are all ways to express that the men have had slept with women they should not have and how sinful their actions are. Alternate translation: “They have raped unclean women during their menstrual period” (See: *Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information*)

**unclean**

A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. Women were considered to be unclean during their menstrual period. (See: *Metaphor*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- exile, exiled

**Translation Words - UST**

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- exile, exiled
Ezekiel 22:11

commit abominations with their neighbors’ wives...
make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean...
abuse their own sisters

These are all ways to express that the men have had slept with women they should not have and how sinful their actions are. Alternate translation: “commit abominations by sleeping with their neighbors’ wives...make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean by sleeping with them...rape their own sisters” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
Ezekiel 22:12

**to pour out blood**

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. Alternate translation: “to murder people” (See: Metaphor)

**interest**

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

**you have damaged your neighbors through oppression**

This means that they have oppressed their neighbors by charging them too much interest. Alternate translation: “you have oppressed your neighbors and made them poor” or “you have made your neighbors poor by charging too much interest” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**you have forgotten me**

Refusing to obey Yahweh is like forgetting that he exists. (See: Metaphor)

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- blood

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- blood
Ezekiel 22:13

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Jerusalem by speaking directly to the city of Jerusalem as if it were a woman. (See: *Apostrophe* and *Metonymy* and *Metaphor*).

**With my hand I have struck**

“I have shaken my fist against” or “I have clapped my hands against.” This is a symbolic action that shows anger and disapproval. Alternate translation: “I have shown my anger and disapproval against” (See: *Symbolic Action*).

**the bloodshed that is done in the midst of you**

“the murder that people commit in you”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- blood
- hand

**Translation Words - UST**

- blood
- hand

ULT

13 See! With my hand I have struck the dishonest gain that you have made, and the bloodshed that is done in the midst of you.

UST

13 So I will shake my fist at your unfair profits and at the murderers who live among you.
Ezekiel 22:14

Will your heart stand, will your hands be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you?

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question to emphasize how hurt they will be when he punishes them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Your heart will not stand and your hands will not be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will your heart stand

Here the whole person is referred to by his “heart” to emphasize his emotions and will. Here the idea of “standing” is an idiom that means to be courageous. Alternate translation: “Will you stand” or “Will you be courageous” (See: Synecdoche and Idiom)

will your hands be strong

Here the whole person is referred to by his “hands.” Alternate translation: “will you be strong” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• Yahweh
• hand
• strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

• heart
• Yahweh
• hand
• strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 22:15

So I will scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 12:15. Alternate translation: “So I will cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: Parallelism)

purge

remove something unwanted

uncleanness

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

the nations

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. Alternate translation: “the people in other nations” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• nation

Translation Words - UST

• nation
Ezekiel 22:16

**So you will become unclean in the eyes of the nations**

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The “eyes” represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “So the nations will consider you unclean” (See: Metaphor)

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- nation
- profane, profaned
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- nation
- profane, profaned
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 22:17

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 22:18

the house of Israel has become dross to me. All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin, and iron and lead in the midst of you. They will be like the dross of silver in your furnace.

Son of man, your Israelite people have become useless to me. They are like dross to me. They are like the useless copper, tin, iron, and lead that remains after silver is melted in a very hot furnace.

All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin...like the dross of silver in your furnace

Yahweh continues to speaks about how the people have become worthless to him as if they were dross. Alternate translation: “All of them are as worthless as the leftover of bronze and tin, and iron and lead that remain after you melt silver in the furnace” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- silver
- bronze
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- silver
- bronze
- house
Ezekiel 22:19

**behold**

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jerusalem

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Jerusalem

ULT

19 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Because all of you have become like dross, therefore, behold! I am about to gather you into the midst of Jerusalem.

UST

19 Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you have all become like dross, I will gather you in Jerusalem.
Ezekiel 22:20

General Information:

God continues to describe his punishment of the people of Israel in Jerusalem as if they were metals that he was melting and purifying in a furnace. (See: Metaphor)

I will gather you in my anger and my wrath

The phrases with “anger” and “wrath” are used together to emphasize that he was extremely angry. Alternate translation: “Because of my great anger and wrath, I will gather you” or “I will be furiously angry with you, and I will gather you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

20 As men gather silver, bronze, iron, lead and tin and put it inside a furnace to melt it, and they blow the fire on it in order to melt it, so I will gather you in my anger and my wrath, and I will put you there and melt you.

UST

20 People put ore containing silver, copper, iron, lead, and tin in a very hot furnace and melt them in a blazing fire to burn up the impurities. Similarly, I will gather you together inside Jerusalem, and because I am very angry with you, what I will do will be as though I am melting you.
Ezekiel 22:21

**I will gather you and blow on you the fire of my wrath**

This is the image of a person gathering the metals in the furnace and blowing the fire to make it hotter. Yahweh speaks of the greatness of his wrath as if it were a fire that he was blowing to make it hotter. Alternate translation: "I will gather you, and my wrath will be like a fire that I will blow on you" (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

**Translation Words - UST**

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

21 I will gather you and blow on you the fire of my wrath, and you will be melted in the midst of it.

UST

21 It will be as though I am blowing on you with a hot breath that shows that I am very angry, and it will be as though you will melt,
Ezekiel 22:22

you will be melted in it
The word “it” refers to Jerusalem.

have poured out my wrath on you
God speaks of punishing the people as if his wrath were a liquid that he would pour on them. Alternate translation: “have punished you in my anger” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• wrath, fury
• silver
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• wrath, fury
• silver
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
22 As silver is melted in a furnace, you will be melted in it, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have poured out my wrath on you!"

UST
22 as though you will melt like silver melts in a furnace, and then you will know that I, Yahweh, have punished you.”
The word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

Yahweh gave me another message. He said,
Ezekiel 22:24

You are a land that has not been cleansed

This can be stated in active form. The word “land” here refers to Israel and to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “You are a land and a people that is unclean” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

not been cleansed

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

There is no rain on the day of wrath

Rain is used as an example of God’s blessing. Alternate translation: “There is no blessing on the day of wrath” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• pure, purify, purification
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• son
• pure, purify, purification
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 22:25

There is a conspiracy of her prophets in her midst

The word “her” refers to Israel. Alternate translation: “The prophets within Israel plot conspiracies”

conspiracy

a secret plan made by two or more people to do something harmful or illegal

like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. They consume life and take precious wealth

This compares the prophets of Israel to lions who attack and kill their victims. Alternate translation: “They kill people for they are like roaring lions who attack and kill their prey. They take peoples’ precious wealth” (See: Simile)

they make many widows within her

The word “her” refers to Israel. They “make many widows” by killing married men. Alternate translation: “they make many women into widows by killing their husbands” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- honor
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- honor
- devour

ULT

25 There is a conspiracy of her prophets in her midst, like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. They consume life and take precious wealth; they make many widows within her! [2]

UST

25 Their leaders are like lions that tear apart the animals that they have killed. The leaders destroy their people. They steal treasures and other valuable things from people, and they murder many men and make their wives into widows.
Ezekiel 22:26

do violence to my law
“disobey my laws”

the unclean and the clean

This refers to unclean and clean things. Something that God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. Alternate translation: “things that are unclean and things that are clean” (See: Nominal Adjectives and Metaphor)

They hide their eyes from my Sabbaths

This speaks of the people ignoring and not observing the Sabbath and if they were hiding their eyes from the Sabbath” Alternate translation: “They ignore my Sabbaths” (See: Metaphor)

so that I am profaned in their midst

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and profane me among themselves” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
• priest, priesthood
• profane, profaned
• profane, profaned
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
• priest, priesthood
• profane, profaned
• profane, profaned
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 22:27

her

This pronoun refers to Jerusalem.

**Her princes within her are like wolves tearing apart their victims**

This compares Israel’s princes to wolves who attack and kill their victims. (See: Simile)

**They pour out blood and destroy life**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the violence that the princes practice. Alternate translation: “They murder people” (See: Parallelism)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- blood
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

**Translation Words - UST**

- life, live, living, alive
- blood
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
Ezekiel 22:28

Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash

This speaks of the prophets trying to hide these sins as if they were something that they could paint over with whitewash. Alternate translation: “It is like her prophets have painted over their sins with whitewash” or “Their prophets try to hide these evil things” (See: Metaphor)

whitewash

This is a solution that is painted on things to make them white that is similar to white paint.

predict falsehoods to them

“predict lies for the princes.” The word “them” refers to the princes.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh

ULT
28 Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash; they see false visions and predict falsehoods to them. They say “The Lord Yahweh says this” when Yahweh has not spoken.

UST
28 Their prophets try to cover up those sins by saying they have received visions from God. They say, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says,’ when I have said nothing to them.
Ezekiel 22:29

have oppressed...and plundered

The understood words may be supplied. Alternate translation: “have oppressed people...and plundered others” (See: Ellipsis)

extortion

This refers to when someone threatens or hurts another person in order to make them give him money.

the poor and needy

This refers to poor and needy people. Alternate translation: “those who are poor and needy” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

• judge, judgment
• people, people group,
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• judge, judgment
• people, people group,
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

29 The people of the land have oppressed through extortion and plundered through robbery, and they mistreat the poor and needy, and oppress the foreigner without justice.

UST

29 The Israelite people force others to give them money, and they rob people. They oppress poor people, and they mistreat foreigners among them by not treating them fairly in the courts.
Ezekiel 22:30

General Information:
Yahweh compares the leaders of Jerusalem to a wall and himself to an invading army. (See: Metaphor)

a man from them who would build up a wall
This speaks of a man who would take responsibility to pray for the people and to lead them to repentance as if that man were to build a wall to protect the people from Yahweh. Alternate translation: “a man from among them who would act like he built a wall” (See: Metaphor)

stand before me in its breach
Its “breach” refers to a gap in the wall. This speaks of the man defending the people before Yahweh as if he were a warrior standing in the breach to defend the city. (See: Metaphor)

for the land so I would not destroy it
Here the “land” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “for the people so that I would not destroy them” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• seek, search, look for
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
• seek, search, look for
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 22:31

**pour out my indignation upon them**

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as if his indignation were a liquid that he poured out on them. Alternate translation: “I will punish the people because of my indignation for them” or “I will punish the people because of my anger against them” (See: Metaphor)

**indignation**

anger of a person who has suffered injustice

**I will finish them with the fire of my indignation**

This speaks of how harsh Yahweh's judgement is by comparing it to a fire. Here destroying the people is referred to as “finishing” them. Alternate translation: “I will destroy them with my wrath which is as intense as a blazing fire” or “I will destroy them with my wrath” (See: Metaphor and Euphemism)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- head
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- consume, devour

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- head
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- consume, devour
Ezekiel 23

Ezekiel 23 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Israel and Judah have been unfaithful to God by worshiping idols. They are compared to two unfaithful wives who have repeatedly committed adultery. (See: faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy and Metaphor)
Ezekiel 23:1

General Information:

Yahweh speaks of how the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria have been unfaithful to him in a metaphor in which he refers to them as two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 23:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
Ezekiel 23:3

Their breasts were squeezed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Men squeezed their breasts” (See: Active or Passive)

their virgin nipples were fondled there

This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase and emphasizes the immoral behavior of the two young women. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “there men fondled their virgin nipples” (See: Parallelism and Active or Passive)

fondled

to be touched lovingly or softly

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- prostitute, harlot, whored
Ezekiel 23:4

they became mine

This means that he married them and they became his wives. Alternate translation: “they became my wives” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Their names mean this: Oholah means Samaria, and Oholibah means Jerusalem

“Oholah represents Samaria, and Oholibah represents Jerusalem.” In this metaphor Samaria is spoken of as if it were Oholah and Jerusalem is spoken of as if it were Oholibah. This speaks of how these cities were unfaithful to Yahweh as if they were unfaithful wives. (See: Metaphor)

Oholah

This is the name of a woman that means “her tent.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Oholibah

This is the name of a woman that means “my tent is in her.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem
Ezekiel 23:5

General Information:
Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

when she was mine
This refers to when she was his wife. Alternate translation: “while she was still my wife” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

who were dominant
“who ruled over her”

Translation Words - ULT
- love, beloved
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Translation Words - UST
- love, beloved
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
Ezekiel 23:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- govern, government, governor, proconsul

Translation Words - UST

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- govern, government, governor, proconsul

ULT

6 the governor who wore blue, and for his officials, who were strong and handsome, all of them men riding on horses.

UST

6 Some of them were army officers and commanders. They wore beautiful purple uniforms. They were all handsome young men who rode horses.
Ezekiel 23:7

all the best of Assyria’s men
This identifies who the word “them” refers to.

she made herself unclean with everyone she lusted for—and with all their idols
This implies that she slept with all of these men and worshiped the idols they worshiped. Alternate translation: “she made herself unclean by sleeping with everyone she lusted for and by worshiping all their idols” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

unclean
A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
Ezekiel 23:8

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

poured out their lust upon her

This speaks of lust as if it were a large amount of water that they were pouring out on her. Alternate translation: “to act lustfully toward her” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Egypt, Egyptian
• forsake, forsaken, leave

Translation Words - UST

• Egypt, Egyptian
• forsake, forsaken, leave

ULT
8 For she had not left her prostitute behavior behind in Egypt, when they had lain with her when she had been a young girl, when they caressed her virgin bosom and poured out their lust upon her.

UST
8 When she was a young woman in Egypt, she started being a prostitute, and she allowed young men to caress her breasts and have sex with her. When she became older, she did not quit acting like a prostitute.
Ezekiel 23:9

I gave her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians

The word “hand” refers to power or control. The two phrases have the same meaning and the second phrase explains that “her lovers” were “the Assyrians.” Alternate translation: “I gave her over to her lovers, the Assyrians” (See: Metonymy and Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- hand
- hand
Ezekiel 23:10

they executed judgment on her

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “they talked about her disgrace” or “she had a bad reputation among them” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- exile, exiled
Ezekiel 23:11

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

Oholibah

This is the name of a woman that means “my tent is in her.” See how you translated this name in Ezekiel 23:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
11 Her sister Oholibah saw this, but she lusted even more passionately and acted like a prostitute even more than her sister.

UST
11 Her younger sister Oholibah saw those things that happened to Oholah, but she was also a prostitute, and she desired to sleep with men even more than her older sister had desired.
Ezekiel 23:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- govern, government, governor, proconsul

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- govern, government, governor, proconsul

ULT 12 She lusted for the Assyrians, the governors and the dominating officials who dressed impressively, who were men riding horses. All of them were strong, handsome men.

UST 12 Oholibah also wanted to sleep with the Assyrian soldiers. Some of them were army officers and commanders. They all wore beautiful uniforms. They were all handsome young men. And they rode horses.
**Ezekiel 23:13**

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in *Ezekiel 23:7.* (See: Metaphor)

**It was the same for both sisters**

This refers to how they had both made themselves unclean. Alternate translation: “Both sisters became unclean through their acts of prostitution” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
Ezekiel 23:14

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Chaldea, Chaldean

Translation Words - UST

• Chaldea, Chaldean

ULT

14 Then she increased her prostitution even more. She saw men carved on walls, figures of Chaldeans painted in red,

UST

14 But she did even worse things. She saw drawings of men from Babylonia on the walls, painted in red.
Ezekiel 23:15

**turbans**

hats made out of long cloth and wrapped around the top of a man's head

**had the appearance of officers of chariot troops, the likeness of sons**

The abstract nouns “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “appeared the way officers of chariot troops do, and they looked like sons” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**chariot troops**

soldiers who drive chariots and who run ahead of and beside them

**sons of Babylonia**

“Babylonians”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
  - Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
  - Chaldea, Chaldean
- head
  - earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
  - Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
  - Chaldea, Chaldean
- head
  - earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 23:16

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- messenger

ULT 16 As soon as her eyes saw them, she lusted for them, so she sent out messengers to them in Chaldea.

UST 16 As soon as she saw those drawings, she wanted to sleep with those men, and she sent messages to them in Babylonia.
Ezekiel 23:17

her bed of lust

This refers to her bed where she slept with men and acted lustfully. Alternate translation: “her bed where she acted lustfully” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they made her unclean with their promiscuousness

This means that they slept with the woman. Alternate translation: “they slept with her and made her unclean” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 23:7. (See: Metaphor)

so she turned herself away from them

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “so she rejected them” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

ULT
17 Then the Babylonians came to her and to her bed of lust, and they made her unclean with their promiscuousness. By what she had done she was made unclean, so she turned herself away from them in disgust.

UST
17 Then the soldiers from Babylonia came to her, lay in bed with her, and slept with her. Then she became disgusted with them and turned away from them.
Ezekiel 23:18

General Information:
Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

ULT
18 When she displayed her acts of prostitution and uncovered her nakedness, I turned away from her, just as I had turned away in disgust from her sister.

UST
18 But when she continued to openly act like a prostitute and to show herself naked to others, I became disgusted with her and rejected her, as I had rejected her older sister.
Ezekiel 23:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT
19 Then she increased her prostitution as she remembered the days of her youth, when she was a prostitute in the land of Egypt.

UST
19 But she became even more immoral, as she remembered when she was a young woman learning to be a prostitute in Egypt.
Ezekiel 23:20

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

**whose private parts were like those of donkeys**

This compares the size of the men’s private parts to those of a donkey to show how wicked Oholibah’s desires were. This is an exaggeration as they could not be as large as those of a donkey. Alternate translation: “whose private parts were very long, like those of a donkey” (See: Simile and Hyperbole)

**whose reproductive emissions were like those of horses**

This compares the volume of the men’s emissions to those of a horse to show how wicked Oholibah’s desires were. This is an exaggeration as they could not be like those of a horse. Alternate translation: “whose reproductive emissions were huge, like those of a horse” (See: Simile and Hyperbole)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- flesh
- flesh
- donkey, mule
- horse, warhorse, horseback

**Translation Words - UST**

- flesh
- flesh
- donkey, mule
- horse, warhorse, horseback
Ezekiel 23:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian

**Translation Words - UST**
- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian

**ULT**
21 This is how you committed shameful acts of your youth, when the Egyptians fondled your nipples and squeezed your young breasts.

**UST**
21 So she desired to be immoral like she was when she was young, when men in Egypt caressed her bosom and fondled her young breasts.
Ezekiel 23:22

General Information:
Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

Behold!
“Listen!” The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

I will bring them against you from every side
“I will cause them to attack you from all directions”

Translation Words - ULT
• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• love, beloved
• raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Translation Words - UST
• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• love, beloved
• raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

ULT
22 Therefore, Oholibah, the Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! I will turn your lovers against you. Those from whom you turned away, I will bring them against you from every side:

UST
22 Oholibah represents you people of Jerusalem. Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord say: Those soldiers who loved you but from whom you turned away because you became disgusted with them—I will make them angry with you. I will make them come and attack you from every side—
Ezekiel 23:23

the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the Assyrians with them

This does not refer to all of the people who live in these places, but rather to soldiers from there. Alternate translation: “soldiers from Babylon and all of Chaldea, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the soldiers of Assyria with them” (See: Hyperbole)

Pekod, Shoa, and Koa

These are the names places in Babylonia. These places represent the soldiers from these places. Alternate translation: “those from Pekod, Shoa, and Koa” (See: How to Translate Names and Metonymy)

strong, handsome men, governors and commanders... all of them riding on horses

This is the description of the men of Assyria that Oholah had slept with who are now turning against her. This is similar to the description given in Ezekiel 23:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- govern, government, governor, proconsul
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- govern, government, governor, proconsul
- declare, proclaim, announce
Ezekiel 23:24

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

will come against you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “will attack you” (See: Idiom)

with weapons

The Hebrew word translated here as “weapons” is rare. Many modern versions translate it in this way, but some versions leave this phrase out.

They will set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you all around

These defensive items are used to refer to various types of soldiers. Alternate translation: “Soldiers will attack you on all sides carrying large shields, small shields, and wearing helmets” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 23:25

For I will set my jealous anger on you, and they will deal with you in fury

Here Yahweh speaks of causing the armies to attack them because he is angry with them as if his anger were something that he was placing upon them. Alternate translation: Because I am very jealous for you, I will cause them to act furiously towards you” (See: Metaphor)

They will cut off your noses and your ears

This describes the punishment in Babylon for married women who slept with men that are not their husbands. Alternate translation: “They will punish you as an adulteress, by cutting of your noses and your ears” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

your survivors will fall by the sword

The word “fall” is a euphemism for “die.” The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill with swords. Alternate translation: “men will kill your survivors with their swords” (See: Euphemism and Metonymy)

your survivors will be devoured by fire

This speaks of the survivors being burned by fire as if the fire were an animal attacking and eating them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “your survivors will be burned by fire” or “fire will burn your survivors” (See: Personification and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- wrath, fury
- devour
- sword, swordsmen
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- son
- wrath, fury
- devour
- sword, swordsmen
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 23:26

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

ULT
26 They will strip you of your clothes and take away all of your jewelry.

UST
26 They will strip off your clothes and your fine jewelry, and they will take them away.
Ezekiel 23:27

from the land of Egypt

This refers to her prostitution as beginning in Egypt. Alternate translation: “which you began in the land of Egypt” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

You will not lift up your eyes toward them with longing

This is a way to refer to a person turning their head to look at something. Here looking represents desire. Alternate translation: “You will not look toward them with longing” or “You will not desire these things” (See: Metaphor)

you will think of Egypt no longer

Here “Egypt” represents the shameful things that she did in Egypt. Alternate translation: “you will think about the things you did in Egypt no longer” or “you will not think about what you did in Egypt any more” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
Ezekiel 23:28

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

Behold

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

give you into the hand of the ones you hate...into the hand of the ones from whom you had turned away

These two phrases have the same meaning. It means that they will be captured by the men they used to prostitute themselves to. Alternate translation: “allow you to be captured by those you hate and had turned away from” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

into the hand

Here the word “hand” refers to control. Alternate translation: “into the control” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- hand
Ezekiel 23:29

naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing and emphasize that she will be completely uncovered. (See: Doublet)

your nakedness will be uncovered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will reveal your nakedness" (See: Active or Passive)
Ezekiel 23:30

General Information:
Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

These things will be done to you in your acting

“These things will be done to you because you have acted.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “These things will happen to you because you have acted” (See: Active or Passive)

acting like a prostitute, lusting after nations

Ezekiel speaks of Oholibah, who represents Judah (Ezekiel 23:4), as if she were a prostitute sleeping with the men of many nations for money. He wants the people of Judah to understand that Yahweh to punish them because they were worshiping the idols of other nations so they could get those nations’ wealth and power. Alternate translation: “acting like a prostitute, lusting after men of other nations” (See: Metonymy)

became unclean with their idols

She became unclean by worshiping the idols. Alternate translation: “became unclean by worshiping their idols” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 23:7. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• nation
• prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST

• nation
• prostitute, harlot, whored
Ezekiel 23:31

so I will put her cup of punishment into your hand

This refers to Oholibah’s punishment that she will receive as if it were a cup of wine. Alternate translation: “so I will cause you to be punished in the same way as your sister” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 23:32

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through Ezekiel 23:34. (See: Metaphor)

You will drink your sister's cup

Here Yahweh speaks of punishment as if it were a cup of wine the woman drank. Alternate translation: “You will drink the same cup of punishment as your sister” (See: Metonymy)

your sister's cup that is

Here the “cup” represents what is in the cup. Alternate translation: “from your sister’s cup that is” or “all that is in your sister’s cup, and her cup is” (See: Metonymy)

a laughingstock...a subject for derision

Both of these phrases refer to a person who is laughed at and criticized because of their foolish behavior. Derision is mocking or ridiculing something or someone. (See: Parallelism)

this cup contains a great amount

This sentence does not say what is in the cup because it is understood by reading Ezekiel 23:31. Alternate translation: “this cup contains a great amount of punishment” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 23:33

General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: Metaphor)

You will be filled with drunkenness and sorrow

This speaks of being very drunk and full of sorrow as if drunkenness and sorrow were things that filled her body. Alternate translation: “You will become very drunk and very sad” (See: Metaphor)

the cup of horror and devastation

“the cup that causes horror and devastation.” The words “horror” and “devastation” share similar meanings here and emphasize how terrible her punishment will be. Alternate translation: “for what is in that cup causes horror and devastation” (See: Doublet)

the cup of your sister Samaria

Oholibah’s sister Oholah represents Samaria. Samaria is called by it’s name but still referred to as a sister. The cup is a symbol for the punishment that she received. Alternate translation: “for this is the same cup of punishment that your sister, who represents Samaria, drank” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Samaria, Samaritan
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Translation Words - UST

- Samaria, Samaritan
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
Ezekiel 23:34

tear your breasts

“cut your breasts”

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT
34 You will drink it and drain it empty; then you will shatter it and tear your breasts with the pieces. For I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

UST
34 You will drink all the liquid that is in that cup; then you will break that cup into pieces and use those pieces to cut your breasts because you will be very sad. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.
Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Because you have forgotten me and thrown me away behind your back, so also you will bear the consequences of your shameful behavior and acts of sexual immorality.'

Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you have forgotten me and rejected me, I must punish you for your immoral behavior and for being a prostitute.
Ezekiel 23:36

Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah?

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question as a command for Ezekiel. This question can be written as a statement. The cities of Jerusalem and Samaria are represented by Oholah and Oholibah. Alternate translation: “Son of man, you will judge Oholah and Oholibah!” or “Son of man, judge the people of those two cities represented by Oholah and Oholibah.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
Ezekiel 23:37

there is blood on their hands

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “they have murdered people” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• hand

Translation Words - UST

• son
• hand

ULT
37 since they have committed adultery, and since there is blood on their hands. They have committed adultery with their idols, and they have even caused their sons to pass through the fire, as food for their idols.

UST
37 It is as though they have committed adultery and have murdered people. They have been unfaithful to me by worshiping idols. They have even sacrificed their own children, who belonged to me, in fire.
Ezekiel 23:38

General Information:

Yahweh speaks about how the people of Jerusalem and Samaria have been unfaithful to him.

unclean

A person or thing God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 23:7. (See: Metaphor)

on the same day they defile my Sabbaths

The phrase “same day” refers to the previous phrase “make my sanctuary unclean.” Alternate translation: “on the same day on which they make my sanctuary unclean, they defile my Sabbaths” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sabbath

Translation Words - UST

• Sabbath
Ezekiel 23:39

**behold!**

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

**in the middle of my house**

This refers to the house in general. The reference to the “middle” emphasizes that what was done happened openly in the temple and defiled the whole place. Alternate translation: “in my own house” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- profane, profaned
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- profane, profaned
- house

ULT

39 For when they had slaughtered their children for their idols, then they came to my sanctuary on the same day to defile it! So behold! This is what they have done in the middle of my house.

UST

39 On the same day that they sacrificed their children to their idols, they entered my temple, which caused it to be an unacceptable place for worshiping me. They did these things in my own house!
Ezekiel 23:40

General Information:

Yahweh again refers to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: Metaphor)

behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry

These are things done by a woman to make her appear more beautiful to a man.

you bathed

Here the word “you” switches to singular and refers to only one sister, but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• messenger

Translation Words - UST

• messenger
Ezekiel 23:41

you sat

Here the word “you” switches to singular and refers to only one sister, but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. (See: Forms of You)

my incense and my oil

These are items used in worship to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

• oil

Translation Words - UST

• oil
Ezekiel 23:42

General Information:

Yahweh continues to refer to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: Metaphor)

So the sound of a noisy crowd was around her

The sound of the crowd is used to refer to the crowd of people. Alternate translation: “So there was a noisy crowd around her” (See: Metonymy)

was around her...on their hands

“was around her...on her and her sister's hands.” This verse begins by referring to one of the sisters but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. In the second part of the verse it switches back to referring to both sisters with the word “their.”

Sabeans were brought

This can be stated in active form. The word “Sabeans” refers to people from Sheba. Alternate translation: “Sabeans had come” (See: Active or Passive and How to Translate Names)

they put bracelets

The word “they” refers to the men.

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• head
• crown, crowned

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• head
• crown, crowned
Ezekiel 23:43

General Information:
Yahweh continues to refer to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: Metaphor)

her who was worn out...with her, and she with them
This refers to one of the sisters but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here.

Translation Words - ULT
• prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST
• prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT
43 Then I said of her who was worn out by adultery, 'Now they will be sexually immoral with her, and she with them.'

UST
43 Then I said about the woman who had become exhausted by sleeping with many men, 'Now those men will act toward her as though she were a prostitute, because that is all that she is.'
Ezekiel 23:44

They went in to her, as men go in to a prostitute

They went in to her

“They went in to where she was” or “They went to her”

In this way they went in to Oholah and Oholibah

“They went in to her, as men go in to a prostitute. In this way they went in to Oholah and Oholibah, immoral women.

So they slept with those two women, Oholah and Oholibah, as men sleep with prostitutes.

Translation Words - ULT

• prostitute, harlot, whored

Translation Words - UST

• prostitute, harlot, whored
Ezekiel 23:45

**pass judgment**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “condemn” (See: Idiom)

**who shed blood...blood is on their hands**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “who murder people...murderers” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- blood
- judge, judgment
- hand
- statute

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- blood
- judge, judgment
- hand
- statute
Ezekiel 23:46

raise up a company

The phrase “raise up” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “gather a large group of people” (See: Idiom)

against them and give them

“against Jerusalem and Samaria and give them”

give them up

Yahweh gives up the responsibility to take care of them and allows them to suffer.

to be terrorized and plundered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for the company to terrorize and plunder them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
Ezekiel 23:47

**cut them down**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “kill them” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- house

ULT

47 Then that company will stone them with stones and cut them down with their swords. They will kill their sons and daughters and burn down their houses.

UST

47 The mob will throw stones at them to kill them; they will cut them into pieces with their swords, they will kill their sons and daughters, and they will burn down their houses.
Ezekiel 23:48

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

48 For I will remove shameful behavior from the land and discipline all the women so they will no longer act like prostitutes.

UST

48 In that way I will cause them to stop their immoral behavior. This will warn other women to not imitate what you people of Jerusalem are doing.
Ezekiel 23:49

So they will set your shameful behavior against you. You will bear the guilt of your sins with your idols, and in this way you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.”

ULT

49 So they will set your shameful behavior against you. You will bear the guilt of your sins with your idols, and in this way you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.”

UST

49 I will punish you people of Jerusalem for your immoral behavior and for worshiping idols. Then you will know that I, Yahweh the Lord, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

So the company will set your.” The word “they” refers to the “company” of people from Ezekiel 23:47.

set your shameful behavior against you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “cause you to accept responsibility for your shameful behavior” or “punish you for your shameful behavior” (See: Idiom)

bear the guilt of your sins with your idols

“accept responsibility for the guilt of your sins with your idols.” This implies that they will be punished for their sins. Alternate translation: “receive the punishment for sinning by worshiping your idols” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 24

Ezekiel 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Too many sins to be forgiven

The people of Jerusalem cannot be cleaned from their sin. (See: clean, wash and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Jerusalem is compared to a pot, so rusted that it cannot be cleaned from its rust. They have been completely rotted by their sin. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 24:1

General Information:

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

in the ninth year

“This in year 9.” This refers to how long they had been in exile under King Jehoiachin. Alternate translation: “in the ninth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month

“This the tenth month” or “the 10th day of the 10th month.” This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 24:2

Son of man

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: "Mortal person" or "Human"

the king of Babylon has besieged

The army of Babylon is referred to by its leader. Alternate translation: "the army of the king of Babylon has besieged" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 24:3

General Information:
Yahweh speaks a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through Ezekiel 24:14. (See: Parables)

this rebellious house
This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:5. Alternate translation: “this rebellious people” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
  • lord, Lord, master, sir
  • house

Translation Words - UST
  • lord, Lord, master, sir
  • house

ULT
3 So speak a proverb against this rebellious house, a parable. Say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Place the cooking pot. Place it and pour water into it.

UST
3 Tell those rebellious Israelite people in Babylon a parable. Say this to them: This is what Yahweh the Lord says: ‘Pour water into the cooking pot and put the pot on the fire.'
Ezekiel 24:4

**Gather pieces of food**

Here “food” refers specifically to meat. Alternate translation: “Place pieces of meat” (See: Synecdoche)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

**Translation Words - UST**

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT

4 Gather pieces of food within it, every good piece—the thigh and shoulder—and fill it with the best bones.

UST

4 Put into the pot some pieces of meat from one of your best sheep: put in the leg and shoulder, which are the best pieces. Then fill the rest of the pot with the best bones.
Ezekiel 24:5

**the best of the flock**

Here the “flock” refers to sheep, not birds.

**pile up the bones under it**

Some cultures add bones to a fire because they burn longer than wood. This refers to the bones that remained after the best bones were placed in the pot. Alternate translation: “place the rest of the bones under the pot to fuel the fire” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

**Translation Words - UST**

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
Ezekiel 24:6

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through Ezekiel 24:14. (See: Parables)

the city of blood

Here “blood” is a reference to “murder.” Alternate translation: “the city of murderers” (See: Metonymy)

a cooking pot

Yahweh continues to compare Jerusalem to a cooking pot. Alternate translation: “it is like a cooking pot” (See: Metaphor)

rust

the red material that forms on metal. Rust eats away at metal and eventually destroys it

Take piece after piece

Yahweh does not give this command to a specific person. This is a general command given to an unspecified person within this metaphor.

but do not cast lots for it

Casting lots was a way of choosing which pieces of meat to take out, but because Yahweh wants to take out all of the pieces of meat, there is no need to cast lots.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lots, casting lots
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lots, casting lots
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 24:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through Ezekiel 24:14. (See: Parables)

For her blood is in the midst of her

This means that the blood from those who were murdered in Jerusalem is still there. Alternate translation: “For the blood of those who were murdered among her is still there” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem, which is represented by the cooking pot.

She has set it on the smooth rock; she has not poured it out on the ground to cover it with dust

This personifies Jerusalem as a person who murdered the people and chose where to put their blood. Alternate translation: “They were murdered on the smooth rocks; not on the dirt where the dust would hide their blood” or “Their blood fell on the smooth rocks; it did not fall on the ground where the dust would cover it” (See: Personification)

has set it on the smooth rock

“has put the blood on bare rocks”

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 24:8

**so it brings fury up to exact vengeance**

Here Yahweh is speaking about himself taking revenge on those who murdered the people in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “in order that I could see it and then be angry and get revenge” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**so it could not be covered**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that no one could cover it” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- blood
- wrath, fury

**Translation Words - UST**

- blood
- wrath, fury
Ezekiel 24:9

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through Ezekiel 24:14. (See: Parables)

the city of blood

Here “blood” is a reference to “murder.” Alternate translation: “the city of murderers” (See: Metonymy)

I will also enlarge the pile of wood

It is implied that the pile of wood is under the cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. “I will make the pile of wood on the fire under you even bigger” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- proud, pride, prideful
Ezekiel 24:10

**kindle the fire**

“light the fire”

**let the bones be charred**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “burn the bones” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

**Translation Words - UST**

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

10 Stack up the wood and kindle the fire. Cook the meat well and mix in the spices and let the bones be charred.

UST

10 So heap on the wood and light the fire! Cook the meat well, and mix some spices with it; cook it until the bones are black.
Ezekiel 24:11

General Information:
Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through Ezekiel 24:14. (See: Parables)

scorch
to burn the surface of something

so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to melt the uncleanness within it and to consume its corrosion” (See: Active or Passive)

uncleanness
A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

corrosion
rust

consumed
burned away

Translation Words - ULT

• bronze

Translation Words - UST

• bronze
Ezekiel 24:12

She has become weary

Here the word “she” refers to the cooking pot. This is the cooking pot that is metaphorical for Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “Jerusalem has become tired” (See: Metaphor)

toil

difficult labor

but her corrosion has not gone out of her by the fire

The phrase “has not gone out of her” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “but the fire did not burn away her corrosion” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 24:13

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through Ezekiel 24:14. (See: Parables)

until I have satisfied my fury upon you.

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people in his anger as if it were his “fury” that were punishing them. Alternate translation: “until I am finished punishing you and am no longer furious with you” or “until I have punished you and I am longer angry with you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• pure, purify, purification
• wrath, fury
• rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

• pure, purify, purification
• wrath, fury
• rest, rested, restless

ULT
13 Your shameful behavior is in your uncleanness. Because I tried to cleanse you but still you would not be cleansed from your uncleanness, you will not be cleansed anymore until I have satisfied my fury upon you.

UST
13 The corrosion in the pot represents your immoral behavior. I tried to cleanse you from your wicked behavior, but you did not allow me to do that. So you will not be cleansed from the guilt of your sin until I have punished you and I am no longer angry.
Ezekiel 24:14

General Information:
Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through the end of this verse. (See: Parables)

nor will I rest from it

“nor will I rest from punishing you.” The word “it” refers to Yahweh punishing the people.

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Yahweh
• comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Yahweh
• comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

ULT
14 I, Yahweh, have declared it, and I will do it. I will not relent nor will I rest from it. As your ways were, and as your activities, they will judge you!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

UST
14 I, Yahweh, have said that I will surely punish you. And it is time for me to do that. I will not change my mind; I will not refrain from punishing you, and I will not pity you. I will judge you and punish you as you deserve to be punished for your sinful behavior. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”
Ezekiel 24:15

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 24:16

the desire of your eyes from

This refers to Ezekiel's wife. Yahweh refers to Ezekiel by the part of his body he uses to see his wife. Alternate translation: “your wife, whom you love very much, from” (See: Synecdoche)

with a plague

“by a disease”

you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Ezekiel is not to cry about his wife dying. Alternate translation: “you must not mourn nor weep” (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

• son

Translation Words - UST

• son
Ezekiel 24:17

the dead

This refers to his dead wife. Alternate translation: “your dead wife” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

turban

a head covering made of a long cloth wrapped around the head

sandals

a simple shoe held onto the foot with straps around the ankles

do not veil your facial hair

In Israel, men would shave their beards to express sorrow, then cover their faces until their facial hair grew back. Yahweh told Ezekiel not to cover his facial hair in order to show that he had not shaved his face to express his sorrow. Alternate translation: “do not mourn by veiling your facial hair” or “do not mourn by shaving and covering your beard” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - UST

- bread
- devour

ULT
17 You must groan silently. Do not conduct a funeral for the dead. Tie your turban on you and place your sandals on your feet, but do not veil your facial hair or eat the bread of men who mourn for having lost their wives.”

Translation Words - UST

- bread
- devour
Ezekiel 24:18

In the morning

“The next morning”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

18 So I spoke to the people in the morning, and my wife died in the evening. In the morning I did what I had been commanded to do.

UST

18 So one morning I talked to the people as usual, and that evening my wife suddenly died. The next morning I did what Yahweh had told me to do.
Ezekiel 24:19

General Information:
The people of Israel question Ezekiel, and Ezekiel tells them what Yahweh has said to them.

Translation Words - ULT
• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST
• people, people group,

ULT
19 The people asked me, “Will you not tell us what these things mean, the things that you are doing?”

UST
19 Then the people asked me, “What do the things that you are doing signify to us?”
Ezekiel 24:20

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 24:21

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**Behold**

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I will desecrate my sanctuary—the pride of...of your soul, and your sons**

“I will desecrate my sanctuary which is the pride...of your soul. Your sons”

**the pride of your power**

This describes the temple as the building that the people are proud of. This speaks of it as being their “pride” instead of the source of their pride. Alternate translation: “the building that you are proud of” or “the source of your strong pride” (See: Metonymy)

**the delight of your eyes**

Here Yahweh refers to the people by their “eyes.” Alternate translation: “the building that you delight to look at” (See: Synecdoche)

**the yearning of your soul**

Here Yahweh refers to the people by their “soul” to emphasize their inner feelings. Alternate translation: “the building that you truly love” (See: Synecdoche)

**your sons and your daughters...will fall by the sword**

This refers to their enemies by their swords. Alternate translation: “your sons and daughters...will be killed in war” or “your enemies will kill your sons and your daughters...with their swords” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- sword, swordsmen
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• Israel, Israelites
• forsake, forsaken, leave
• sword, swordsmen
• house
Ezekiel 24:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- bread
- devour

ULT
22 Then you will do exactly as I have done: you will not veil your facial hair, nor eat the bread of mourning men!

UST
22 When that happens, you will do as I have done: You will not cover the lower part of your faces, or eat the kinds of food that people who are mourning usually eat.
Ezekiel 24:23

you will melt away

Here “melt away” is a metaphor for wasting away and dying. Alternate translation: “you will become very thin and slowly die” (See: Metaphor)

in your iniquities

This implies that God will not forgive the sins of these people. Alternate translation: “and I will not forgive your sins” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

groan

This is the sound a person makes who wants help, but who has too much pain or sorrow to speak.

Translation Words - ULT

• brother
• head

Translation Words - UST

• brother
• head
Ezekiel 24:24

So Ezekiel will be a sign for you

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 12:6. Alternate translation: “So Ezekiel will be a warning for you” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 24:25

that I capture their temple

Here Yahweh speaks of destroying the temple as if it were someone that he was capturing. Alternate translation: “that I destroy their temple”

which is their joy, their pride

The abstract nouns “joy” and “pride” can be translated as noun phrases. Alternate translation: “which is what they are joyful about and what they are proud of” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

ULT
25 “But you, son of man, on the day that I capture their temple, which is their joy, their pride, and what they see and desire—and when I take away their sons and daughters—

UST
25 Then Yahweh said to me, “Son of man, soon I will destroy their sacred temple, which they rejoice about and which they respect and delight to look at, and I will get rid of their sons and daughters also.”
Ezekiel 24:26

refugee

someone who has been forced to leave his country because of war or another disaster

ULT
26 on that day, a refugee will come to you to give you the news!

UST
26 On that day, someone will escape from Jerusalem and come and tell you what has happened there.
Ezekiel 24:27

Your mouth will be opened up

This can be stated in active form. Ezekiel being given understanding and the ability to speak is represented by his mouth being opened. Alternate translation: “I will open your mouth” or “you will know what to say” or “I will cause you to know what to say” (See: Active or Passive and Synecdoche)

You will speak—you will no longer be silent

Both of these phrases mean that Ezekiel will speak. In the second phrase it is stated in negative form to emphasize that he will speak. (See: Litotes)

You will be a sign for them

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. See how you translated this metaphor in Ezekiel 12:6. Alternate translation: “You will be a warning for them” (See: Metaphor)

Know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Prophecy against other nations

This chapter includes prophecies against some Gentile nations. Ammon, Moab, Edom and Philistia will all be destroyed. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
Ezekiel 25:1

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 25:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

set your face against the people of Ammon

This is a command to stare at the people of Ammon as a symbol of punishing them. Alternate translation: “stare at the people of Ammon” or “stare at the people of Ammon so that they will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

set your face against the people of Ammon

Ammon was far away, so Ezekiel could not see the people there, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming the people. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 6:2. Alternate translation: “Turn toward the people of Ammon and stare” or “stare toward Ammon so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

the people of Ammon

“the descendants of Ammon” or “those who live in the land of Ammon”

prophesy against them

“prophesy about the bad things that will happen to them.” This means to prophesy about the horrible things that will happen to the people of Ammon. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 4:7.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial
Ezekiel 25:3

General Information:
Yahweh tells Ezekiel what to say to the people of Ammon.

Hear the word of the Lord Yahweh
“Listen to this message from the Lord Yahweh”

you said, “Aha!”
“you cheered.” The word “Aha” is a sound people make when they are happy about something. In this case the people were happy because bad things happened to Israel and Judah.

over my sanctuary when it was profaned
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “against my sanctuary when the enemy army profaned it” (See: Active or Passive)

against the land...against the house
“over the land...over the house”

the house of Judah
The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- walk, walked
- house
Ezekiel 25:4

**I am giving you to a people in the east as their possession**

This speaks of the enemy army conquering the land of Ammon and taking possession of the land and everything in it as if the enemy were taking the people of Ammon as their possession. It is not implied here that the enemy took the people of Ammon as slaves. Alternate translation: “I will cause an army from a land that is east of you to come and conquer you” (See: Metaphor)

**They will set up camp against you and set up their tents among you**

“They will set up tents and live in your country”

**They will eat your fruit and they will drink your milk**

It may be helpful to specify the source of the fruit and milk. Alternate translation: “They will eat the fruit from your trees and drink the milk from your cattle” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
Ezekiel 25:5

the people of Ammon a field for flocks

Here the phrase “the people of Ammon” refers to the land that belonged to the people of Ammon. Also, the understood information at the beginning of this phrase may be supplied. Alternate translation: “I will make the rest of the land of Ammon a field for flocks” (See: Metonymy and Ellipsis)

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- flock, herd
- camel
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- flock, herd
- camel
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 25:6

You have clapped your hands and stamped your feet

These actions are ways to show strong emotions. In this case the people are cheering and showing their contempt against Israel. (See: Symbolic Action)

all the contempt within you against the land of Israel

Here the phrase “the land of Israel” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “all of the hatred you feel towards the people who live in Israel” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
Ezekiel 25:7

**behold**
“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**I will strike you with my hand**
“I will hit you with my powerful hand.” Here Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were literally hitting them with his hand. Alternate translation: “I will punish you” (See: Metaphor)

**give you as plunder to the nations**
The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon but is also a metonym for their land and their possessions. Alternate translation: “I will allow enemies to defeat you and take you, your land, and your possessions as plunder” (See: Metonymy)

**I will cut you off from the peoples...make you perish from among the countries**
These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will completely destroy the people of Ammon so that they are no longer a nation. Alternate translation: “I will completely destroy you so that you are no longer a nation” (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- cut off
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- cut off
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 25:8

Moab and Seir

These places refer to the people who live in them. Alternate translation: “the people of Moab and Seir” (See: Metonymy)

Behold! The house of Judah is like

“Look at the house of Judah. It is like

The house of Judah is

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “The Judah people group are” or “The people of Judah are” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judea
- Moab, Moabite
- nation
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judea
- Moab, Moabite
- nation
- house
Ezekiel 25:9

**Behold! I will open**

“look! I will open” or “listen! I will open” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you! I will open”

**Starting at his cities**

Here the city of Moab is spoken of with the masculine pronoun “his.”
Alternate translation: “starting at its cities” (See: Personification)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Moab, Moabite
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- Moab, Moabite
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 25:10

to the people of the east who have been against the people of Ammon

“I will send the same army from the people in the east who attacked Ammon”

I will give them up as a possession

Here Yahweh speaks of allowing the armies from the east to conquer Ammon as if Ammon were a possession that he was giving them. Alternate translation: “I will allow the armies to conquer them” (See: Metaphor)

so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered among the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that the nations will not remember the people of Ammon” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son
- nation
Ezekiel 25:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
11 So I will perform judgments against Moab, and they will know that I am Yahweh.'

UST
11 I will also punish the people of Moab. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 25:12

Edom has taken

Here “Edom” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “The people of Edom have taken” (See: Metonymy)

the house of Judah

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judea
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judea
- house
Ezekiel 25:13

I will strike Edom with my hand

Here Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were literally hitting them with his hand. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 25:7. Alternate translation: “I will punish Edom” (See: Metaphor)

I will make them...from Teman to Dedan

“I will make all of Edom...from Teman to Dedan.” These are two cities at opposite ends of Edom. This means that Yahweh will destroy all of Edom. (See: How to Translate Names)

They will fall by the sword

The word “fall” represents being killed and the word “sword” refers to their enemies who will kill them in battle. Alternate translation: “Their enemies will kill them with their swords” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cut off
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

13 Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: I will strike Edom with my hand and destroy every person and animal there. I will make them a ruined, abandoned place, from Teman to Dedan. They will fall by the sword.

UST

13 Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will use my power against the people of Edom and will get rid of their men and their animals. I will ruin the land from the region of Teman in central Edom to the region of Dedan in the south of Edom, and their enemies will kill many of their men.
Ezekiel 25:14

I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel

Here the "hand" of Israel is a metonym for Israel's army. Yahweh speaks of taking revenge on the people of Edom as if his vengeance were like a sheet that he covered them with. The abstract noun "vengeance" can be translated with the verb "to punish." Alternate translation: "I will use my people Israel to punish the people of Edom" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury

"they will show Edom my anger and fury" or "they will punish Edom according to my anger and fury against the people of Edom"

my anger and my fury

The word "fury" means basically the same thing as and intensifies the word "anger." Alternate translation: “my furious anger” or “my extreme anger” (See: Doublet)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• hand
• people, people group,
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• hand
• people, people group,
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 25:15

The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again

The phrase “from within themselves” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “The Philistines hate Judah and have tried to take revenge against it by their own strength again and again” (See: Idiom)

to destroy Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “to destroy the people of Judah” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- Philistines

ULT

15 The Lord Yahweh says this, ‘The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again.

UST

15 This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: “The Philistia people group wanted very much for a long time to get revenge on the people of Judah. They very maliciously wanted to destroy Judah.
Ezekiel 25:16

Behold

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. Alternate translation: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

I will reach out with my hand against the Philistines

Here Yahweh’s power is represented by his “hand.” Alternate translation: “I will turn my powerful hand against the Philistines” or “I will turn my great power against the Philistines” (See: Metonymy)

I will cut off

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “I will destroy” or “I will get rid of” (See: Idiom)

Kerethites

people who lived in the city of Kereth in Philistia (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- remnant
- Philistines
- hand
- cut off
- destroy, destruction, annihilate

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- remnant
- Philistines
- hand
- cut off
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
Ezekiel 25:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

17 For I will take great vengeance against them with furious acts of punishment, so they will know that I am Yahweh, when I take my vengeance on them."

UST

17 I will get great revenge on them and show that I am angry with them by the way I punish them. And when I get revenge on them, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 26

Ezekiel 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section of prophecy against Tyre. The Babylonians will destroy Tyre. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
Ezekiel 26:1

in the eleventh year

“This in year 11.” This means the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

on the first day of the month

“on day 1 of the month.” It is uncertain which month of the Hebrew calendar Ezekiel meant. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Tyre has said against Jerusalem

Here the city names “Tyre” and “Jerusalem” represent the people of those cities. Alternate translation: “the people of Tyre have said against the people of Jerusalem” (See: Metonymy)

Aha!

The word “Aha” is a sound people make when they discover something. Alternate translation: “Yes!” or “This is great!” (See: Exclamations)

The gates of the people are broken

The people of Tyre use these words to refer to Jerusalem as if it were a city gate through which traders from the surrounding nations pass. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Armies have broken down the gates of the people” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

She has turned to me

Here the word “she” refers to the word “gates” which have “turned” on their hinges to open to Tyre. This phrase means that Tyre has now replaced Jerusalem as the city through which the traders from many nations pass. Alternate translation: “The gateway has opened to me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I will be filled up

Here to be “filled up” represents being prosperous. Alternate translation: “I will become prosperous” (See: Metonymy)

she is ruined

“Jerusalem is ruined”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Jerusalem
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Tyre, Tyrians
• Jerusalem
• people, people group,
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 26:3

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves

Here the word “nations” refers to their armies. Alternate translation: “I will gather armies from many nations that will beat against you like the waves in the raging sea” (See: Metonymy and Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Tyre, Tyrians
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Tyre, Tyrians
- nation

ULT

3 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! I am against you, Tyre, and I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves.

UST

3 Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: ‘I am now your enemy, you people of Tyre. I will cause the armies of many nations to come and attack your city, as the waves of the sea beat against the shores.
Ezekiel 26:4

I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock

Yahweh speaks of how he will cause Tyre to be completely destroyed. Alternate translation: “I will cause the armies to completely destroy the city, and they will leave nothing there” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• Tyre, Tyrians

Translation Words - UST

• Tyre, Tyrians

ULT

4 They will destroy the walls of Tyre and tear down her towers. I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock.

UST

4 Their soldiers will destroy the walls around Tyre and tear down your towers. The city will be completely destroyed. Then they will scrape away the rubble and cause the city to become a bare rock.
Ezekiel 26:5

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

She will become
The city of Tyre is spoken of here as if it were a woman. Alternate translation: “Tyre will become” or “It will become” (See: Personification)

a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea
Part of Tyre was an island. This expression is a metonym for the results of Tyre’s destruction. Alternate translation: “an empty island used for drying fishing nets” or “a deserted island where people dry out their fishing nets” (See: Metonymy)

she will become plunder for the nations
“Plunder” means things that people steal or take by force. Here Tyre becoming plunder represents its wealth being carried off by other nations. Alternate translation: “the armies of the nations will take away every valuable thing from Tyre” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- nation

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- nation
Ezekiel 26:6

**Her daughters who are in the fields will be slaughtered by the swords**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The enemy armies will slaughter with swords her daughters who are in the fields" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Her daughters who are in the fields**

Possible meanings are 1) “Her daughters” were the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields or 2) “Her daughters” is a metonym for nearby towns and villages on the mainland that supported the main city of Tyre. Alternate translation: “Her daughter communities who are on the mainland” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 26:7

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Behold
“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings
The phrase “king of kings” was a title, meaning that he was the greatest of kings, the king that other kings obeyed. Alternate translation: “Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the greatest king” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a great many people
This emphasizes the great size of Nebuchadnezzar’s army.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Tyre, Tyrians
• Nebuchadnezzar
• people, people group,
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Tyre, Tyrians
• Nebuchadnezzar
• people, people group,
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• king, kingdom, kingship
• horse, warhorse, horseback
Ezekiel 26:8

He will kill

Here the word “He” refers to Nebuchadnezzar and is a metonym for his army. Alternate translation: “His army will kill” (See: Metonymy)

your daughters in the field

Possible meanings are 1) “your daughters” refers to the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields or 2) “your daughters” is a metonym for nearby towns and villages on the mainland that supported the main city of Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 26:6. Alternate translation: “your daughter communities who are on the mainland” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• die, dead, deadly, death,
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• die, dead, deadly, death,
• sword, swordsmen

ULT

8 He will kill your daughters in the field. He will set up a siege work and build a ramp against your walls and raise up shields against you.

UST

8 In the battles in the small villages on the coast, their soldiers will kill many people with their swords. Then they will build up walls outside the city of Tyre. They will build a dirt ramp up to the top of the wall, and they will all hold up shields to protect themselves from arrows being shot from the ground.
Ezekiel 26:9

General Information:

The words “he” and “his” in these verses refer to Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, and represent the soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar’s army doing these actions. The word “your” refers to the city of Tyre. (See: Metonymy)

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

He will place his battering rams to hit against your walls, and his tools will tear down your towers

Although the battering rams and tools are spoken of as acting against the walls and towers of Tyre, they would have been used by the soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar’s army against the walls and towers. (See: Metonymy)

battering rams

“Battering rams” are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 4:2.

tools

Weapons or instruments made of iron used to tear down the towers

Translation Words - ULT

• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 26:10

When he enters your gates, he will enter as men come into a city whose walls have been broken down

Here Yahweh uses a simile to describe how Nebuchadnezzar’s army will enter into the city of Tyre. (See: Simile)

whose walls have been broken down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “after breaking down its walls” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- tremble, stagger
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- tremble, stagger
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT
10 His horses will be so many that their dust will cover you. Your walls will shake with the sound of horsemen, wagons, and chariots. When he enters your gates, he will enter as men come into a city whose walls have been broken down.

UST
10 The king will have a huge number of horses, and the stamping of their hooves will raise dust to cover the whole city. It will be as though the walls tremble because of the noise made by the horses, the supply wagons, and the chariots when they enter the city where the enemy has broken down the walls.
### Ezekiel 26:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- horse, warhorse, horseback

**Translation Words - UST**
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT
11 The hooves of his horses will trample all of your streets. He will kill your people with the sword and your mighty stone pillars will fall to the ground.

UST
11 The horses will trample all of the streets of the city with their hooves. The soldiers will kill the people with their swords; they will cause the monuments that celebrated their strength to collapse.
Ezekiel 26:12

**General Information:**

The word “They” in these verses refers to the soldiers in the armies of Nebuchadnezzar. The words “your” and “you” refer to the city of Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**They will plunder your riches and loot your merchandise**

The phrases “plunder your riches” and “loot your merchandise” mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)

**luxurious**

expensive and comfortable

**Your stones, your timber, and the rubble**

These refer to what is left after the walls and homes are torn down.

**into the waters**

“into the sea”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- house
Ezekiel 26:13

The sound of your harps will be heard no more

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one will hear the sound of your harps anymore” (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

13 I will stop the noise of your songs. The sound of your harps will be heard no more.

UST

13 No longer will the people sing noisy songs or play their harps.
Ezekiel 26:14

I will make you a bare rock

This metaphor describes the results after Yahweh completely destroys Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 26:4. (See: Metaphor)

you will become a place where nets are spread out to dry

This metaphor also describes the results after Yahweh destroys Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 26:5. (See: Metaphor)

you will become a place where nets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will make you a place where nets” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
Ezekiel 26:15

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Will not the islands quake...in your midst?
This question expects a positive answer and emphasizes the results of Tyre's destruction. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “The islands will quake...in your midst.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Will not the islands quake
Here “the islands” represents the people living on the islands. Alternate translation: “Will not the people of the islands quake with fear” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- tremble, stagger

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- tremble, stagger
Ezekiel 26:16

princes of the sea
“princes of the coastlands”

They will clothe themselves with trembling
This metaphor represents the princes trembling enough to seem like it was their clothing. (See: Metaphor)

be appalled because of you
“be unable to speak because what has happened to you is so bad”

Translation Words - ULT
- throne, enthroned
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- throne, enthroned
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 26:17

General Information:
In these verses, “They” refers to the “princes of the sea” in the previous verse, and “you” refers to Tyre.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

lift up
“sing”

How you, who were inhabited by sailors, have been destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “How your enemies have destroyed you—you who were inhabited by sailors” (See: Active or Passive)

spread a terror about themselves upon everyone who lived near them

The abstract noun “terror” can be translated using the adjective “terrified.” Alternate translation: “caused all the people around them to be terrified” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• perish
• strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

• perish
• strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 26:18

Now the coasts tremble on the day of your downfall. The islands in the sea are terrified, because you are no longer in your place.

These two lines are similar in meaning and emphasize the response of the surrounding people to the destruction of Tyre. (See: Parallelism)

Now the coasts tremble

Here “the coasts” represents the people living there. Alternate translation: “Now the people of the coastlands tremble” (See: Metonymy)

The islands in the sea are terrified

Here “the islands in the sea” represents the people living there. Alternate translation: “The people of the islands are terrified” (See: Metonymy)

you are no longer in your place

The destruction of Tyre is spoken of as if it was a person who had died. Alternate translation: “you have departed” or “you exist no more” (See: Personification)
Ezekiel 26:19

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

When I make you
The word “you” here refers to the city of Tyre. In the original language “you” here is feminine singular.

When I make you a desolate city, like the other cities that are not inhabited
Here Tyre is compared to other cities that no longer had people living in them. (See: [Simile](https://www.biblehub.com/isaiah/26-19.htm))

defs
Here “the deeps” means the deep waters of the sea. Alternate translation: “the deep waters” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](https://www.biblehub.com/isaiah/26-19.htm))

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 26:20

then I will bring you down to the people of ancient times, like the others who have gone down into the pit; for I will make you live in the lowest realms of the earth as in ruins of ancient times

What Yahweh would do to Tyre is compared to people going to the grave and cities falling into ruin. (See: Personification and Simile)

the pit

This refers to the grave. Because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. (See: Metonymy)

stand in the land of the living

This represents being restored to the city's former existence. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• people, people group,
Ezekiel 26:21

I will place disaster on you

The abstract noun “disaster” can be translated using the adjective “terrible” or the verb “destroy.” Alternate translation: “I will bring you to a terrible end” or “I will destroy you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- seek, search, look for

ULT

21 I will place disaster on you, and you will be no more forever. Then you will be sought, but you will never be found ever again—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

26:20 [1] The expression and stand in the land of the living is supplied by an ancient version. The Hebrew has I will place glory in the land of the living, which does not seem to fit the context here.

UST

21 I will cause them to die in a horrible way, and that will be the end of them. People will search for that city, but it will no longer exist.” This is what the Lord Yahweh declares will happen.
Ezekiel 27

Ezekiel 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Tyre continues in this chapter. Tyre has become wealthy from trade as far as Spain, but Tyre will be destroyed. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Tyre is compared to a ship built with the very best materials. Despite its strength and power, Yahweh will destroy it. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 27:1

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 27:2

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

begin a lamentation

The abstract noun “lamentation” can be translated using the verb “lament.” Alternate translation: “begin to lament” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Tyre, Tyrians

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Tyre, Tyrians
Ezekiel 27:3

say to Tyre

Here the word “Tyre” represents the people living in Tyre. Alternate translation: “say to the people of Tyre” (See: Metonymy)

who lives within the gates of the sea

“who lives at the gates of the sea” or “who lives at the entry to the sea"

Tyre, you have said

Here the word “Tyre” represents the people living in Tyre. Alternate translation: “People of Tyre, you have said” (See: Metonymy)

I am perfect in beauty

The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful.” Alternate translation: “I am perfectly beautiful” or “I am entirely beautiful” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Tyre, Tyrians
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Tyre, Tyrians
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 27:4

General Information:

“Your” and “you” in these verses refer to Tyre. The city of Tyre is described here and in the following verses as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: Metaphor)

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Your borders

“Your boundaries”

heart of the seas

“middle of the seas”

Translation Words - ULT

• heart

Translation Words - UST

• heart
Ezekiel 27:5

planks
long, flat pieces of wood; thick boards

a mast
a large pole on a ship that holds up the sails of the ship

Translation Words - ULT
• cedar, cedarwood

Translation Words - UST
• cedar, cedarwood
Ezekiel 27:6

General Information:

“They” in these verses refers to the builders of Tyre. “Your” refers to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: Metaphor)

**oars**

long pieces of wood with flat blades at one end that people use to make a boat move

**decks**

the parts of the boat that people can walk on

**overlaid them**

“covered them”

**ivory**

a white, beautiful, and hard material that is made from the long teeth of some animals

ULT

6 They made your oars from the oaks of Bashan; they made your decks out of cypress wood from Cyprus, and they overlaid them with ivory.

UST

6 You carved oars from oak trees from the region of Bashan. You made the deck from cypress wood from the island of Cyprus, and you covered the decks with ivory.
Ezekiel 27:7

sails
large pieces of cloth that move a ship when the wind blows on them

Your sails were made from colorful linen from Egypt that served as your banner; the colors of blue and purple from the coasts of Elishah are used for the awning on your boat.

The sails of the ship are compared to the banners or flags of Tyre. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- purple

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- purple

ULT
7 Your sails were made from colorful linen from Egypt that served as your banner; the colors of blue and purple from the coasts of Elishah are used for the awning on your boat.

UST
7 You made the sails from fine embroidered linen from Egypt; those sails were like flags that people could see far away.
Ezekiel 27:8

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: Metaphor)

**Arvad**

This is the name of a small island off the coast of Syria. (See: How to Translate Names)

**sages of Tyre**

“wise men of Tyre”

**pilots**

A pilot is a person who controls where a ship goes by steering the ship.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Tyre, Tyrians
- wise men, advisor

**Translation Words - UST**

- Tyre, Tyrians
- wise men, advisor
Ezekiel 27:9

Byblos

This is the name of a city on the Syrian coast. Other versions call it by the name “Gebal.” (See: How to Translate Names and Textual Variants)

filled your seams

“repaired your cracks” or “repaired your leaks”

sailors

A sailor is one of the team of workers on a ship.

Translation Words - ULT

- elder, older, old
- strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST

- elder, older, old
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

9 Highly experienced craftsmen from Byblos filled your seams; all the ships of the sea and their sailors among you were carrying your merchandise for trade.

UST

9 Experienced craftsmen from Gebal were on board. They caulked the seams of your ships. Sailors from many countries came in their ships to buy and sell goods with you.
Ezekiel 27:10

General Information:
The words "you" and "your" in these verses refer to Tyre.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Persia, Lydia...Libya
These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

your men of war
"men who fought in your wars" or "serving as your warriors"

your splendor
The abstract noun "splendor" can be translated using the adjective "splendid." Alternate translation: "how splendid you were" or "how majestic you were" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- Persia, Persians
- hang, hung

Translation Words - UST

- Persia, Persians
- hang, hung
Ezekiel 27:11

Arvad...Helek...Gammad

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

They completed your beauty

The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful.” Alternate translation: “They finished making you beautiful” or “They made you perfectly beautiful” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• hang, hung

Translation Words - UST

• son
• hang, hung

ULT

11 The men of Arvad and Helek in your army were on your walls surrounding you, and the people of Gammad were in your towers. They hung up their shields on your walls all around you! They completed your beauty.

UST

11 Men from the cities of Arvad and Helek were watchmen on your city walls; men from the city of Gammad were in your towers. They also hung their shields on your walls; they also made your city very beautiful.
Ezekiel 27:12

**General Information:**
The word “your” in these verses refers to Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Silver, iron, tin, and lead**
metals that were used during that time period

**your wares**
“the things you offered for sale”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- silver

**Translation Words - UST**
- silver
Ezekiel 27:13

Javan
This is the name of a coastal region also known as Ionia. (See: How to Translate Names)

They handled your merchandise
“They traded for your merchandise”

Translation Words - ULT
• heart
• bronze

Translation Words - UST
• heart
• bronze

ULT
13 Javan, Tubal, and Meshech—they traded slaves and in items made of bronze. They handled your merchandise.

UST
13 Merchants from the regions of Greece, Tubal, and Meshech brought slaves and things made from bronze to trade for things that you had.
Ezekiel 27:14

**General Information:**
The word “your” in these verses refers to Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Beth Togarmah**
the name of a place (See: How to Translate Names)

**stallions**
adult male horses

**Translation Words - ULT**
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

**Translation Words - UST**
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

ULT
14 Beth Togarmah provided horses, stallions, and mules as your merchandise.

UST
14 Men from Beth Togarmah brought work horses, war horses, and mules to trade for things that you had.
Ezekiel 27:15

Rhodes
This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Merchandise was in your hand
Having things in the hands here is probably a metaphor for carrying those things or having them in their possession. Alternate translation: “You owned things that you sold to them” (See: Metonymy)

horn
This refers to the tusks or elongated teeth of certain animals.

ebony
a dark brown to black hardwood that is very dense or heavy

Translation Words - ULT
- son
- restore, restoration
- hand

Translation Words - UST
- son
- restore, restoration
- hand

ULT
15 The men of Rhodes were your traders on many coasts. Merchandise was in your hand; they sent back horn, ivory, and ebony as tribute!

UST
15 Merchants came to you from the island of Rhodes. People from many nations by the sea traded with you; they brought ivory and valuable black ebony wood to trade for things that you had.
Ezekiel 27:16

**General Information:**

The words "you" and "your" in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Aram was a dealer**

Here "Aram" refers to the people of Aram. Alternate translation: “The people of Aram were dealers” (See: Metonymy)

**emeralds**

An emerald is a type of green precious stone.

**purple**

Here purple cloth or yarn is referred to by just its color. Alternate translation: “purple cloth” or “purple yarn” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

**pearls**

beautiful beads of hard white material that come from creatures in the sea

**rubies**

A ruby is a type of red precious stone.
Ezekiel 27:17

Judah and the land of Israel were trading with you

Here “Judah and the land of Israel” refers to the people of those places. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah and Israel were trading with you” (See: Metonymy)

Minnith

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

cakes

The meaning of the Hebrew word translated here as “cakes” is uncertain. Other versions may translate it as another type of food.

balsam

a sweet-smelling gum or resin that comes from a tree

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 27:18

Helbon...Zahar
names of places (See: How to Translate Names)

enormous wealth
“abundant wealth” or “great wealth”

Translation Words - ULT
• wine, wineskin, new wine

Translation Words - UST
• wine, wineskin, new wine

ULT
18 Damascus was a trader of all your products, of all your enormous wealth, and of the wine of Helbon and the wool of Zahar.

UST
18 Because you had very many things to sell, men from the city of Damascus brought wine from the town of Helbon and white wool from the area of Zahar to trade for many things that you had.
Ezekiel 27:19

**General Information:**
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Dan...Javan...Izal**
These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Dan and Javan**
This is a metonym for the people of Dan and Javan. Alternate translation: “The people of Dan and Javan” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**wrought iron**
a form of iron that can be shaped with a hammer

**cinnamon**
This is a type of spice that comes from the bark of a tree. “Cassia” is another name for this spice. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**calamus**
a type of grass that people used as perfume and for medicine (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
Ezekiel 27:20

Dedan was

This is a metonym for the people of Dedan. Alternate translation: “The people of Dedan were” (See: Metonymy)

saddle blankets

A saddle blanket is a piece of cloth that people place on a horse beneath a saddle or seat.

ULT
20 Dedan was your dealer in fine saddle blankets.

UST
20 Merchants came from Dedan in southern Edom bringing saddle blankets to trade for things that you had.
Ezekiel 27:21

Arabia…Kedar

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Arabia

This is a metonym for the people of Arabia. Alternate translation: “The people of Arabia“ or “The Arabians“ (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT

21 Arabia and all the chiefs of Kedar were traders with you; they provided you with lambs, rams and goats.

UST

21 Men from Arabia and all the rulers of the region of Kedar sent merchants to trade lambs and rams and male goats for things that you had.
Ezekiel 27:22

**General Information:**
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Sheba...Raamah**
These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**precious gems**
“valuable stones”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- head
- gold, golden

**Translation Words - UST**
- head
- gold, golden
Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad.

This refers to the people from these places. Alternate translation: “The people of Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with the people of Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad” (See: Metonymy)

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - UST

• Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
Ezekiel 27:24

**General Information:**
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**These were your dealers**
“They traded with you”

**ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors**
“purple robes with many different colors”

**blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth**
“blankets with many colors that had designs and were of high quality”

**ULT**
24 These were your dealers in ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors, and in blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth in your marketplaces.

**UST**
24 They brought beautiful things to trade with you: Blue cloth, embroidered cloth, and rugs of many colors that were rolled up and tied with ropes.
Ezekiel 27:25

The ships of Tarshish were the transporters of your merchandise

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The ships of Tarshish carried your merchandise” (See: Active or Passive)

you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo

Tyre’s abundance is spoken of as if it was a ship that was full of cargo. (See: Metaphor)

heart of the seas

“middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:4.

Translation Words - ULT

• heart

Translation Words - UST

• heart

ULT
25 The ships of Tarshish were the transporters of your merchandise! So you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo in the heart of the seas!

UST
25 Cargo ships from Tarshish carried all those things that you sold; the warehouses on your island were full of all those things and brought you great honor.
Ezekiel 27:26

General Information:
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre. The city of Tyre is described here and in the following verses as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: Metaphor)

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

Your rowers
“The people that row you”

vast seas
“great waters”

the eastern wind
“the strong wind from the east”

middle of them
“heart of the seas” or “middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:4.

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 27:27

sailors
men who sail boats

depths of the sea
“heart of the seas” or “middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:4.

on the day of your destruction
The abstract noun “destruction” can be translated using the verb “destroy.” Alternate translation: “at the time you are destroyed” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
• heart
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• strength, strengthen, strong

Translation Words - UST
• heart
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• strength, strengthen, strong
Ezekiel 27:28

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: Metaphor)

Cities at the sea will tremble

Here “Cities at the sea” represents the people in those cities. Alternate translation: “The people of the cities by the sea will tremble” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- tremble, stagger

Translation Words - UST

- tremble, stagger
Ezekiel 27:29

All those who handle oars

“All the rowers”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

29 All those who handle oars will come down from their ships; mariners and all the pilots on the sea will stand on the land.

UST

29 All the men who pulled the oars will leave the ships; the sailors and pilots will come to the shore and stand on the beach.
Ezekiel 27:30

wail bitterly
“cry out sadly”

they will cast dust up on their heads. They will roll about in ashes

These are expressions of grieving and mourning. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• voice
• head
• cry, cry out, outcry

Translation Words - UST

• voice
• head
• cry, cry out, outcry
Ezekiel 27:31

General Information:

The word “they” in these verses refer to the people mentioned in verses 28 and 29. The words “you” and “your” refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: Metaphor)

They will shave their heads bald for you and bind themselves with sackcloth

These are expressions of grieving and mourning. (See: Symbolic Action)

bald
having no hair on the head

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• sackcloth

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• sackcloth
They will lift up their wails of lamentation

The abstract noun “lamentation” can be translated using the verb “lament.” Alternate translation: “They will cry out and lament” (See: Abstract Nouns)

sing dirges

“sing funeral songs”

Who is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea?

This question expects a negative answer and emphasizes Tyre being different from all other cities. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: “No other city is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

who has now been brought to silence

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “who its enemies have now silenced” (See: Active or Passive)
Ezekiel 27:33

When your merchandise went ashore

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “When people brought your merchandise ashore” (See: Active or Passive)

ashore
“onto the land”

you enriched the kings of the earth
“you made the kings of the earth rich”

Translation Words - ULT
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 27:34

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: Metaphor)

**when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters**

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “when the seas, the deep waters, shattered you” (See: Active or Passive)

**shattered**

To “shatter” is to break up into pieces.

**crew**

team of workers

**Translation Words - ULT**

- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

**Translation Words - UST**

- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT

34 But when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters, your merchandise and all your crew sank!

UST

34 But now your city is like a ship wrecked in the sea; and everything in it is broken, and it is now at the bottom of the sea. All of your cargo and your sailors have sunk to the bottom of the sea.
Ezekiel 27:35

were appalled at you
“were shocked and terrified by what happened to you”

their kings shuddered in horror
The abstract noun "horror" can be translated using the adverb “fearfully.” Alternate translation: “their kings shuddered fearfully” (See: Abstract Nouns)

shuddered
“shook, trembled with fear”

Their faces trembled
Here “faces” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “They appear to be trembling” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
  - amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
  - face, facial

Translation Words - UST
  - amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
  - face, facial
Ezekiel 27:36

**hiss at you**

Hissing was making a whistling sound through the teeth. It may have been out of dismay, grief, or surprise. (See: Symbolic Action)

**you have become a horror**

The abstract noun “horror” can be translated using the adjective “dreadful.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you have become dreadful” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- people, people group,

**Translation Words - UST**

- people, people group,
Ezekiel 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Tyre concludes in this chapter. Tyre will be destroyed because of its pride and unfair business practices. (See: *prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess*)
Ezekiel 28:1

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 28:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Your heart is arrogant

Here “heart” represents the will or thoughts of the ruler of Tyre. Alternate translation: “You are arrogant” (See: Metonymy)

arrogant

falsely believing oneself to be important

I will sit in the seat of the gods

“I will sit on the throne of the gods.” Here sitting in the seat of the gods represents claiming to be in the same exalted position as if he were one of the gods. (See: Metaphor)

heart of the seas

“middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:4.

you make your heart like the heart of a god

Here “heart” represents the mind or thinking. A god thinks of himself as better than people. Alternate translation: “you think that you have the mind of a god” or “you have allowed yourself to think that you are better than other people” (See: Metonymy and Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- God
- heart
- Tyre, Tyrians

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- God
- heart
• heart
• Tyre, Tyrians
Ezekiel 28:3

you think that you are wiser than Daniel

Here the ruler of Tyre compares himself to Daniel the prophet in how wise he thought he was. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• wise men, advisor

Translation Words - UST

• wise men, advisor

ULT

3 you think that you are wiser than Daniel, and that no secret amazes you!

UST

3 You think that you are wiser than Daniel was, and you think that you can understand every secret.
Ezekiel 28:4

General Information:
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the ruler of Tyre.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

You have made yourself wealthy with wisdom and skill
The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “skill” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “skillful.” Alternate translation: “You have become wealthy by your own wisdom and skill” or “You have become wealthy by being wise and skillful” (See: Reflexive Pronouns and Abstract Nouns)

obtained gold and silver
“stored up gold and silver”

treasuries
places to store valuable objects and keep them safe

Translation Words - ULT

• silver
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
• gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

• silver
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
• gold, golden
Ezekiel 28:5

By great wisdom and by your trading, you have multiplied your wealth, so your heart is arrogant because of your wealth.

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “wealth” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “wealthy.” Alternate translation: “By being very wise and by your trading, you have become more and more wealthy, so your heart is arrogant because of how wealthy you are” (See: Abstract Nouns)

your heart is arrogant

Here “heart” represents the will or thoughts of the ruler of Tyre. Alternate translation: “you are arrogant” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST

• heart
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
Ezekiel 28:6

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the ruler of Tyre.

**Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

**you have made your heart like the heart of a god**

Here “heart” represents the mind or thinking. A god thinks of himself as better than people. See how you translated the similar phrase in Ezekiel 28:2. (See: Metonymy and Simile)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- heart

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- heart
Ezekiel 28:7

the beauty of your wisdom

The abstract nouns “beauty” and “wisdom” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful” and the adverb “wisely.” Alternate translation: “the beautiful things that you have so wisely made” (See: Abstract Nouns)

profane your splendor

The abstract noun “splendor” can be translated using the adjective “splendid.” Alternate translation: “profane how splendid you are” or “defile how majestic you are” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• nation
• sword, swordsmen
• profane, profaned

Translation Words - UST

• nation
• sword, swordsmen
• profane, profaned
**Ezekiel 28:8**

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre. The word “They” refers to foreign armies. The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

**down to the pit**

Here “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Alternate translation: “down to the grave” (See: Metonymy)

**in the heart of the seas**

“in the middle of the seas”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heart
- die, dead, deadly, death,

**Translation Words - UST**

- heart
- die, dead, deadly, death,
Ezekiel 28:9

Will you truly say, “I am a god” to the face of one who kills you?

This question expects a negative answer to emphasize the irony when one who claims to be a god is destroyed by men. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You will not say ‘I am a god’ to the face of one who kills you!” (See: Rhetorical Question and Irony)

to the face of

Here the face represents being in the presence of another person. Alternate translation: “in the presence of” or “before” (See: Synecdoche)

in the hand of

Here being in the hand of someone represents being under their control. Alternate translation: “under the control of” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
Ezekiel 28:10

by the hand of foreigners

Here “hand” is a metonym for the actions of the foreigners’ army. Alternate translation: “by an army of foreigners” (See: Metonymy)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- hand
Ezekiel 28:11

The word of Yahweh came again to me, saying,

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came again to” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated similar words in Ezekiel 18:1. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to me a second time. He said,” or “Yahweh spoke this second message to me:“ (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
**Ezekiel 28:12**

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**lift up**

“sing”

**You were the model of perfection**

The abstract nouns “model” and “perfection” can be translated using the words “completely” and “perfect.” Alternate translation: “You were completely perfect” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**full of wisdom and perfect in beauty**

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “beauty” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “beautiful.” Alternate translation: “fully wise and perfectly beautiful” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Tyre, Tyrians
- king, kingdom, kingship

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Tyre, Tyrians
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 28:13

Every precious stone covered you

“You wore every kind of precious stone”

ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl

These are all precious stones of different colors. (See: Translate Unknowns)

settings and mountings

pieces of metal that hold the precious stones

It was on the day you were created that they were prepared

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I prepared them on the day that I created you” (See: Active or Passive)

prepared

“made ready”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

• God
• gold, golden
Ezekiel 28:14

General Information:
The word “you” in these verses refers to the king of Tyre.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

cherub
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:9.

the fiery stones
“the stones of fire.” Possible meanings are 1) a metaphor for the colorful and bright stones mentioned in Ezekiel 28:13 or 2) other fiery stones on the “holy mountain of God” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• God
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• God
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 28:15

from the day you were created until injustice was found within you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “since the day that I created you until I found injustice within you” (See: Active or Passive)

ULT
15 You had integrity in your ways from the day you were created until injustice was found within you.

UST
15 You were completely good in all that you did from the day that you were created, until you started to do wicked things.
Ezekiel 28:16

General Information:
The words "you" and "your" in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

great trade
“large volume of trade”

you were filled with violence
Yahweh speaks of the king of Tyre as if he were a container that was filled up with violence. The king is a synecdoche for himself and his people. The abstract noun “violence” can be translated using the adjective “violent.” Alternate translation: “you and your people became completely violent” or “you and your people were completely violent” (See: Metaphor and Synecdoche and Abstract Nouns)

guardian cherub
“guarding cherub”

the fiery stones
“the stones of fire.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 28:14. Possible meanings are 1) a metaphor for the colorful and bright stones mentioned in Ezekiel 28:13 or 2) other fiery stones on the “holy mountain of God.” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- profane, profaned

Translation Words - UST
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- profane, profaned
Ezekiel 28:17

Your heart was arrogant

Here the “heart” represents the whole person, emphasizing the person’s thoughts. Alternate translation: “You were arrogant” (See: Synecdoche)

arrogant

falsely believing oneself to be important

Your heart was arrogant with your beauty; you ruined your wisdom because of your splendor

The abstract nouns “beauty,” “wisdom” and “splendor” can be translated using the adjectives “beautiful,” “wise” and “splendid.” Alternate translation: “Your heart was arrogant because you were beautiful; you became unwise because you were so splendid” (See: Abstract Nouns)

before kings

“in front of kings”

so they may see you

“so they may look at you”

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 28:18

General Information:
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

it will consume you

“it will devour you.” The fire is spoken of here as if it was eating him up. Alternate translation: “it will burn you up” (See: Idiom)

turn you into ashes

This idiom means burning up until only ashes are left. Alternate translation: “burn you up to ashes” or “burn you up completely” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- iniquity
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- iniquity
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 28:19

shudder

shake or tremble with fear

you will be no more forever

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:36.

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled,
  marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

19 All the ones who knew you among the peoples will shudder at you; they will be horrified, and you will be no more forever.”

UST

19 All the people who knew what your city was like previously will be appalled. Now your city will disappear, and it will not exist anymore.”
Ezekiel 28:20

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 28:21

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

set your face against Sidon

Sidon was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 6:2. Alternate translation: “Turn toward Sidon and stare” or “stare toward Sidon so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

prophesy against

“prophesy about the bad things that will happen to.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 4:7.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial
Ezekiel 28:22

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I will be glorified in your midst

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will reveal my glory among you” (See: Active or Passive)

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

when I execute justice within you

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated using the verb “judge.” Alternate translation: “when I judge you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

I will be shown to be holy in you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will use you to show you that I am holy” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• set apart
• Yahweh
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• set apart
• Yahweh
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 28:23

General Information:
The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Sidon.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Sidon.

blood in your streets
Here “blood” refers to the blood of the people of Sidon and represents those whom their enemies would kill. (See: Metaphor)

the slain will fall
Here “the slain” means the people of Sidon whom their enemies would kill. Alternate translation: “the slain people will fall” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

When the sword comes against you
Here “sword” is a metonym for an attacking enemy army. Alternate translation: “When enemy armies attack you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
- sword, swordsmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 28:24

pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people

Here the briars and thorns represent what would cause suffering and pain. Alternate translation: “people anywhere around the house of Israel who wound them like briars, hurt them like thorns, and despise them” (See: Metaphor)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel’s descendants. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

24 Then there will no longer be pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people, so they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!

UST

24 No longer will people who live near the people of Israel hurt them as painful briers and sharp thorns hurt people. And then the Israelites will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 28:25

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel’s descendants. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

among whom they were scattered

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “among whom I scattered them” (See: Active or Passive)

so the nations may see

“in such a way as the nations will see it”

my servant Jacob

Here “Jacob” represents the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “the descendants of my servant Jacob” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- set apart
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- nation
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- set apart
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- nation
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

25 The Lord Yahweh says this, ‘When I gather the house of Israel from the peoples among whom they were scattered, and when I am set apart among them, so the nations may see, then they will make their homes in the land I will give to my servant Jacob.

UST

25 And this is also what Yahweh the Lord says: “I will gather them from distant countries where I have scattered them. And the other people groups will see that I am set apart and honored, when the house of Israel makes their homes in the land I gave my servant Jacob!”
Ezekiel 28:26

within her  
"in the land"

when I execute justice on all

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated using the verb “judge.” Alternate translation: “when I judge all” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• Yahweh
• vineyard
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• God
• Yahweh
• vineyard
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
26 Then they will live securely within her and build houses, plant vineyards, and live securely when I execute justice on all the ones who now despise them from all around; so they will know that I am Yahweh their God!”

UST
26 My people will live safely in Israel; they will build houses and plant vineyards. And when I punish the nearby people groups that despised them, my people will know that it is I, Yahweh their God, who has done this.”
Ezekiel 29

Ezekiel 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a prophecy against Egypt and its king, Pharaoh. Because Egypt did not fulfill its promise of protecting Judah, it will be conquered by Babylon. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and fulfill, fulfilled, carried out and promise, promised)
The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, “In the tenth year, in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, "In the tenth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)."

Almost ten years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the twelfth day of the tenth month of that year, Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, "Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words" (See: Idiom)."
Ezekiel 29:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

set your face against Pharaoh

This is a command to stare at Pharaoh as a symbol of punishing him and his people. Pharaoh was far away, so Ezekiel could not see him, but staring in his direction would be a symbol of harming him and his people. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 6:2. Alternate translation: “turn toward Pharaoh and stare” or “stare toward Pharaoh so that he and his people will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

prophesy against him and against all of Egypt

“tell the terrible things that will happen to him and everyone in Egypt”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 29:3

the great sea monster

“the huge creature that lives in the water.” Yahweh calls Pharaoh a monster that lives in the water. The monster is probably a crocodile. (See: Symbolic Language)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
3 Declare and say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Pharaoh, king of Egypt. You, the great sea monster that lurks in the midst of the river, that says, “My river is my own. I have made it for myself.”

UST
3 Give the king this message from me, for I am Yahweh the Lord: ‘Know this, Pharaoh, king of Egypt that I, Yahweh, am your enemy. You are like a great monster that lies in the streams of the Nile River. You are so bold to say that the Nile River is yours, and that you made it for yourself.”
Ezekiel 29:4

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh, speaking of him as though he were a monster in the water and the people of Egypt were fish. (See: Symbolic Language)

hooks
sharp and bent pieces of metal or wood that people use to catch fish and other animals in the water

scales
hard pieces of skin that are on fish, crocodiles, and other animals

ULT
4 For I will place hooks in your jaw, and the fish of your Nile will cling to your scales; I will lift you up from the middle of your river along with all the fish of the river that cling to your scales.

UST
4 But it will be as though I will put hooks in your jaws and drag you out onto the land, with fish sticking to your scales.
Ezekiel 29:5

You will not be gathered nor lifted up

This can be stated in active form. The implication is that they would die in the wilderness. Alternate translation: “no one will gather you or pick you up” or “no one will gather your bodies and bury you” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

5 I will throw you down into the wilderness, you and all the fish from your river. You will fall on the open field; you will not be gathered nor lifted up. I will give you as food to the living things of the earth and to the birds of the heavens.

UST

5 I will leave you and all those fish to die in the desert; you will fall to the ground, and no one will pick up your corpse to bury you, because I declare that your body will be food for the wild animals and birds.
Ezekiel 29:6

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they have been a reed stalk

The word “they” refers to the inhabitants of Egypt. A reed stalk is unreliable because it is easily broken. Yahweh speaks of them as a reed stalk because the people of Israel relied on the Egyptians to help them in war, but the Egyptians did not help them. Alternate translation: “they have been as unreliable as a reed stalk” (See: Metaphor)

reed

a plant that grows near water and looks like very large grass

stalk

the part of a reed that is long and like a thick stick. People can use them like sticks, but the stalks of reeds are not as strong as wood and can break suddenly.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 29:7

When they took hold of you in their hand

God speaks of Israel relying on Egypt as if they were taking hold of a reed stalk in order to use it as a crutch. Alternate translation: “When they relied on you” (See: Metaphor)

When they took hold of you

The word “they” refers to the Israelites and the word “you” refers to Pharaoh or Pharaoh and Egypt.

you caused their legs to be unsteady

Because Egypt did not help the Israelites, the Israelites could not defend themselves against their enemy, the Babylonians. God speaks of the Israelites being unable to defend themselves as if their legs were unsteady. Alternate translation: “you caused them to be like people whose legs are unsteady” (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 29:8

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” This word adds emphasis to what is said next. This is the Lord's message to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I will bring a sword against you

Here “sword” is a metonym for battle, and “bring a sword against you” is a metaphor for causing an enemy army to come fight against Egypt. Alternate translation: “I will cause your enemies to come fight against you” (See: Metonymy)

I will cut off both man and beast from you

Here “cut off man and beast” is a metaphor for destroying the people and animals. God would do this by causing the enemy army to do it. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• cut off
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• cut off
• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 29:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

9 So the land of Egypt will become desolate and a ruin. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, because the sea monster had said, “The river is mine, for I have made it.”

UST

9 Egypt will become an empty desert. Then the people of Egypt will know that it is I, Yahweh, who has the power to do what he says he will do, and that he will punish the people of Egypt for saying that the Nile River is theirs because they made it.
Ezekiel 29:10

I am against you and against your river

The word “you” refers to Pharaoh. God speaks to Pharaoh as if Pharaoh were a monster in the river.

I will give the land of Egypt over to desolation and waste

“I will put Egypt into the power of desolation and waste.” Desolation and waste are spoken of as if they were people who could be given power over Egypt. Alternate translation: “I will cause Egypt to become a desolate waste” (See: Personification)

you will become a wasteland

Here “you” refers to Pharaoh and represents Egypt, the country he rules over. Alternate translation: “your country will become a wasteland” (See: Metonymy)

from the Migdol to Syene and the borders of Cush

This refers to all of Egypt. Where these places are can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “throughout all of Egypt, from Migdol in the north to Syene in the south and the borders of Cush further south” (See: Merism and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Migdol

This is the name of a place in the far northern part of Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

Syene

This the name of a town in southern Egypt. It is now called Aswan. (See: How to Translate Names)

the borders of Cush

These borders of Cush were south of Syene. Some versions say Sudan or Ethiopia, the modern names of countries south of Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 29:11

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

No man's foot will pass through it
Here “man’s foot” represents people. Alternate translation: “No man will walk through the land of Egypt” (See: Synecdoche)

no wild animal’s foot will pass through it
Here “animal’s foot” represents animals. Alternate translation: “not even a wild animal will walk through it” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
* beast

Translation Words - UST
* beast
Ezekiel 29:12

For I will make the land of Egypt a desolation

The abstract noun “desolation” can be expressed with the adjective “desolate.” Alternate translation: “For I will make the land of Egypt desolate” (See: Abstract Nouns)

I will scatter Egypt among the nations

Here “Egypt” represents the people of Egypt, and “scatter” represents causing them to move to other places. Alternate translation: “I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations” or “I will make the people of Egypt go and live among the nations” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 29:13

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

I will gather Egypt

Here “Egypt” is a metonym for the people of Egypt, and “gather” is a metaphor for causing them to return to Egypt. Alternate translation: “I will cause the people of Egypt to return to Egypt” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

among whom they were scattered

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “among whom I scattered them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 29:14

I will restore the fortunes of Egypt

The phrase “fortunes of Egypt” is a metaphor for the people of Egypt who had been taken away to other countries. Alternate translation: “I will bring back the people of Egypt” (See: Metaphor)

the region of Pathros

the southern part of Egypt between the Delta and the land of Cush. This is also called Upper Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

a lowly kingdom

Here “lowly” represents unimportant. Alternate translation: “an unimportant kingdom” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Egypt, Egyptian
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• earth, earthen, earthly
• earth, earthen, earthly
• return
• return
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• Egypt, Egyptian
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• earth, earthen, earthly
• earth, earthen, earthly
• return
• return
• kingdom
**Ezekiel 29:15**

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

**the lowliest of the kingdoms**

Here “lowliest” represents least important. Alternate translation: “the least important of the kingdoms” (See: Metaphor)

**it will not be lifted up any more among the nations**

Here “be lifted up” represents becoming important. Alternate translation: “it will not become important again among the nations” (See: Metaphor)

**I will diminish them**

“I will make them small.” Here “diminish them” represents making Egypt weak or unimportant. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- nation
- nation

**Translation Words - UST**

- nation
- nation

**ULT**

15 It will be the lowliest of the kingdoms, and it will not be lifted up any more among the nations. I will diminish them so they will no longer rule over nations.

**UST**

15 It will be the least important of all the nations; it will never again be greater than the nearby countries. I will cause Egypt to be very weak, and they will never again rule over other nations.
Ezekiel 29:16

The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence for the house of Israel

The abstract noun “confidence” can be translated with the verbs “trust” or “rely on.” Alternate translation: “The house of Israel will no longer trust in the Egyptians” or “The house of Israel will no longer rely on the Egyptians” (See: Abstract Nouns)

the house of Israel

Here “house” represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

they will be a reminder of the iniquity that Israel committed

How Egypt would be a reminder can be stated clearly. The abstract nouns “reminder” and “iniquity” can be expressed with the verbs “remember” and “sin.” Alternate translation: “when Israel sees what I do to Egypt, Israel will remember how Israel sinned” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Abstract Nouns)

when they turned to Egypt for help

Here “turn...for help” is a metonym for “ask...for help.” Alternate translation: “whenever they asked Egypt to help them” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• iniquity
• Israel, Israelites
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• iniquity
• Israel, Israelites
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 29:17

it came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the twenty-seventh year

This was after King Jehoiachin and the people of Judah were taken as exiles to Babylon. Alternate translation: “in the twenty-seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

on the first of the first month

“on the first day of the first month.” This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the beginning of April. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 29:18

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

to do hard work against Tyre

The kind of hard work they did can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “to work hard at attacking Tyre” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Every head...every shoulder

This refers to the heads and shoulders of the Babylonian soldiers.

Every head was rubbed until it was made bald

Either their helmets or the heavy things they carried on their heads rubbed the hair off their heads.

every shoulder was made raw

Either their armor or the heavy things they carried on their shoulders rubbed the skin off their shoulders. Alternate translation: “every shoulder was rubbed raw” or “every shoulder was rubbed bare”

he and his army received no payment from Tyre

Here “payment” represents the valuable things that Nebuchadnezzar’s army would steal from Tyre as a reward for defeating it. God speaks of these things as if they were what God would pay them for working for him. Alternate translation: “he and his army did not get any valuable things from Tyre as reward” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Tyre, Tyrians
• Nebuchadnezzar
• head
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
• king, kingdom, kingship
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Tyre, Tyrians
• Nebuchadnezzar
• head
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
• king, kingdom, kingship
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
Ezekiel 29:19

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” This word adds emphasis to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon

Yahweh speaks of causing the army of Babylon to defeat Egypt as if God were giving Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar. Alternate translation: “I will cause the army of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, to defeat Egypt” (See: Metaphor)

that will be his army’s wages

God speaks of these things that Nebuchadnezzar’s army would take as if they were what God would pay them for working for him. Alternate translation: “his army will receive those things as if they were payment” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

19 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, and he will take away its wealth, plunder its possessions, and carry off all he finds there; that will be his army’s wages.

UST

19 Therefore, Yahweh the Lord says that he will enable King Nebuchadnezzar’s army to conquer Egypt. They will carry away from there all the valuable things, in order that the king can give them to his soldiers.
Ezekiel 29:20

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

20 I have given him the land of Egypt as the wages for the work they did for me —this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST

20 Yahweh says that he will enable them to conquer Egypt as payment for what they did to Tyre, because Nebuchadnezzar and his army were working for him, doing what he wanted them to do, which was to destroy Tyre.”
Ezekiel 29:21

I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel

An animal horn represents the animal’s strength, so horn is a metonym for strength. God speaks of making Israel strong as if Israel were an animal, and he were to cause its horn to grow. Alternate translation: “I will make the people of Israel strong” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. Here it refers to the people of Israel, the descendants of Jacob whom God called Israel. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

speak in their midst

“speak to them”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

21 On that day I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel, and I make you speak in their midst, so that they will know that I am Yahweh.”

UST

21 Yahweh said to me, “Some day I will make Israel become a mighty nation. When that happens, I will make them listen to what you tell them. Then they will know that all this has happened because I, Yahweh, will have done this.”
Ezekiel 30

Ezekiel 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. Babylon will destroy all the towns of Egypt and their allies will not be able to help them. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
Ezekiel 30:1

General Information:
Ezekiel tells about a message that Yahweh gave him.

The word of Yahweh came
This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
Ezekiel 30:2

Son of man
“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Wail
cry out with grief

Woe is the coming day
This exclamation expresses the fear that people would feel about a certain day when terrible and frightening things will happen. Alternate translation: “Oh that day” or “Oh, what a frightening day is coming” (See: Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
Ezekiel 30:3

The day is near

“That day is soon” or “It will soon be that day”

The day is near for Yahweh

It is implied that on that day, Yahweh will punish people. Alternate translation: “It will soon be the day when Yahweh will punish you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a day of clouds

Dark storm clouds represent danger and fear. Alternate translation: “It will be like a day with dark clouds” or “It will be frightening like a day with dark clouds” (See: Metaphor)

a time of doom for nations

The abstract noun “doom” can be translated with the phrase “terrible things will happen.” Alternate translation: “a time when terrible things will happen to the nations” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- nation
Ezekiel 30:4

General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

Then a sword will come against Egypt

The word “sword” here represents war or an army that attacks. Alternate translation: “There will be war against Egypt” or “An enemy army will attack Egypt” (See: Metonymy)

there will be anguish in Cush

The abstract noun “anguish” can be expressed in terms of how the people feel. Alternate translation: “the people of Cush will be very sad” or “the people of Cush will suffer” (See: Abstract Nouns)

when they take her wealth

“when the attackers take away the wealth of Egypt”

when her foundations are ruined

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “when the attackers destroy the foundations of the buildings in Egypt” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptianmen

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptianmen
Ezekiel 30:5

Cush and Put, Lydia and all Arabia, and Libya

These names refer to the people of these countries. Alternate translation: "The people of Cush and Put, Libya, and all Arabia, and Lydia" (See: Metonymy)

Libya

Libya is a country west of Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

Lydia

This probably refers to the kingdom of Lydia which was in what is now Turkey.

will all fall by the sword

Here the sword represents battle. Alternate translation: "will all die in battle" or "will all die in the war" (See: Metonymy)

will all fall by the sword

The word "all" here is a generalization. It means that many people will die. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- covenant
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- covenant
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 30:6

Yahweh says this

“This is what Yahweh says.” This sentence introduces what the Lord would say.

So the ones

“In this way, the peoples” or “In this manner, the nations”

who support Egypt

“who help Egypt”

will fall

“will die” or “come to ruin”

the pride of her strength will go down

This represents Egypt no longer being proud of their strength. The reason that they will not be proud is that they will no longer be strong. Alternate translation: “Egypt will no longer be proud about being strong” or “Egypt will no longer have the strength that they were so proud of” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

From Migdol to Syene

Ezekiel names towns on the borders of Egypt in order to refer to all of Egypt. Alternate translation: “In all of Egypt” or “From the northern border of Egypt to the southern border of Egypt” (See: Merism)

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- sword, swordsmen
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- sword, swordsmen
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 30:7

They will be appalled in the midst of the abandoned lands

“The soldiers of the allies of Egypt will be appalled when they are left surrounded by nothing but abandoned lands”

in the midst of

“among” or “surrounded by”

their cities will be among all the ruined cities

Being “among” the ruined cities represents being ruined like the ruined cities of other countries. Alternate translation: “their cities will be ruined like the cities of other countries” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 30:8

**General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words about Egypt.

**Then they**

Possible meanings are 1) “Then people” or 2) “Then the Egyptians.”

**they will know that I am Yahweh**

Yahweh is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated as similar phrase in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “they will understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “they will realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**when I set fire in Egypt**

Here “set fire in Egypt” represents sending an army to attack Egypt and set fires. Alternate translation: “when I send an army to burn Egypt with fire” (See: Metonymy)

**all of her helpers are destroyed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I destroy all of the allies of Egypt” or “when armies destroy all of those who help Egypt” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
**Ezekiel 30:9**

**ULT**

9 In that day messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush, and there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom. For behold! It is coming.

**UST**

9 At that time, I will send messengers to go swiftly up the Nile River in boats to terrify the people of Cush, who still think they are safe. They will be horrified when they hear that Egypt has been destroyed. This will soon happen!

**messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush**

Messengers will bring the news of Egypt's destruction to Cush, who will be frightened by the news.

**to terrorize a secure Cush**

“in order to frighten Cush, who now feels safe from danger”

**there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom**

The abstract noun "anguish" and "doom" can be translated with the words “suffer” and “punish.” Alternate translation: “the people of Cush will also suffer when I punish Egypt” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**behold!**

The word “behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “indeed!”

**It is coming**

“It" refers to the “great pain” or “great sorrow” that Cush will have when they are punished along with Egypt.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- messenger
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- messenger
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 30:10

The Lord Yahweh says this

The word “this” refers to what follows. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:5.

I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt

“I will make it so that Egypt will no longer have many people.”

by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar

Here “the hand” represents Nebuchadnezzar’s military power. Nebuchadnezzar will be the one who brings this punishment about.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Egypt, Egyptian
• Nebuchadnezzar
• hand
• king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
• Egypt, Egyptian
• Nebuchadnezzar
• hand
• king, kingdom, kingship

ULT
10 The Lord Yahweh says this: I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon.

UST
10 This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: By the power of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon I will destroy very many people in Egypt.
Ezekiel 30:11

He and his army with him...will be brought to destroy the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will bring Nebuchadnezzar and his army...to destroy the land” (See: Active or Passive)

He and his army...will be brought to destroy the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will cause him and his army...to go destroy the land of Egypt” (See: Active or Passive)

He and his army with him, the terror of nations

Yahweh calls Nebuchadnezzar “the terror of the nations” because all of the nations are greatly afraid of his army. Alternate translation: “He and his army with him, the one who terrifies many nations” (See: Abstract Nouns)

they will draw out their swords against Egypt

Here “draw out their swords” represents fighting with their swords. Alternate translation: “they will use their swords and fight against Egypt” (See: Metonymy)

fill the land with those who have been killed

This is an exaggeration to show that the Babylonians will kill very many Egyptians. There will be so many dead Egyptians that it will seem that their dead bodies cover all of the land of Egypt. Alternate translation: “kill so many people that it will seem like dead bodies are everywhere” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- nation
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- nation
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 30:12

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

**I will make the rivers into dry ground**
“I will dry up the rivers of Egypt”

**I will sell the land into the hand of wicked men**
Yahweh will give the Babylonians control over Egypt just as a person who sells something gives the one who buys it control over that thing. Alternate translation: “I will give control of the land to wicked men” (See: Metaphor)

**its fullness**
“everything in the land”

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- hand (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- hand (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 30:13

The Lord Yahweh says this

The word “this” refers to what follows. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:5.

I will bring an end to the worthless idols

“I will destroy the worthless idols”

Memphis

Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. It was near modern-day Cairo. (See: How to Translate Names)

a prince in the land of Egypt

“an important ruler in the land of Egypt”

I will put terror on the land of Egypt

Here “put terror on the land” represents causing the people of the land to be very afraid. Alternate translation: “I will make the people of Egypt very afraid” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear, afraid, dread
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Egypt, Egyptian
• destroy, destruction, annihilate

Translation Words - UST

• fear, afraid, dread
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Egypt, Egyptian
• destroy, destruction, annihilate
Ezekiel 30:14

Pathros
This was a region in southern Egypt.

set fire in Zoan
“I will burn Zoan with fire”

Zoan
Zoan was another important city in Egypt.

I will execute acts of judgment on Thebes

The phrase “acts of judgment” refers to punishment. Alternate translation: “I will punish Thebes“ (See: Abstract Nouns)

Thebes
This was the capital city of southern Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 30:15

**General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words about Egypt.

**For I will pour out my fury on Pelusium**

Here “pour out my fury” represents punishing the people because of his great anger. Alternate translation: “For I will act in great anger against Pelusium” or “Because I am so angry, I will punish Pelusium severely” (See: Metaphor)

**Pelusium**

Pelusium is the name of a fortress in northern Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

**cut off the multitude of Thebes**

Here “cut off” represents killing the people. Alternate translation: “kill the very large number of people in Thebes” (See: Metaphor)

**Thebes**

This was the capital city of southern Egypt. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:14.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- wrath, fury
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cut off

**Translation Words - UST**

- wrath, fury
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cut off
Ezekiel 30:16

Then I will set fire in Egypt

Here “set fire” is an idiom meaning “start a fire.” Alternate translation: “I will start a fire in Egypt” (See: Idiom)

Pelusium will be in great agony

Here “Pelusium” is a metonym for the people of the city near Pelusium, and “be in great agony” can be translated with the verb “suffer.” Alternate translation: “The people of Pelusium will suffer terribly” or “The people of Pelusium will feel terrible pain” (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns)

Thebes will be broken up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “enemies will break up the walls and buildings in Thebes” or “enemies will destroy the Thebes” (See: Active or Passive)

Memphis will face enemies every day

Here “face enemies” represents seeing or having enemies. The name of the city is a metonym for the people who live in the city. Alternate translation: “The people of Memphis will have enemies every day” or “Enemies will fight against the people of Memphis every day” (See: Metonymy)

Memphis

Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 30:13.

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- adversary, enemy
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- adversary, enemy
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 30:17

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

Heliopolis and Bubastis
These were cities in northern Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

will fall by the sword
The word “sword” is used here to refer to a battle or war. Alternate translation: “will die in battle” or “will die in the war” (See: Metonymy)

their cities will go into captivity
Here “cities” represents the people of the cities. The abstract noun “captivity” can be expressed with the more concrete noun “captive” or the verb “capture” Alternate translation: “the people of their cities will become captives” or “their enemies will capture their people and take them away” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- sword, swordsmen
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- sword, swordsmen
- walk, walked
Ezekiel 30:18

Tahpanhes

This was an important city in northern Egypt.

the day will hold back its light

The day is spoken of as if it were able to keep its own light from shining. Alternate translation: “the day will be dark” (See: Personification)

when I break the yoke of Egypt there

The word “yoke” here refers to Egypt's power to oppress people. Alternate translation: “when I stop Egypt from oppressing people” or “when I end Egypt's power to cruelly control other nations” (See: Metaphor)

the pride of her strength will be finished

This represents Egypt no longer being proud of their strength. The reason that they will not be proud is that they will no longer be strong. Alternate translation: “Egypt will no longer be proud about being strong” or “Egypt will no longer have the strength that they were so proud of” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

There will be a cloud covering her

Possible meanings are 1) the dark cloud represents how sad the people of Egypt will feel. Alternate translation: “It will be as if there is a cloud over Egypt” or 2) there will be a cloud of dust over Egypt from everything that is destroyed. Alternate translation: “A cloud of dust will be over Egypt” (See: Metaphor)

her daughters

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the Egyptian towns or 2) the daughters of the Egyptian people

Translation Words - ULT

• Egypt, Egyptian
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• Egypt, Egyptian
• captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
• walk, walked
Ezekiel 30:19

I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt

The phrase “acts of judgment” refers to punishment. Alternate translation: “I will punish Egypt in many ways” (See: Abstract Nouns)

so they

“so the Egyptians”

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• Egypt, Egyptian
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• Egypt, Egyptian
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
19 I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt, so they will know that I am Yahweh.”

UST
19 That is how I will punish Egypt, and people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 30:20

General Information:

God speaks of making Pharaoh's army weak as if he were to break Pharaoh's arm, and of the army not being able to become strong again as if Pharaoh's arm could not be healed. (See: Parables)

Then it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

in the eleventh year

This is the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 26:1.

in the first month, in the seventh day of the month

“This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 30:21

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

I have broken the arm of Pharaoh

Here “arm” represents the powerful army of a king. (See: Parables and Metaphor)

Behold

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

It has not been bound up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one has bound up his arm” or “No one has wrapped up his arm” (See: Active or Passive)

or set to heal with a bandage

Here “set to heal with a bandage” refers to the arm being wrapped tightly in a bandage so that the parts of the bone will stay together and heal.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 30:22

General Information:
God continues speaking of Pharaoh's army as if it were a broken arm. He also speaks of strengthening the army of Babylon as if it were the arms of the king of Babylon. (See: Parables)

the Lord Yahweh says this
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:11.

both the strong one and the broken one
“both the arm that is healthy and the arm that is already broken”

I will make the sword fall from his hand
“I will knock the sword out of Pharaoh's hand”

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Egypt, Egyptian
• might, mighty, mighty works
• hand
• king, kingdom, kingship
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Egypt, Egyptian
• might, mighty, mighty works
• hand
• king, kingdom, kingship
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 30:23

scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated similar phrases in Ezekiel 12:15. (See: Parallelism)

among the lands

“among the places in which people live”

Translation Words - ULT

• Egypt, Egyptian
• nation

Translation Words - UST

• Egypt, Egyptian
• nation
Ezekiel 30:24

I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon

“I will make the arms of the king of Babylon strong”

He will groan before the king of Babylon

“When the king of Babylon comes to attack Egypt, Pharaoh will groan.”

groan

A groan is a noise that people make when they have a lot of pain or are dying.

with the groans of a dying man

“as a man who is dying groans” or “like a man who is dying”

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- hand
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- hand
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 30:25

General Information:

God continues speaking of the armies of Egypt and Babylon as if the armies were the arms of their kings. He also speaks of making the army of Babylon strong to attack others as if he had a sword and put it in the Babylonian king's hand. (See: Parables)

For I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon

Here “arms” are a metonym for the army. Alternate translation: “I will make the army of the king of Babylon strong” (See: Metonymy)

while Pharaoh's arms will fall

Here “Pharaoh's arms” is a metonym for his army, and “will fall” represents being weak. Alternate translation: “but Pharaoh's army will be unable to defeat enemies” (See: Metonymy)

Then they

The word “they” possibly refers to 1) “the Egyptians” or 2) “all people who hear what Yahweh has done.”

for he will attack the land of Egypt with it

“and the king of Babylon will attack the land of Egypt with my sword”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 30:26

scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated similar phrases in Ezekiel 12:15. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
26 So I will scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.”

UST
26 I will scatter the people of Egypt among the nations. And when that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.
Ezekiel 31

Ezekiel 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. God told Egypt to remember what happened to Assyria when it became proud. This same things will now happen to Egypt. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
Ezekiel 31:1

it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the eleventh year

“in year 11.” This means the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 26:1. Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in the third month, on the first day of the month

“on the first day of the third month.” This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. This first day is near the beginning of June on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 31:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

In your greatness, who are you like?

“Who is as great as you are?” Yahweh uses this question to introduce a new topic. Pharaoh thought that his nation was the greatest, but God is about to talk about another great nation. Alternate translation: “You think that there is no country whose power is as great as the power of your country.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 31:3

General Information:

These are God's words to Pharaoh about Assyria. God gives his message in the form of a parable about a great cedar tree. (See: Parables)

Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

Assyria was a cedar

In this parable, God speaks about Assyria as if it were a great tree to emphasize how great and powerful the Assyrians were. This parable continues until 31:9. Alternate translation: “Assyria was like a cedar” (See: Parables)

the branches formed its treetop

“its top was above the branches of the other trees.” Some versions of the Bible translate this as “the top of the tree was in the clouds.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- cedar, cedarwood

Translation Words - UST

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- cedar, cedarwood

ULT

3 Behold! Assyria was a cedar in Lebanon with beautiful branches, giving shade to the forest, and the tallest in height, and the branches formed its treetop.

UST

3 You think that your country is as great as Assyria was. Well, Assyria was like a tall cedar tree in Lebanon; it had big beautiful branches that provided shade for other trees in the forest. It was very tall; and the branches of the tallest trees made a treetop that was a roof over the forest.
Ezekiel 31:4

Many waters made it tall
“Because the cedar had a lot of water, it grew very tall”

the deep waters made it huge
“the water deep in the ground made the cedar grow very big”

for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field
“and streams flowed from the rivers to all the trees of the field”

Translation Words - ULT
• walk, walked
• proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST
• walk, walked
• proud, pride, prideful
Ezekiel 31:5

General Information:
Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.

Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field
“The cedar was taller than any of the other trees of the field”

its branches became very many
“it grew very many branches”

because of many waters as they grew
“because it had a lot of water”

ULT
5 Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field, and its branches became very many; its branches grew long because of many waters as they grew.

UST
5 That huge tree grew very tall, higher than all the other trees around it. Its branches grew very thick and long because of the abundant water at the base of the tree.
Ezekiel 31:6

Every bird of the heavens nested in its branches

“All kinds of birds that fly in the sky made nests in its branches”

while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage

“And all of the creatures that live in the field gave birth under the cedar’s branches”

All of the many nations lived under its shade

“All of the great nations lived in the shade of that tree.” Here “nations” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “The people from all the nations lived in the shade of that tree” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- nation
Ezekiel 31:7

**it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches**

“It was beautiful because it was very big and its branches were very long”

**ULT**
7 For it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches, for its roots were in many waters.

**UST**
7 It was majestic and beautiful; its branches spread out widely because the roots of the tree grew down into the ground where there was a plentiful supply of water.
Ezekiel 31:8

General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

Cedars in the garden of God could not equal it

Since these were God's words to Pharaoh, it can also be translated with the first person. Alternate translation: “The cedar trees in my garden were not as great as that tree” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

the garden of God

This is another way of referring to “the garden of Eden.”

None among the cypress trees matched its branches

Yahweh was comparing how many branches the trees had. Alternate translation: “None of the cypress trees had as many branches as the cedar” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

cypress trees

Cypress trees have very many branches. They can grow very tall. See how you translated “cypress” in Ezekiel 27:5.

The plane tree could not equal its boughs

It was implied Yahweh was comparing the long branches of the cedar tree with the long branches of the plane tree. Alternate translation: “the plane tree did not have branches like the cedar tree” or “no plane tree had branches as long as the branches of the cedar tree” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

plane tree

A plane tree was a large, leafy tree with strong branches. It is similar to a sycamore tree. (See: Translate Unknowns)

was like it in its beauty

“was as beautiful as the cedar tree”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- cedar, cedarwood

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- cedar, cedarwood
Ezekiel 31:9

I made it beautiful with its many branches

“I made the cedar beautiful by giving it many long branches”

envied it

“were jealous of the cedar tree”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• zeal, zealous

Translation Words - UST

• God
• zeal, zealous

ULT

9 I made it beautiful with its many branches and all the trees of Eden that were in the garden of God envied it.

UST

9 Because I caused that tree to become very beautiful because of its magnificent green branches, all the leaders of other countries represented by those other trees in Eden envied the country represented by that tree.’
Ezekiel 31:10

General Information:

Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.

Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this

Since Yahweh is speaking this can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

it set its treetop between its branches

“its top was above the branches of the other trees.” Some versions of the Bible translate this as “the top of the tree was in the clouds.”

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• heart
• exalt, exalted, exaltation

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• heart
• exalt, exalted, exaltation

ULT
10 Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Because it was tall in height, and it set its treetop between its branches, it lifted up its heart because of its height.

UST
10 Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: ‘That tree, which represents Assyria, grew very tall; its top was higher than the other trees, and it became very proud because it was so tall.
Ezekiel 31:11

I have given it into the hand of a mighty one of the nations

The word “hand” represents control. Alternate translation: “I put it in the power of the strongest nation” or “I gave the strongest nation power over it” (See: Metonymy)

I have thrown it out

“I sent the cedar away from the cedar’s land because the cedar was wicked”

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• nation

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• nation
Ezekiel 31:12

**General Information:**

Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.

**who were the terror of all the nations**

The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as “afraid.” And here “nations” represents the people of the nations. Alternate translation: “who made the people of all the nations afraid” (See: Abstract Nouns and Metonymy)

**cut it off**

“cut the cedar down”

**its boughs lay broken**

“the foreigners broke the boughs of the cedar”

**boughs**

Boughs are very large branches that grow on trees. Usually, many smaller branches grow on the boughs.

**came out from under its shade**

“left the shade of the cedar”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- people, people group,
- cut off
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- people, people group,
- cut off
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 31:13

General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

All the birds of the sky

“All the birds that fly in the sky”

rested on the trunk of the fallen tree

“rested on the remains of the cedar”

trunk

The trunk is a very thick part of the tree that comes out of the ground and holds up the rest of the tree.

every animal of the field came to its branches

“the wild animals lived in the branches of the cedar”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
Ezekiel 31:14

that no other trees that grow by the waters

“that no other trees that get a lot of water”

will lift up their foliage to the height of the tallest trees

“will grow taller than the branches of other trees.” Some Bibles translate this as “will set their tops among the clouds.”

that no other trees that grow beside the waters will reach up to that height

“that no other trees that get a lot of water will ever grow that tall again”

All of them have been assigned to death, to the earth below

This can be stated in active form. And the abstract noun “death” can be stated “die.” Alternate translation: “For I made it so that they all will die and go deep under the ground” (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

among the children of humanity, with those that go down to the pit

“to be with those people who have died and gone down to the grave”

the pit

This refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 26:20. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 31:15

General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues. Here, Yahweh speaks about the great sadness caused by the tree being cut down as if even the waters, Lebanon, and the wild trees all mourned for the cedar.

On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol

The phrase "went down to Sheol" means "died." Alternate translation: "On the day that the cedar died" or "On the day that the cedar was chopped down" (See: Idiom)

I brought mourning to the earth

The abstract noun "mourning" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I caused the earth to mourn" (See: Abstract Nouns)

I covered the deep waters over it

The word "covered" possibly refers to putting on clothes for mourning. Alternate translation: "I made the water from the springs mourn for the cedar" or "it was as though the springs that watered it mourned for it" (See: Metaphor)

I held back the ocean waters

"I kept the water in the ocean from watering the earth"

I kept back the great waters

"I made it so that there would not be a lot of water anymore"

I brought mourning to Lebanon for him

The abstract noun "mourning" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I made Lebanon mourn for the cedar" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- mourn, mourner, weeping

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- mourn, mourner, weeping
Ezekiel 31:16

General Information:

Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.

when I threw it down to Sheol with those who went down into the pit

Here “threw it down to Sheol” is an idiom that means to kill. “The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 31:14. Alternate translation: “when I killed the cedar and it went to Sheol with everyone else that is dead” (See: Idiom and Metonymy)

in the lowest parts of the earth

“that were already deep down in the ground.” This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “that had already died and are now in Sheol” (See: Idiom)

the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters

“the best trees of Lebanon that everyone would want; trees that got a lot of water.” This is describing the trees of Eden that were in the lowest parts of the earth.

the choicest

This is something that everyone would want because it is very good.

Translation Words - ULT

- nation
- tremble, stagger

Translation Words - UST

- nation
- tremble, stagger
Ezekiel 31:17

General Information:
Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.

they also went down with it to Sheol
Here “went down...to Sheol” is an idiom that means to die. Alternate translation: “those trees of Lebanon also died and went down to Sheol with the cedar” (See: Idiom)

who had been killed by the sword
Here “sword” represents enemies who fought them in battle. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom enemies had killed with swords” or “who had died in battle” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

These were its strong arm
“These trees of Lebanon were its strong arm.” The phrase “strong arm” represents “power.” Alternate translation: “These trees of Lebanon were the power of the cedar” or “These trees strengthened the cedar” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• nation
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST
• nation
• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 31:18

Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness?

“Which of these trees in Eden had as much glory as you and was as great as you?” God asks Pharaoh this question to show him that the parable applies to him and his country. It can start with “So Pharaoh” or “So Egypt.” Alternate translation: “None of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

For you will be brought down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For I will bring you down” (See: Active or Passive)

with the trees of Eden

“like the other trees of Eden”

to the lowest parts of the earth

“to a place deep in the ground”

among the uncircumcised

“where you will be with people who are not circumcised”

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
• sword, swordsmen
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
• sword, swordsmen
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 32

Ezekiel 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king concludes in this chapter. Egypt will have its army destroyed, just as happened to so many other nations. Beginning in verse 1, the land of Egypt is addressed through Pharaoh, its king, so God refers to Egypt as “he” and “him.” However, beginning in verse 12, Egypt is referred to as “she” and “her,” as if she were a woman. It was common in Hebrew for lands and countries to be referred to as if they were women. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 32:1

Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the twelfth month...on the first of the month

This is the twelfth and final month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of February. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

of the twelfth year

This refers to the twelfth year of the reign of King Jehoiachin. Alternate translation: "of the twelfth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 32:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

lift up

“sing”

You are like a young lion...like a monster in the seas

Possible meanings are 1) he thought he was like a lion, but he was really only a monster, or 2) he was like a lion and a monster.

like a young lion among the nations

Egypt was stronger than other nations, like lions are stronger than other animals. (See: Simile)

like a monster in the seas

Pharaoh was powerful, but he only caused trouble for others, like this monster in the water. (See: Simile)

monster

A monster is an animal that is big and dangerous. This one might be a crocodile. See how you translated this word in Ezekiel 29:3.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 32:3

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to speak of him as if he were a monster, perhaps a crocodile, in the water.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:5.

**So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples**

God's punishment of Pharaoh is spoken of as if the king were the river monster caught in a net. Alternate translation: “So I will gather many peoples and throw my net over you” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT

3 The Lord Yahweh says this: So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples, and they will lift you up in my net.

UST

3 But I, the Lord Yahweh, say to you that I will send many people to throw my net over you, and that they will haul you up onto the land.
Ezekiel 32:4

I will abandon you in the land

“I will leave you helpless on the land.” The monster that was fearsome and powerful when it was in the water cannot do anything when it is left on dry land.

all the birds of the heavens

“all the birds that fly in the sky”

the hunger of all living animals on earth will be satisfied by you

This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: “I will let all the animals of the earth eat your body until they are hungry no longer” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

4 I will abandon you in the land. I will throw you into a field and cause all the birds of the heavens to settle on you; the hunger of all living animals on earth will be satisfied by you.

UST

4 They will throw you into a field, where I will leave you to your fate. I will allow the birds to sit on you, and all the wild animals will eat the flesh of your corpse until their stomachs are full.
Ezekiel 32:5

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to compare him to a monster that lives in the water.

**your worm-filled corpse**
The worms help the dead body to rot. Alternate translation: “your rotting body” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- flesh

**Translation Words - UST**
- flesh

**ULT**
5 For I will put your flesh on the mountains, and I will fill the valleys with your worm-filled corpse.

**UST**
5 I will cause them to scatter your flesh on the hills and fill the valleys with the parts of your rotting body.
Ezekiel 32:6

the stream beds will be filled with your blood

This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: “I will fill the streams with your blood” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

6 Then I will pour your blood over the mountains, and the stream beds will be filled with your blood.

UST

6 I will cause them to fill the land with your blood, and also the mountains; they will fill the ravines with your blood.
Ezekiel 32:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Pharaoh what he will do to Egypt.

when I extinguish you

It was common to speak of a person's life as if it were a lamp that could be put out. Alternate translation: "When I destroy you" (See: Metaphor)

I will cover the heavens

Yahweh speaks of making the stars dark as if he were putting a cover over the sky. Alternate translation: "I will make everything in the sky go dark" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Translation Words - UST

• heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
Ezekiel 32:8

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- darkness
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- darkness
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 32:9

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.

I will terrify the heart of many peoples

Here “heart” represents the people's emotions. Alternate translation: “I will make the hearts of many peoples afraid” or “I will cause many people to be terrified” (See: Metonymy)

in lands that you do not know

The way that Yahweh destroys Egypt will make afraid even people in lands that Pharaoh never knew about.

when I bring about your collapse among the nations

The nation of Egypt, symbolized by its king, is spoken of as if it were a building that was collapsing. Alternate translation: “when nations hear about the way I destroyed you” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- people, people group,
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- people, people group,
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
**Ezekiel 32:10**

**when I swing my sword**

Here swinging a sword represents using the sword. Alternate translation: “when I use my sword” (See: Metonymy)

**Every moment each one will tremble because of you**

Here “tremble” is an action that people often do when they are very afraid. Alternate translation: “Every one of them will keep shaking because of their fear”

**on the day of your downfall**

The idea of falling down (“downfall”) represents dying. Alternate translation: “when I destroy you” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
- face, facial
Ezekiel 32:11

General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.

The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you

Here “sword” represents an army. Alternate translation: “The army of the king of Babylon will attack you” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT 11 For the Lord Yahweh says this: The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you.

UST 11 I, the Lord Yahweh tell you, Egypt, that the swords of the army of the king of Babylon will strike you.
Ezekiel 32:12

each warrior a terror of nations

The abstract noun "terror" can be stated as "terrifies" or "afraid." Alternate translation: “Each warrior terrifies the nations” or “each one of them makes the nations afraid” (See: Abstract Nouns)

will devastate the pride of Egypt

The abstract noun "pride" can be stated as "proud." Alternate translation: “will cause the Egyptians to no longer be proud” (See: Abstract Nouns)

destroy all of its multitudes

Here “all” is probably a generalization that refers to the killing of large numbers of soldiers, and perhaps other people also. Alternate translation: “kill a very large number of people who live in Egypt” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- might, mighty, mighty works
- nation
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- might, mighty, mighty works
- nation
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 32:13

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking.

from beside the plentiful waters
“in the places where there is a lot of water”

the foot of man will no longer stir the waters up
The foot here is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “people will no longer stir the waters up with their feet” (See: Synecdoche)

stir the waters
make clear water muddy

the hooves of cattle stir them
The hoof is a synecdoche for cattle. Alternate translation: “cattle stir them with their hooves” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• beast
• beast
• destroy, destruction, annihilate

Translation Words - UST

• beast
• beast
• destroy, destruction, annihilate
Ezekiel 32:14

Then I will calm their waters

Possible meanings are 1) “I will make the water calm” or 2) “I will make the water clear.” When no one stirs up the water, the dirt settles down and the water becomes clear.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- walk, walked

ULT

14 Then I will calm their waters and make their rivers run like oil— this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

UST

14 Then I will allow the streams in Egypt to become calm again and to flow as smoothly as olive oil flows.” This is what the Lord Yahweh announces.
Ezekiel 32:15

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues speaking.

**When I make the land of Egypt an abandoned place**
This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: “When I make the land of Egypt a place where no one is living” (See: Active or Passive) 

**when the land is made bare of all its fullness**
“when the country is made to lose all its wealth”

**when I attack all the inhabitants in her**
Here the idea of attacking represents destroying. Alternate translation: “when I destroy all who live in her” (See: Metonymy)

**in her**
It was normal in biblical language to represent countries and lands as if they were women. Alternate translation: “in it” (See: Metaphor)

**know that I am Yahweh**
When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
**Ezekiel 32:16**

**over her**

It was normal in biblical language to represent countries and lands as if they were women. Alternate translation: “over it” (See: *Metaphor*)

**the daughters of the nations**

Possible meanings are 1) “the women of other nations” or 2) “people of other nations”

**over Egypt, over all her multitudes**

“about Egypt, about all her multitudes” or “about the disaster that happened to Egypt, about the disaster that happened to all her multitudes”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation

**ULT**

16 There will be a lament; the daughters of the nations will lament over her; they will lament over Egypt, over all her multitudes they will lament—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

**UST**

16 There will be a sad song that people will sing about Egypt. Women of many nations will sing it; they will chant it about Egypt and all its many people.” This will surely happen because Yahweh has said that it would happen.
Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new message. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the twelfth year

Possible meanings are 1) This happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took the Israelites to Babylon or 2) this happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took Jehoiachin to Babylon. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 32:18

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

bring them down—her and the daughters of majestic nations

God is perhaps telling Ezekiel to cause this to happen by giving a prophetic command.

her

Once again, the land of Egypt is referred to as a woman.

the daughters of majestic nations

Possible meanings are 1) “the people of powerful nations” or 2) “other powerful nations.”

the lowest earth

“to the places under the ground.” When people died, they were put in the ground. So “bring them down...to the lowest earth” means “make them die.” (See: Idiom)

with those who have gone down to the pit

“with everyone else who has died and gone into the ground”

the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 31:16. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- noble, nobleman, royal official

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- noble, nobleman, royal official
Ezekiel 32:19

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He speaks of the people of Egypt as if they were a woman. (See: **Metaphor**)

**Are you really more beautiful than anyone else? Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised.**

This is a question and command that the prophet is to ask the Egyptians. Alternate translation: “Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised. Ask them all: ‘Are you really more beautiful than anyone else?’” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

**Go down**

It is implied that they must go down to Sheol. Alternate translation: “Go down to Sheol” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

**lie down**

as in death. If your language has a word for dead people lying down that is different from the word for live people lying down to sleep, use it here.

**Are you really more beautiful than anyone else?**

This question really makes a statement. Alternate translation: “You are not more beautiful than anyone else.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

**Translation Words - UST**

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
They will fall

“Egypt and her people will fall”

who were killed by the sword

The word “sword” is a metonym for a soldier who kills people with a sword. This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: “whom enemy soldiers killed with swords” or “who died in battle” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

The sword has been drawn!

The word “sword” here is a metonym for war that people fight with swords. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “War has begun” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

She has been given to the sword

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “I have given Egypt to the sword” (See: Active or Passive)

they will seize her and her multitudes

“her enemies will seize Egypt and her people”

Translation Words - ULT

- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 32:21

about Egypt and her allies
“about the Egyptians and those who join them”

Translation Words - ULT
- might, mighty, mighty works
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST
- might, mighty, mighty works
- sword, swordsmen

ULT
21 The strongest of the warriors in Sheol will declare about Egypt and her allies, ‘They have come down here! They will lie with the uncircumcised, with those who were killed by the sword.’

UST
21 In the place where the dead people are, mighty leaders of other countries will make fun of you people of Egypt and your allies. They will say that you have come to lie dead with them, those godless people whom their enemies killed.
Ezekiel 32:22

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol. Because what God is showing Ezekiel may be for future time, either the present tense or the future tense is suitable for these verses and the following verses.

Assyria is there with all her assembly

The land of Assyria is represented as a woman. Alternate translation: “The people of Assyria and all its army are there in Sheol” (See: Metaphor)

her assembly

“All her people together”

all of them were killed by the sword

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “Soldiers used swords to kill them all” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• sword, swordsmen
• grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - UST

• Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• sword, swordsmen
• grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
Ezekiel 32:23

are set in the recesses of the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:18. (See: Metonymy)

all of those who were killed, who fell by the sword

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “all those whom enemies killed in battle” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

fell by the sword

The word “fell” here is a euphemism for “died.” (See: Euphemism)

those who brought terror on the land of the living

The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as “afraid.” Alternate translation: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid” (See: Abstract Nouns)

the land of the living

This represents the people who were alive. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sword, swordsman
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sword, swordsman
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
Ezekiel 32:24

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.

Elam is there
Here “Elam” refers to the people of that country. Alternate translation: “The people of Elam are also there in Sheol” (See: Metonymy)

her multitudes
Possible meanings are 1) her many people or 2) her army.

Her graves surround her
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:22.

all of them were killed
This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “Her enemies killed them all” (See: Active or Passive)

Those who fell by the sword
Translate “who fell by the sword” as in Ezekiel 32:23.

by the sword
Here “the sword” is a metonymy for soldiers who use swords to kill people. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: Metonymy)

who have gone down uncircumcised
“who were uncircumcised when they went down”

to the lowest parts of the earth
“to places deep down in the ground” or “to the land deep down in the ground.” See how you translated “in the lowest realms of the earth” in Ezekiel 26:20.

who brought their terrors
The abstract noun “terrors” can be stated as “afraid.” See how you translated “brought terror” in Ezekiel 32:23. Alternate translation: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid” (See: Abstract Nouns)

the land of the living
This represents the people who were alive. See how you translated “the land of the living” in Ezekiel 32:23. (See: Metonymy)
who carry their own shame

Shame is spoken of as if it were an object that one could carry where he goes. Alternate translation: “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced” (See: Metaphor)

the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:23. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 32:25

They set a bedroll for Elam and all her multitudes

Space being made in Sheol for the dead is spoken of as if the dead were given beds to lie on. Alternate translation: “They gave beds to Elam and all its people” (See: Metaphor)

in the midst of the slain

“with all the other people who were killed”

All of them are uncircumcised

The Israelites did not respect people who were not circumcised. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

pierced by the sword, because

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “their enemies have killed them with swords because” (See: Metonymy)

Elam is among all those who were killed

This is very similar to the first part of the verse. Alternate translation: “The dead people gave Elam a place to lie among themselves”

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

25 They set a bedroll for Elam and all her multitudes in the midst of the slain; her graves surround her. All of them are uncircumcised, pierced by the sword, because they had brought their terrors on the land of the living. So they carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit among all those who have been killed, those who are going down to the pit. Elam is among all those who were killed.

UST

25 The people of Elam in their huge numbers will lie there among others who were slaughtered, surrounded by the graves of a huge crowd of other people. While they were alive, they caused people of other nations to be terrified; but they were godless, and now, because their enemies will have killed them, they will lie with others in that deep pit, disgraced.
Ezekiel 32:26

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.

Meshech...Tubal
See how you translated these names in Ezekiel 27:13.

Their graves surround them
See how you translated “her graves surround her” in Ezekiel 32:22.

killed by the sword
Here “the sword” represents warfare. Alternate translation: “killed in battle” (See: Metonymy)

they had brought their terrors on the land of the living
Causing people to fear is spoken of as if it were the act of bringing an object to them. The abstract noun “terrors” can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “they terrified everyone in the land of the living” (See: Abstract Nouns)

All of them...land of the living
See how you translated “All of them...land of the living” in Ezekiel 32:25.

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
Ezekiel 32:27

**their iniquities over their bones**

The warriors' iniquities cover their bodies, although one would expect that their shields would cover them in death. (See: *Metaphor*)

**they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living**

“while they were still alive, they made other warriors very afraid”

**in the land of the living**

The time during which these warriors were living is spoken of as if it were a place. Alternate translation: “while they were alive” (See: *Metaphor*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- iniquity
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- sword, swordsmen

**Translation Words - UST**

- life, live, living, alive
- iniquity
- might, mighty, mighty works
- head
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

27 They do not lie with the fallen warriors of the uncircumcised who have gone down to Sheol with all their weapons of war, and with their swords placed under their heads and their iniquities over their bones. For they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living.

UST

27 They will not lie there beside the uncircumcised warriors who have gone to the grave highly honored with their shields over their bodies and their swords under their heads. While they were alive, they terrified many people on the earth.
Ezekiel 32:28

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking.

you...will be broken

“Broken” here represents “destroyed.” This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “I will destroy you” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

in the midst of

“in the middle of”

those who were pierced

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:25. Alternate translation: “those whose enemies have killed them” (See: Metonymy)

by the sword

This represents being in warfare. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 32:29

Edom is there with her kings and all her leaders

Here “Edom” represents all the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “the people of Edom are in Sheol with their kings and all their leaders” (See: Metonymy)

the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:25. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
Ezekiel 32:30

The princes of the north

“The princes who ruled nations in the north”

are there

“are in Sheol”

went down

“went down to Sheol”

had been pierced

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. See how you translated similar words in Ezekiel 32:25. Alternate translation: “whom enemies had killed with swords” (See: Metonymy)

by the sword

This represents being in warfare. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: Metonymy)

They carry their own shame

Shame is spoken of as if it were an object that one could carry where he goes. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:25. Alternate translation: “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced” (See: Metaphor)

the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:29.

Translation Words - ULT

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 32:31

Pharaoh will look

It can be made explicit who Pharaoh will see. Alternate translation: “Pharaoh will see all the dead people from other nations” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

be comforted about all his multitudes

It is implied that Pharaoh will be comforted because the armies of other great kings also died. Alternate translation: “will comfort himself that he was not the only king whose entire army died” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• prosper, prosperity, prosperous
• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 32:32

I put him as my terrifying one in the land of the living

“While Pharaoh was still alive, I made him to terrify people”

he will be laid down in the midst of the uncircumcised

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “Others will lay him in the midst of the uncircumcised” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

32 I put him as my terrifying one in the land of the living, but he will be laid down in the midst of the uncircumcised, among those pierced by the sword, Pharaoh and all his multitudes—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

32:9 [1] Instead of when I bring about your collapse among the nations , some ancient and modern versions have when I take you into captivity among the nations .

UST

32 While that king was living, I allowed him to terrify others in many countries, but he and his huge army will be there among other godless people whom their enemies have killed.” This will certainly surely happen because the Lord Yahweh has said that it would happen.
Ezekiel 33

Ezekiel 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Repentance

God does not want sinners to die. He wants them to repent and live. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and repent, repentance)
Ezekiel 33:1

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 33:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

a sword against any land

The word “sword” refers to an enemy army that attacks. Also, “land” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “an army to attack the people of any land” (See: Metonymy)

make him a watchman

“appoint him as a guard” or “make him guard”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• son
• people, people group,
• people, people group,
• sword, swordsmen
• earth, earthen, earthly
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• son
• son
• people, people group,
• people, people group,
• sword, swordsmen
• earth, earthen, earthly
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

2 “Son of man, declare this to your people; say to them, ‘When I bring a sword against any land, then the people of that land take one man from among themselves and make him a watchman for them.”

UST

2 “Son of man, speak to your fellow Israelites and say this to them: ‘Suppose that I bring an enemy army to attack a country, and the people of that country choose one of their own people to be a watchman.”
Ezekiel 33:3

He looks for the sword

Here “sword” represents an enemy army. Alternate translation: “He looks for an enemy army” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- people, people group,
- trumpet, trumpeters
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
3 He looks for the sword as it comes on the land, and he blows his horn to warn the people!

UST
3 And suppose that he sees the enemy army come into view, and that he blows a trumpet to warn everyone.
Ezekiel 33:4

**do not pay attention**

“ignore the warning”

**each one’s blood is on his own head**

Here “blood” represents death. The phrase “on his own head” is an idiom that means the person will be held responsible. Alternate translation: “it is their own fault if they die” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- blood
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- trumpet, trumpeters

**Translation Words - UST**

- blood
- head
- sword, swordsmen
- trumpet, trumpeters

ULT

4 If the people hear the sound of the horn but do not pay attention, and if the sword comes and kills them, then each one’s blood is on his own head.

UST

4 If anyone hears the trumpet but pays no attention, and if that person then dies because of the enemy, that person is responsible for his own death.
Ezekiel 33:5

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

his blood is on him
Here “blood” represents a person’s death. The phrase “on him” is an idiom that means that person is considered responsible. Alternate translation: “it will be his own fault that he dies”

save his own life
“will keep himself from dying”

Translation Words - ULT
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- life, live, living, alive
- blood
- trumpet, trumpeters

Translation Words - UST
- save, saved, safe, salvation
- life, live, living, alive
- blood
- trumpet, trumpeters
Ezekiel 33:6

the sword as it is coming

The word “sword” refers to an enemy army. Alternate translation: “the enemy army as it is coming” (See: Metonymy)

with the result that the people are not warned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and he does not warn the people” (See: Active or Passive)

the sword comes and takes anyone’s life

Here “sword” represents an enemy army. Alternate translation: “the enemy army comes and kills anyone” (See: Metonymy)

that person dies in his own sin

“that person dies because of his own sin”

I will require his blood from the watchman

Here “blood” represents a person's death. The phrase “I will require his blood from” is an idiom that means to consider someone responsible. Alternate translation: “I will consider that person's death to be the fault of the watchman” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- hand
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
- trumpet, trumpeters
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- hand
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen
- trumpet, trumpeters
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 33:7

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

the house of Israel
Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

you will hear the words from my mouth and warn them on my behalf
Here “mouth” represents what Yahweh says. Alternate translation: “you will hear the message that I speak and you will warn them on my behalf” (See: Metonymy)

warn them on my behalf
“warn them as my representative” or “give them the warning from me”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• house
Ezekiel 33:8

**do not announce this**

“do not say this”

**about his way**

“the way he acts” or “the things he does.” See how you translated “your ways” in Ezekiel 7:3.

**I will require his blood from your hand**

Here “blood” represents a person’s death. The phrase “require...from your hand” is an idiom that means to consider someone responsible. Alternate translation: “I will consider you responsible for his death” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- hand
- report, reported, reputation
- seek, search, look for

**Translation Words - UST**

- hand
- report, reported, reputation
- seek, search, look for

ULT

8 If I say to a wicked person, ‘Wicked one, you will surely die!’ but if you do not announce this so as to warn the wicked about his way, then he who is wicked will die in his sin, but I will require his blood from your hand!

UST

8 When I say to some wicked person, ‘You wicked person, you will surely die because of your sins,’ you must tell him what I said. If you do not speak to that person to warn him to turn away from his sins, that wicked person will die because of his sins, but I will make you responsible for his death.
Ezekiel 33:9

he might turn back from it, and if he does not turn back from his way

A person no longer behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if he physically turns and goes back on a path. Alternate translation: “he might stop doing bad things, and if he does not stop doing bad things” (See: Metaphor)

will have saved your own life

“will have kept yourself alive”

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration

ULT
9 But you, if you warn the wicked about his way, so that he might turn back from it, and if he does not turn back from his way, then he will die in his sin, but you yourself will have saved your own life.

UST
9 But if you warn that wicked person that he should turn away from his sins, but if he does not do so, then he will die because of his sins, but you will have saved your own life.
Ezekiel 33:10

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

**the house of Israel**
Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

**You are saying this**
“This is what you have said”

**Our transgressions and our sins are on us**
Possible meanings are 1) “on us” is a metaphor that means they feel guilty for their transgressions and sins or 2) “on us” is a metaphor that means they realize that Yahweh is punishing them for their transgressions and sins. (See: Metaphor)

**we are decaying in them**
“we are rotting away because of them.” Being destroyed because of sin is spoken of as if the person’s flesh were rotting. Alternate translation: “they are destroying us” or “they are killing us” (See: Metaphor)

**in them**
“because of them”

**How can we live?**
The people ask this question to emphasize that they have no hope of living. Alternate translation: “We have no hope of living.” or “We will certainly die.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house

**Translation Words - UST**
- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- house
Ezekiel 33:11

I do not delight in the death of the wicked

The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “die.” And the nominal adjective “the wicked” can be stated as “wicked people.” Alternate translation: “It does not make me happy when wicked people die” (See: Abstract Nouns and Nominal Adjectives)

if the wicked repents from his way

Here “way” represents how a person behaves. Alternate translation: “if the wicked person stops doing bad things” (See: Metaphor)

For why should you die, house of Israel?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he does not want the people of Israel to die. Alternate translation: “Do not choose to die, house of Israel!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- delight
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- delight
- house

ULT

11 Say to them, ‘As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I do not delight in the death of the wicked, for if the wicked repents from his way, then he will live! Repent! Repent from your wicked ways! For why should you die, house of Israel?’

UST

11 Say to them, ‘Yahweh the Lord says, “As surely as I am alive, I am not happy when wicked people die; I would prefer that they turn away from their wicked behavior and continue to live. So repent! Turn away from your evil behavior! You Israelite people, do you really want to die?”’
Ezekiel 33:12

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins!

The abstract noun "righteousness" can be stated as the adjective "right." It is implied that they will not be saved from God's punishment. Alternate translation: “If righteous people start to sin, the fact that they did what was right before will not stop me from punishing them” (See: Abstract Nouns and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish

The abstract noun "wickedness" can be stated as the adjective "wicked." Alternate translation: “A person who does what is wicked will not perish” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,

**Translation Words - UST**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 33:13

if he trusts in his righteousness

The person thinks that because he was righteous, Yahweh will not punish him, even if he sins. The abstract noun “righteousness” can be stated as the adjective “right.” Alternate translation: “if he depends on the right things he has done” (See: Abstract Nouns)

commits injustice

“does what is evil” or “does wicked things”

I will not call to mind

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “I will not think about” or “I will not recall” (See: Idiom)

for the wickedness he committed

The abstract noun “wickedness” can be stated as the adjective “wicked” Alternate translation: “because of the wicked things he has done” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• report, reported, reputation

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• report, reported, reputation

ULT

13 If I say to the righteous, “He will surely live!” and if he trusts in his righteousness and then commits injustice, I will not call to mind any of his righteousness. He will die for the wickedness he committed.

UST

13 If I tell those who do what is right that they will surely remain alive because of all the good they do, but then if they turn away and become proud of all their good deeds, then I will ignore all the good things that they had done before. I will make sure that they will die because of the evil things that they have done.
Ezekiel 33:14

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

to the wicked

The nominal adjective “the wicked” can be stated as “the wicked person.” Alternate translation: “to the wicked person” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

• judge, judgment
• return

Translation Words - UST

• judge, judgment
• return

ULT
14 So if I say to the wicked, “You will surely die,” but if he then repents from his sins and does what is just and right —

UST
14 Continue to tell the people these things: If I say to some wicked person, ‘You will surely die because of your sins,’ perhaps that person will stop doing evil and start doing what is just and right.
Ezekiel 33:15

if he restores the loan guarantee

“if he gives back the loan guarantee”

loan guarantee

something a person leaves with another person to show that he will keep his promise to pay back what he has borrowed

makes restitution for what he has stolen

“returns what he has stolen” or “pays back the value of what he stole”

walks in the statutes that give life

Acting or behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if it were walking. Alternate translation: “lives according to the laws that give life” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration
• walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• life, live, living, alive
• restore, restoration
• walk, walked

ULT
15 if he restores the loan guarantee that he wickedly demanded, or if he makes restitution for what he has stolen, and if he walks in the statutes that give life and no longer commits sin—then he will surely live. He will not die.

UST
15 For example, he might return what he took from another person to guarantee that that person would pay back what he owes, or he might return things that he has stolen, or he might obey the laws that will enable those who obey them to remain alive. If this happens, he will surely remain alive; he will not die because of the sins that he committed previously.
Ezekiel 33:16

will be called to mind for him

The phrase “call to mind” is an idiom that means to remember. The phrase “will be called” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will I think about” or “will I recall” (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- judge, judgment
Ezekiel 33:17

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

your people
These are the people of Israel. The word “your” refers to Ezekiel.

The way of the Lord…your ways that are not fair
Behaviors or actions is spoken of as if they were a way or road on which a person travels. Alternate translation: “What the Lord does…the things you do that are not fair” (See: Metaphor)

but it is your ways
The word “your” refers to the people of Israel. This can be stated in third person. Alternate translation: “but it is their ways” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 33:18

turns away from his righteousness

No longer doing something is spoken of as if it were physically turning away from something. Alternate translation: “stops doing what is right” (See: Metaphor)

die in it

“die because of his sins”

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

• righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
• die, dead, deadly, death,
Ezekiel 33:19

turns away from his wickedness

No longer doing something is spoken of as if it were physically turning away from something. Alternate translation: “stops doing wicked things” (See: Metaphor)

because of those things

“because he does what is just and righteous”

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• judge, judgment

ULT
19 When the wicked turns away from his wickedness and does what is just and righteous, he will live because of those things!

UST
19 And if a wicked person turns away from his wicked behavior and does what is right and fair, it is fair for him to remain alive because of doing that.
Ezekiel 33:20

you people

These are the people of Israel.

house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• house

ULT

20 But you people say, “The way of the Lord is not fair!” I will judge each of you according to his way, house of Israel!”

UST

20 Remind the people that they are still saying that what I do is not fair. They can talk all they want, but I will punish each of them for what they do. Tell them this.”
Ezekiel 33:21

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the twelfth year...fifth day...tenth month

“year 12...day 5...month 10” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

on the fifth day of the tenth month

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

of our captivity

Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the time the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem, but not to the reader. Alternate translation: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon” (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem

“someone escaped from Jerusalem and came to me” The Babylonians had destroyed Jerusalem and killed the people of Jerusalem, but a few people escaped.

The city has been captured

The phrase “the city” refers to “Jerusalem.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Babylonians have destroyed Jerusalem” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
Ezekiel 33:22

The hand of Yahweh had been on me

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that person. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 1:3. Alternate translation: “Yahweh was controlling me” (See: Metonymy)

my mouth was opened

This phrase is an idiom that means to be able to speak. It can be stated in active form. See how you translated “I will open your mouth” in Ezekiel 3:27. Alternate translation: “I was able to speak” or “Yahweh enabled me to speak” (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

dawn

The word “dawn” refers to the time early in the morning when the light of the sun first appears.

I was no longer mute

“I was no longer forced to be silent” or “I was no longer unable to speak” Ezekiel had been unable to speak anything except prophetic words since Ezekiel 3:26.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
Ezekiel 33:23

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 33:24

**those ruins**

Possible meanings are 1) “those ruined buildings” or 2) “those ruined cities”

**he inherited the land**

Yahweh giving the land to Abraham is spoken of as if Abraham inherited the land. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave him the land” (See: Metaphor)

**the land**

“the land of Israel”

**The land has been given to us**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has given us the land” (See: Active or Passive)

**as a possession**

The abstract noun “possession” can be stated as “possess.” Alternate translation: “so that we can possess it” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

24 “Son of man, the ones inhabiting those ruins in the land of Israel are talking and say, ‘Abraham was only one person, and he inherited the land, but we are many! The land has been given to us as a possession.’

UST

24 “Son of man, the people who are living in the ruins in Israel are saying, ‘Abraham was only one person, but Yahweh promised him that he and his descendants would possess this land. But we are many; so surely Yahweh has given us this land to possess.’
Ezekiel 33:25

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.

You eat blood
It is implied that they eat blood by eating meat that still has blood in it. Yahweh had commanded them to drain out the blood. Alternate translation: “You eat meat with blood in it” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

you lift up your eyes towards your idols
“you look to your idols” This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “you worship your idols” (See: Idiom)

you pour out people’s blood
Here “blood” represents a person’s life. To pour out blood is an idiom that means to murder. Alternate translation: “you murder people” (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

Should you really possess the land?
Yahweh used this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: “You should not possess this land!” or “You do not deserve this land!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- devour

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- devour
Ezekiel 33:26

You have depended on your swords

Here “swords” represent doing violent things. Alternate translation: “You have committed violent acts with your swords to get what you want” (See: Metonymy)

done disgusting things

“done things that I hate very much”

each man defiles his neighbor’s wife

It is implied that they defile their neighbor’s wives by sleeping with them. Alternate translation: “each man sleeps with his neighbor’s wife” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• appoint, appointed
• sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

• appoint, appointed
• sword, swordsmen
Ezekiel 33:27

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.

**As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: Idiom)

**the ones in the ruins will fall by the sword**

The phrase “fall by the sword” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “enemies will kill the ones living in the ruins” (See: Idiom)

**those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues**

“plagues will kill the people who live in fortresses and caves”

**fortresses**

A fortress is a building that people build to protect themselves from enemies who attack them.

**caves**

Caves are natural holes in the side of a mountain or down in the ground. They are usually made of rock.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sword, swordsmen
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sword, swordsmen
- face, facial
Ezekiel 33:28

**the pride of its might will end**

The word “it” refers to the land, which refers to the people of the land. Alternate translation: “the people of the land will not be proud anymore that they are strong” (See: Metonymy)

**the mountains of Israel will be deserted**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will live in the mountains of Israel” (See: Active or Passive)

**there will be no one to pass through them**

“there will be no one left to travel through the land or over the mountains”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Israel, Israelites
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- Israel, Israelites
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 33:29

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all the abominations that they have done

The abstract noun "abominations" can be stated as “things I hate.” Alternate translation: “all the things they have done that I hate” (See: Abstract Nouns)

they have done

“the people have done”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 33:30

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

that comes out from Yahweh
“That Yahweh tells him to speak” or “that Yahweh gives him”

Translation Words - ULT
- brother
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST
- brother
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- house

ULT
30 So now you, son of man—your people are saying things about you beside the walls and the gates of the houses, and each says to one another—each man to his brother, ‘Let us go and listen to the prophet’s word that comes out from Yahweh!’

UST
30 As for you, Son of man, your fellow Israelites here in Babylon stand beside the city wall or at the doors of their houses and are talking with each other. They are saying, ‘Come and listen to the message that has come from Yahweh.’
Ezekiel 33:31

Right words are in their mouths, but their hearts are going after unjust profit

Here “mouths” represent speaking. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: “They speak about loving me, but their hearts are going after unjust profit” or 2) Alternate translation: “They speak about the things they lust after, and their hearts are going after unjust profit” (See: Metonymy)

their hearts are going after unjust profit

Here “hearts” represents desire. Alternate translation: “in their hearts they want to get their unjust profit” or “they desire to get things in ways that are not just” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

ULT

31 So my people will come to you, as they often do, and will sit in front of you and listen to your words, but they will not obey them. Right words are in their mouths, but their hearts are going after unjust profit.

UST

31 My people come to you as they often have done, and they sit in front of you to listen to what you say. But they do not do what you tell them that they must do. With their mouths they say that they love me, but in their inner beings they are eager to acquire things by doing what is unjust.
Ezekiel 33:32

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.

you are like a lovely song to them

Here “you” refers to Ezekiel, and here he represents the message he speaks. This compares Ezekiel's message to a lovely song, which means the people enjoy listening to him, but they do not think his message is important enough to obey. Alternate translation: “they think that your words are like a lovely song” (See: Metonymy and Simile)

a lovely song

Possible meanings are 1) “a beautiful song” or 2) “a love song” or “a song about love.”

that is well played on a stringed instrument

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that someone plays very well on a stringed instrument” (See: Active or Passive)

stringed instrument

something that has strings and people use to make music
Ezekiel 33:33

**behold!**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “indeed!”

**that a prophet has been among them**

“that I really sent you as a prophet to them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

33 So when all of this happens—behold! it will happen!—then they will know that a prophet has been among them.”

UST

33 The terrible things that I have said will happen to them will surely happen. And then they will know that a prophet has been among them, and that you are that prophet.”
Ezekiel 34

Ezekiel 34 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God protects the people

God is against those who exploit others. He will protect and take care of his people. (See: people of God)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people of Israel are compared to sheep and God and the son of David as good shepherds. This is a common metaphor in scripture. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 34:1

**General Information:**

In chapter 34, Yahweh speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel were the shepherds that were supposed to care for the flock but have not. (See: Metaphor)

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 34:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

the shepherds of Israel

The leaders of Israel are spoken as if they were shepherds. They were supposed to take care of their people like shepherds take care of their flock. Alternate translation: “the leaders of Israel who are like shepherds” (See: Metaphor)

are shepherding themselves

The leaders taking care of themselves instead of the people are spoken of as if they were shepherding themselves. AT “are feeding and taking care of themselves” (See: Metaphor)

Should not shepherds guard the flock?

Yahweh uses this question to scold the leaders for not taking care of the people. Alternate translation: “Shepherds should feed the flock and take care of it.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
Ezekiel 34:3

You eat the fatty portions...dress in wool

This continues speaking of the leaders of Israel as if they were bad shepherds that kill the best animals in their flock for food and clothing. Alternate translation: “You are like shepherds who eat the fatty portions...dress in wool” (See: Metaphor)

You eat the fatty portions

The fatty portions come from the sheep and the goats. Alternate translation: “You eat the fatty parts of the sheep and goats” or “You eat the best parts of the sheep and goats” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

dress in wool

“wear the wool from the sheep”

the fatlings

“the youngest and fattest sheep and goats”

do not shepherd at all

“do not feed and take care of the flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
Ezekiel 34:4

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: Metaphor)

have diseases
Possible meanings are 1) “are sick” or 2) “are weak”

You do not bind up the ones who are broken
“You do not wrap cloth around the broken bones of those who are wounded”

the ones who are broken
“the sheep that have broken bones” or “the sheep that are injured”

you do not restore
“you do not bring back”

the outcasts
“the sheep that have been chased away” or “those that others have chased away”

the lost
The words “the sheep or goats” are left out of this phrase, but they are intended to be understood. Alternate translation: “the sheep or goats that are lost” (See: Ellipsis)

through strength and violence
“forcefully and cruelly”

Translation Words - ULT
- restore, restoration
- strength, strengthen, strong
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST
- restore, restoration
- strength, strengthen, strong
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 34:5

Then they were scattered without a shepherd

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Then they scattered because they did not have a shepherd” (See: Active or Passive)

they became food for all the living beasts in the fields

“all of the wild animals could attack and eat them”
Ezekiel 34:6

it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth

“my flock is spread out all over the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- flock, herd
- face, facial
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

6 My flock strays on all of the mountains and on every high hill, and it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth. Yet no one is searching for them.

UST

6 My people wander like sheep all over the high hills and mountains. They are scattered all over the earth, and no one is searching for them.
Ezekiel 34:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: Metaphor)

hear the word of Yahweh

This is an idiom that is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: "listen to Yahweh's message" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—because my flock has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields, because there was no shepherd and none of my shepherds sought my flock, but the shepherds guarded themselves and did not shepherd my flock.

As surely as I am alive, my people are like a flock of sheep without any shepherd, and as a result it is as though wild animals have attacked my people and eaten them. You shepherds did not search for them; instead, you only wanted to provide food for yourselves.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- flock, herd
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- flock, herd
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 34:9

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: Metaphor)

hear the word of Yahweh

“listen to Yahweh's message.” This is an idiom that is used to introduce a special message from God. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 34:10

The Lord Yahweh says this

This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

I am against the shepherds

“I am opposed to the shepherds”

I will require my flock from their hand

The phrase “require...from their hand” is an idiom that means to hold or consider someone responsible for something. Alternate translation: “I will hold them responsible for all the bad things that happen to my flock” or “I will punish them for all the bad things they let happen to my flock” (See: Idiom)

I will dismiss them from shepherding the flock

“I will not let them shepherd the flock any longer” or “I will not let them be the shepherds of the flock any longer”

shepherd themselves

“feed and take care of themselves”

from their mouths

Here “mouths” represent eating. Alternate translation: “so they cannot eat them” (See: Metonymy)

my flock will no longer be food for them

“the shepherds will no longer eat the sheep and the goats of my flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- flock, herd
• flock, herd
• flock, herd
• deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
Ezekiel 34:11

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. Here he speaks of himself as if he were their shepherd and will take care of them. (See: Metaphor)

For the Lord Yahweh says this
This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “For this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Behold!
The word “Behold” here alerts the shepherds to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

will seek out
“will look for”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- flock, herd
Ezekiel 34:12

within the midst of his scattered flock

“with his scattered flock”

they were scattered

It is implied that the animals in the flock scattered because they did not have a shepherd to care for them or protect them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they scattered because they did not have a shepherd to care for them” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

on the day of clouds and darkness

“on the cloudy and dark day.” Disasters are spoken of as if they were a day of darkness. Alternate translation: “when terrible disasters happened to them” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- darkness
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- darkness
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
Ezekiel 34:13

bring them
“bring my sheep and my goats” or “bring my flock”

from among the peoples
“from the places where they lived with other peoples”

I will put them in pastures...every settlement in the land

Yahweh bringing his people back from exile to their land so that he can care for them and keep them safe is spoken of as if he were their shepherd who puts his flock in a place where there is plenty of land, food, and water. (See: Metaphor)

pastures
land that has grass and small plants that sheep and goats can eat

settlement
This is a place where people live. Usually they live in houses in a settlement.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 34:14

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. Here he speaks of himself as their shepherd who will take care of them. (See: Metaphor)

their grazing places
“places where they can eat”

abundant pastures
“lands that have a lot of grass and plants to eat”

graze
eat grass and other plants

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
  - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
  - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
  - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
  - good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
Ezekiel 34:15

I myself

The word “myself” adds emphasis. God would do this because the shepherds were not doing it. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

will shepherd

“will feed and take care of”

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• flock, herd

ULT

15 I myself will shepherd my flock, and I myself will make them lie down—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—

UST

15 I myself will take care of my people and allow them to lie down and rest. This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, promise.
Ezekiel 34:16

**the lost**

The words “the sheep or goats” are left out of this phrase, but they are intended to be understood. Alternate translation: “the sheep or goats that are lost” (See: Ellipsis)

**restore the outcast**

“bring back those that others have chased away”

**bind up the broken sheep**

“wrap a cloth around any sheep's broken bone” or “wrap a cloth around any sheep's wound”

**the fat and the strong**

The word “sheep” is understood. Alternate translation: “the fat sheep and the strong sheep” (See: Ellipsis)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- restore, restoration
- might, mighty, mighty works
- strength, strengthen, strong
- seek, search, look for

**Translation Words - UST**

- restore, restoration
- might, mighty, mighty works
- strength, strengthen, strong
- seek, search, look for
Ezekiel 34:17

General Information:
Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel his message. Now it is to the people of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: Metaphor)

behold, I
“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important, I”

I will be a judge between sheep and sheep
“I will judge between one sheep and another”

rams and male goats
The male sheep and goats are usually the strongest in the flock and can get whatever they want from the other animals in the flock.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• flock, herd
Ezekiel 34:18

Is it not enough...feet

God uses these questions to scold Israel’s leaders, who are spoken of as if they were the stronger animals in the flock that were unkind to the weaker ones. You can translate this as a statement as in the UST. (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

ULT

18 Is it not enough to feed on the good pasture, that you must trample down with your feet what is left of the pasture; and to drink from clear waters, that you must muddy the rivers with your feet?

UST

18 You leaders, you who are like strong sheep who do evil to the others: It is bad that you keep the best pastures for yourselves. It is even worse that you trample the good grass with your feet. It is bad that you yourselves drink the clear water. It is even worse that with your feet you cause the rest of the water to become muddy.
Ezekiel 34:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

• flock, herd

ULT

19 Must my sheep eat what you have trampled with your feet, and drink what you have muddied with your feet?

UST

19 You are forcing my flock to eat the grass that you have trampled and to drink the water that you have caused to become muddy!
Ezekiel 34:20

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: Metaphor)

the Lord Yahweh says this

This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

to them

“to my flock”

Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

I myself

The word “myself” emphasizes that it is Yahweh who will judge. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

will judge between the fat sheep and the thin ones

“will make sure that the fat sheep and goats and the skinny sheep and goats are treating each other fairly”

the fat sheep and the thin ones

The leaders and strong people in Israel are spoken of as if they were fat and strong animals in the flock. The poor and weak people in Israel are spoken of as if they were the thin and weak animals in the flock. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- judge, judgment

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- judge, judgment
Ezekiel 34:21

for you

The word “you” refers to the sheep and goats that were not treating other sheep and goats well.

with your sides

“with the sides of your body”

have gored

Possible meanings are 1) “have pushed” or “have shoved” 2) “have stabbed” or “have pierced”

scattered them

“made them go in many different directions”

away from the land

“away from the land of Israel”
Ezekiel 34:22

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: Metaphor)

they will no longer be plunder

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will not allow anyone to plunder them” or “I will not allow anyone to steal them” (See: Active or Passive)

will no longer be plunder

“will no longer be things that are stolen.” The shepherds and wild animals have been stealing the sheep and the goats from Yahweh’s flock.

Translation Words - ULT

• judge, judgment
• deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

• judge, judgment
• deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
Ezekiel 34:23

I will set over them one shepherd

The phrase “set over” is an idiom that means to cause a person to rule someone else. Alternate translation: “I will assign one shepherd to be in charge of my sheep and the goats” (See: Idiom)

my servant David

Here “David” refers to a descendant of David. Alternate translation: “a descendant of my servant David” (See: Metonymy)

He will shepherd them

The descendant of David who will be king over the people of Israel is spoken of as if he would be their shepherd. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• David
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

• David
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
Ezekiel 34:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
24 For I, Yahweh, will be their God, and my servant David will be a prince among them—I, Yahweh, have declared this.

UST
24 I, Yahweh, will be their God, and the one who is like King David will be their king. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.
Ezekiel 34:25

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. (See: Metaphor)

a covenant of peace

“a covenant that brings peace”

the evil wild animals

These are wild animals that could kill the sheep and the goats.

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- desert, wilderness
- cut off
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- desert, wilderness
- cut off
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 34:26

I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill

Some versions of the Bible translate this as “I will also turn them and the places around my hill into a blessing.”

my hill

This refers to Mount Zion. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I will send out showers

“I will cause it to rain”

in due season

“at the right time”

These will be showers of blessing

“This rain will be a blessing”

Translation Words - ULT

• bless, blessed, blessing
• bless, blessed, blessing

Translation Words - UST

• bless, blessed, blessing
• bless, blessed, blessing
Ezekiel 34:27

the earth will yield its produce
“the earth will grow food” or “food will grow on the earth”

will be secure
“will be safe”

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

when I break the bars of their yoke

Slavery is spoken of as if it were a yoke that people wear like some animals. Alternate translation: “when I free them from being slaves” (See: Metaphor)

from the hand of those who enslaved them

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “from the control of those who made them slaves” or “from those who made them slaves” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 34:28

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

They will no longer be plunder for the nations

Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. Alternate translation: “The people of the nations will no longer steal from them” (See: Metonymy)

plunder

These are things that are stolen or taken by force. See how you translated “plunder” in Ezekiel 7:21.

Translation Words - ULT

• devour
• nation
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• devour
• nation
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
28 They will no longer be plunder for the nations, and the wild animals on the earth will no longer devour them. For they will live securely, and no one will frighten them.

UST
28 Soldiers from other nations will no longer take away their valuable possessions, and wild animals will no longer attack them. They will live safely, and no one will make them afraid.
Ezekiel 34:29

be victims of famine
“be starved” or “be starving because of lack of food”

they will not bear the scorn of the nations
Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. The abstract noun “scorn” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “they will no longer hear the people of the nations insult them” (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• nation
• famine

Translation Words - UST
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• nation
• famine

ULT
29 For I will provide them a land known for its crops; so they will not be victims of famine in the land, and they will not bear the scorn of the nations.

UST
29 I will cause their land to be peaceful and to produce good crops. There will no longer be famines in the land, and people in other nations will no longer mock them.
Ezekiel 34:30

I, Yahweh their God, am with them

Here “I…am with them” is an idiom that means Yahweh helps them. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh their God, am helping them” (See: Idiom)

with them. They are my people

This can be stated as one sentence. Alternate translation: “with them, and that they are my people”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 34:31

For you are my sheep, the flock of my pasture

This speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and Yahweh is their shepherd. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- flock, herd
Ezekiel 35

Ezekiel 35 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Edom

Because the people of Edom rejoiced at the destruction of Israel, they too will be destroyed.
Ezekiel 35:1

**General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak a prophecy. Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir, but the message is for all of the people of Edom.

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
Ezekiel 35:2

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

set your face against Mount Seir

Mount Seir was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but Yahweh commands him to stare in that direction as a symbol of harming the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 6:2. Alternate translation: “turn toward Mount Seir and stare” or “stare toward Mount Seir so that the people there will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

Mount Seir and prophesy against it

“the mountain of Seir.” Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for all of the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “Mount Seir and prophesy against it because of what the people of Edom have done” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial
Ezekiel 35:3

to it
“to the mountain” or “to the people of Edom”

Behold! I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a waste

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for all of the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “Listen, Mount Seir, I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a waste because of what your people did” (See: Personification)

Behold!
The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Listen!” or “Indeed!”

I am against you
“I am your enemy” or “I oppose you”

I will strike you with my hand
Here “hand” represents power. Alternate translation: “I will use my power to strike you” (See: Metonymy)

make you a desolation
The abstract noun “desolation” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “make you desolate” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• hand
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• hand
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
Ezekiel 35:4

General Information:
This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
• Yahweh
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
• Yahweh
• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
4 I will make your cities ruins, and you yourself will become desolate; then you will know that I am Yahweh.

UST
4 I will destroy your cities, and everyone will leave them. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.
Ezekiel 35:5

you poured them out into the hands of the sword

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) “you gave them over to their enemies who killed them with swords” or 2) “you killed them with swords.” (See: Metaphor)

at the time of their distress

“at a time of disaster”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- sword, swordsmen

ULT
5 Because you have always been hostile to the people of Israel, and because you poured them out into the hands of the sword at the time of their distress, at the time their punishment was at its greatest.

UST
5 You have always been enemies of the Israelite people. You rejoiced when they experienced a great disaster, when their enemies attacked them, when I was punishing them most severely for the sins that they had committed.
Ezekiel 35:6

I will prepare you for bloodshed

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Alternate translation: “I will make it easy for your enemies to kill many of you” (See: Metonymy)

bloodshed will pursue you

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Yahweh speaks of bloodshed as if it were a person who could chase them. Alternate translation: “your enemies will chase you down and kill you” (See: Personification)

Since you did not hate bloodshed

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Alternate translation: “Since you did not hate it when enemies brutally killed the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- blood
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- blood
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
Ezekiel 35:7

**General Information:**

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

**when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again**

Possible meanings are 1) “cut off” is a metaphor that means to destroy. Alternate translation: “I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it” or 2) “cut off” is a metaphor that means to stop someone from doing something. Alternate translation: “I will make it so that people do not travel back and forth through it” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- cut off
- return

**Translation Words - UST**

- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- cut off
- return

ULT

7 I will make Mount Seir a complete desolation when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again.

UST

7 I will therefore make everyone leave Mount Seir, and I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it.
Ezekiel 35:8

those who were killed by the sword

Here “sword” represents enemies who fought them in battle. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 31:17. Alternate translation: “those whom enemies have killed with swords” or “those who have died in battle” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• sword, swordsman

Translation Words - UST

• sword, swordsman
Ezekiel 35:9

**a perpetual desolation**

“desolate forever.” This may be an exaggeration to emphasize the destruction. (See: Hyperbole)

**Your cities will not be inhabited**

This can be stated in active form. This may be an exaggeration for emphasis. Alternate translation: “People will not live in your cities” (See: Active or Passive and Hyperbole)

**but you will know**

Here “you” is plural. God is speaking to the people of Mount Seir, rather than to a single mountain. (See: Forms of You)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 35:10

General Information:
This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

You have said
The word “You” refers to the mountain of Seir. Ezekiel is to speak to the mountain as if it can hear him. The message is for the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “Your people said” (See: Personification)

these two lands
“the lands of Israel and Judah”

will become mine
The word “mine” can be stated in plural form. Alternate translation: “will become ours”

we
The word “we” refers to the people of Edom.

even when Yahweh was present with them
It is implied that Yahweh was protecting Israel and Judah. Alternate translation: “but Yahweh was there protecting Israel and Judah” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 35:11

I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy

Possible meanings are 1) “I will punish you because of your anger and jealousy” or 2) “just as you acted against the people of Israel with anger and jealousy, I will act against you with anger and jealousy.”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—so I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy that you had in your hatred of Israel, and I will show myself to them when I judge you.

UST

11 Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, I will punish you for being angry with my people, for envying them, and for hating them. And when I punish you, I will make sure that the Israelites know that it is I who have punished you.
Ezekiel 35:12

General Information:

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

against the mountains of Israel

Here “mountains” represents the whole land of Israel. (See: Synecdoche)

They have been destroyed

This phrase can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They are in ruins” (See: Active or Passive)

they have been given over to us to devour

The people of Mount Seir taking the land of Israel and using it for themselves is spoken of as if they were wild animals that would devour the mountains of Israel. Alternate translation: “they are here for us to devour” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
• provoke, provoked, provocation
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
• provoke, provoked, provocation
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
You exalted yourselves against me with what you said, and you multiplied the words you said against me; and I heard it all.

You insulted me; I heard everything that you said about me.

(There are no notes for this verse.)
Ezekiel 35:14

General Information:
This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

The Lord Yahweh says this
This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

I will make you a desolation
Here “you” refers to Mount Seir, but the message is for the people of Edom. The abstract noun “desolation” can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “Because of what your people did I will make you desolate” (See: Personification and Abstract Nouns)

the entire earth rejoices
Here “earth” represents the people of the earth. The word “entire” is a generalization that refers only to people near Mount Seir. Alternate translation: “people who know that I have destroyed you rejoice” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 35:15

As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the people of Israel because of its desolation

This speaks of the land that Yahweh gave to the Israelites as their inheritance. Alternate translation: "As you rejoiced when I made the land of the Israelites desolate" (See: Metaphor)

I will do the same to you

Possible meanings are 1) I will make your land desolate“ or 2) “I will rejoice when your land is desolate” or 3) “I will make other people rejoice because of your desolation.”

Then they will know

The word “they” possibly refers to 1) “the people of the earth” or 2) “the people of Israel and Judah.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 36

Ezekiel 36 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel restored

Israel is promised to be restored by Yahweh. Because of his honor, God will bring Israel back to their land. (See: promise, promised and restore, restoration)

New hearts

God will forgive Israel's sin and give them the desire to obey him. This is expressed by the metonym “heart.” (See: forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)
Ezekiel 36:1

General Information:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak a prophecy. Ezekiel is to speak to the mountains of Israel, but the message is for all of the people of Israel.

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

prophesy to the mountains of Israel

God wants Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people. The message is for the people of Israel. (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 36:2

Aha

This is an expression of joy. It can be translated as “I am very happy” or “This is great.”

The ancient high places

“The very old mountains.” This refers to the high mountains of Israel.

have become our possession

“now belong to us”

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
Ezekiel 36:3

Because of your desolation

The abstract noun “desolation” can be stated as “desolate.” Alternate translation: “Because you, mountains of Israel, have become desolate” (See: Abstract Nouns)

because of the attacks that came on you from all sides

“because you were attacked from every direction” or “because your enemies attacked you from every direction”

you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people’s stories

Here, “lips” and “tongues” represent people speaking. Alternate translation: “people are saying bad things about you, and the nations are telling bad stories about you” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded
- nation

ULT

3 Therefore prophesy and say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Because of your desolation and because of the attacks that came on you from all sides, you have become a possession of the other nations; you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people's stories.

UST

3 So you, Ezekiel, must tell the mountains of Israel what I, the Lord Yahweh, am saying to them: ‘Armies of other nations attacked you from every direction, and everyone has left you. Those foreign armies are now in your land. They have spoken very maliciously about your people, the Israelites, and have told all kinds of lies about them.'
Therefore, mountains of Israel, listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh: The Lord Yahweh says this to the mountains and the high hills, to the streambeds and valleys, to the uninhabited desolations and the forsaken cities that have become plunder and a subject of mocking for the other nations that surround them—

Therefore, you mountains of Israel, listen to this message from me. I, Yahweh the Lord, have something to say to you, the hills and mountains, and to you, the ravines and valleys, and to you, the towns and cities which the enemy burned down, where no one is living any longer, from where the enemy has taken everything valuable, and whose people the people groups all around are mocking. “This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare: I am very angry because the enemy has insulted you.

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
• Israel, Israelites
• nation

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
• Israel, Israelites
• nation
Ezekiel 36:5

in the fire of my fury

This speaks of Yahweh's fury as if it were a fire. Yahweh loves Israel very much, so he becomes jealous and angry when other nations mock it. Alternate translation: “because of my intense jealousy” or “because of my very strong anger” (See: Metaphor)

against Edom and all

“and against all of Edom”

had both joy in their heart and disdain in their spirit, as they seized my land

Here “heart” and “spirit” represent a person's inner being. The ideas of having joy and disdain can be expressed with the verbs “rejoiced” and “despised.” Alternate translation: “who despised the people of Israel and rejoiced while they took my land” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- remnant
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- nation
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- remnant
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- nation
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 36:6

Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

In my fury and in my anger

The words “fury” and “anger” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of his anger. Alternate translation: “Because I am extremely angry” (See: Doublet)

you have borne the insults of nations

“other nations have insulted you” or “other nations have mocked you”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- nation

ULT

6 Therefore, prophesy to the land of Israel and say to the mountains and to the high hills, to the streambeds and to the valleys, ‘the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! In my fury and in my anger I am declaring this because you have borne the insults of nations.

UST

4-6 Therefore, you mountains of Israel, listen to this message from me. I, Yahweh the Lord, have something to say to you, the hills and mountains, and to you, the ravines and valleys, and to you, the towns and cities which the enemy burned down, where no one is living any longer, from where the enemy has taken everything valuable, and whose people the people groups all around are mocking. “This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare: I am very angry with the people of Edom and the other people groups; they have insulted your Israelite people and happily taken all their land as pastures. So Ezekiel must speak for me to you, the land of Israel, mountains and hills, valleys and ravines: I, Yahweh the Lord, am very angry because the enemy has insulted you.
Ezekiel 36:7

**General Information:**
This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

**I myself will lift up my hand to swear**
Here "lift up my hand" is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: Symbolic Action)

**that the nations that surround you will certainly carry their own shame**
The people experiencing shame are spoken of as if they will carry their shame. Alternate translation: “that people will certainly mock the nations that surround you” (See: Metaphor)

**surround you**
The word “you” refers to the mountains of Israel.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- nation

**Translation Words - UST**
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- nation
Ezekiel 36:8

General Information:

This continues Yahweh’s message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

you will grow branches and bear fruit

Here “you” refers to the mountain of Israel which here represents the trees on the mountain that will grow fruit. Alternate translation: “your trees will grow branches and bear fruit” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 36:9

**behold, I**

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I”

**I am for you**

“I want to do good things to you.” The word “you” refers to the mountains of Israel.

**I treat you with favor**

“I will be kind to you”

**you will be plowed and sown with seed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “my people, Israel, will plow your ground and sow it with seed” (See: **Active or Passive**)

**ULT**

9 For behold, I am for you, and I treat you with favor; you will be plowed and sown with seed.

**UST**

9 I will work to help you, and I will be kind to you. I will enable farmers to plow the ground and plant seed in you.
### Ezekiel 36:10

**General Information:**
This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

**So I will multiply upon you**

Yahweh is speaking to the mountains. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “So, mountains of Israel, I will multiply upon you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**even the whole house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “all of the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

**The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Then people will live in the cities and will rebuild the ruins” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Israel, Israelites
- house

**Translation Words - UST**
- Israel, Israelites
- house

**ULT**

10 So I will multiply upon you the number of your people, even the whole house of Israel. The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt.

**UST**

10 I will cause the number of people who live there on you mountains and everywhere else in Israel to greatly increase. People will live in the cities and rebuild houses where there are now only ruins.
Ezekiel 36:11

they will multiply and be fruitful

Here “be fruitful” is an idiom that means to have many children and descendants. Alternate translation: “they will become very many people and have very many children” (See: Idiom)

you to be inhabited as you previously were

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people to live on you mountains as they did before” (See: Active or Passive)

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 36:12

They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance

The people living in the mountains and land of Israel permanently is spoke of as if the people would inherit them. Alternate translation: “They will possess you permanently” (See: Metaphor)

you will no longer cause their children to die

It is implied that in the past children died because there was not enough food in the land. Now the land would produce enough food. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• Israel, Israelites
• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• Israel, Israelites
• people, people group,
Ezekiel 36:13

General Information:
This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is meant for the people of Israel.

they are saying to you
“other nations are saying to you mountains”

You devour men
Not enough food growing in Israel so that people die is spoken of as if the mountains of Israel were devouring the people. Alternate translation: “You cause many people to die” (See: Metaphor)

bereaving your nation of children
“you cause your people's children to die”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- devour
- nation

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- devour
- nation

ULT
13 The Lord Yahweh says this: Because they are saying to you, “You devour men, bereaving your nation of children,”

UST
13 I, Yahweh the Lord, am telling you mountains this: It is true that people have said they could not grow many crops on you, and so they died from hunger.
Ezekiel 36:14

you will not consume people any longer

Not enough food growing in Israel so that people die is spoken of as if the mountains of Israel were consuming the people. Alternate translation: “you will no longer cause the people to die” (See: Metaphor)

This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• devour

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• devour
Ezekiel 36:15

Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer

This speaks of the mountains as if they were able to hear when people insult them. Alternate translation: “I will no longer allow the other nations to insult you” (See: Personification)

you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples

Experiencing shame is spoken of as if the mountains could bear shame. Alternate translation: “the peoples will no longer cause you to feel ashamed” (See: Personification and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- people, people group,
- nation

ULT

15 Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer; you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples or cause your nation to fall—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

UST

15 No longer will the other people groups ridicule you mountains. No longer will they laugh at you; no longer will you mountains make your nation suffer defeat. I, the Lord Yahweh, am telling you this myself."
Ezekiel 36:16

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 36:17

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

with their ways and their deeds

“by the way they lived and the things they did”

Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me

This compares how the people behaved to a woman’s unclean menstruation rags. This emphasizes how disgusting their behaviors were to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Their ways were as disgusting to me as the unclean menstruation of a woman” (See: Simile)

menstruation of a woman

the time every month when a woman bleeds from her womb

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• Israel, Israelites
• house
Ezekiel 36:18

I poured out my fury against them

Yahweh punishing people because he is angry is spoken of as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out. Alternate translation: “I did things to them that showed how angry I was” (See: Metaphor)

for the blood that they poured out on the land

This is an idiom that refers to killing someone. Alternate translation: “because they made the blood of many people spill onto the land” or “because they murdered many people” (See: Idiom)

for their pollution of it by their idols

The people worshiping idols is spoken of as if the idols made the land physically dirty. Alternate translation: “because they defiled the land with their idols” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• wrath, fury
  • earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• wrath, fury
  • earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 36:19

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about Israel.

I scattered them among the nations; they were dispersed through the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 12:15. Alternate translation: “I caused them to separate and live in separate lands” (See: Parallelism)

they were dispersed through the lands

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I dispersed them through the lands” (See: Active or Passive)

their ways and their deeds

Here “ways” and “deeds” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “the things that they have done” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• nation

Translation Words - UST

• nation
Ezekiel 36:20

they profaned my holy name

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. Alternate translation: “they mocked me” (See: Metonymy)

when people

“because other people said”

Are these really the people of Yahweh?

The people use a question to express their surprise at what they saw. Alternate translation: “I cannot believe these are really the people of Yahweh!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

For they have been thrown out of his land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For Yahweh has forced them out of his land” (See: Active or Passive)

his land

This refers to the land of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- name
- people, people group,
- report, reported, reputation
- nation
- profane, profaned
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- name
- people, people group,
- report, reported, reputation
- nation
- profane, profaned
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 36:21

But I had compassion for my holy name that the house of Israel had defiled among the nations, when they went there

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. Alternate translation: “When the house of Israel went among the nations, they caused me disgrace, but I wanted people to know that I am holy” (See: Metonymy)

I had compassion for my holy name

“I cared about my holy name”

the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• nation
• house

Translation Words - UST

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• nation
• house
Ezekiel 36:22

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel, and he gives him a message to Israel.

the house of Israel
Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

for your sake
“because of you” or “in order to help you”

but for my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone
Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. Alternate translation: “but so that the people of the nations, who mock me because of you, will know that I am holy” (See: Metonymy)

you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone
“you have caused the people of the nations to mock everywhere you have gone”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- nation
- house

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- nation
- house
Ezekiel 36:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- set apart
- Yahweh
- name
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- set apart
- Yahweh
- name
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
23 For I will make my great name holy, which you have profaned among the nations—in the midst of the nations, you profaned it. Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—when you see that I am holy.

UST
23 I will show that these other people groups should worship me as God, even though they would never know it by watching how you act. When I prove to them that I am powerful and can do anything, then they will know that I will carry out everything that I say I will do. And they will see you honor me as the God who is holy.
Ezekiel 36:24

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

Translation Words - ULT
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
24 I will take you from the nations and gather you from every land, and I will bring you to your land.

UST
24 I will take you out of those distant lands. I will gather you from all those places where you had to go, and I will bring you back to your own land.
Ezekiel 36:25

I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols

Yahweh forgiving the people and causing them to no longer sin is spoken of as if he would cleanse them with water. The phrase “you will be purified” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will purify you as if I were sprinkling you with pure water, and I will cause you to stop worshiping idols” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

all of your impurities

“all the things that made you unclean”

Translation Words - ULT

• clean, wash
• pure, purify, purification
• pure, purify, purification

Translation Words - UST

• clean, wash
• pure, purify, purification
• pure, purify, purification

ULT

25 Then I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols.

UST

25 It will be as though I will sprinkle clean water on you, and then you will be clean. I will make you clean from everything that has made me reject you, and I will cause you to stop worshiping idols.
Ezekiel 36:26

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

I will give you a new heart and a new spirit in your innermost parts, and I will take away the heart of stone from your flesh. For I will give you a heart of flesh.

Yahweh causing the people to no longer be stubborn but to love and serve Yahweh is spoken of as if he will take away their old heart and give them a new heart and spirit. (See: Metaphor)

a new heart and a new spirit
Here “heart” and “spirit” represent a person’s thoughts, attitudes, and emotions. See how you translated “heart” and “spirit” in Ezekiel 11:19.

in your innermost parts
“within you” or “inside of you”

the heart of stone
This speaks of people being stubborn as if their hearts were made of stone. See how you translated “stone heart” in Ezekiel 11:19. Alternate translation: “the heart that is as hard as stone” (See: Metaphor)

your flesh
“your body”

a heart of flesh
People being willing to serve Yahweh is spoken of as if their hearts were soft like flesh. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 11:19. Alternate translation: “a heart that is soft like flesh” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• flesh
• heart
• heart
• heart
• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• flesh
• heart
• heart
• heart
• spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 36:27

**enable you to walk in my statutes**

A person acting or behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if it were a person walking. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 11:20. Alternate translation: “enable you to obey my statutes” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- spirit, spiritual
- statute
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

**Translation Words - UST**

- spirit, spiritual
- statute
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 36:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

ULT
28 Then you will inhabit the land that I gave to your ancestors; you will be my people, and I will be your God.

UST
28 You will again live in the land that I gave to your ancestors. You will be my people, and I will be your God.
Ezekiel 36:29

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

For I will save you from all of your uncleanness
Something that is unacceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. Alternate translation: “For I will save you from everything that made me reject you” (See: Metaphor)

I will summon the grain
“I will call the grain to come.” This phrase presents the grain as a servant of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I will cause there to be grain in the land of Israel” (See: Personification)

I will no longer put famine upon you
Yahweh causing a famine in the land is spoken of as if he put famine on the people. Alternate translation: “I will no longer cause there to be a famine” or “I will no longer cause there to be no food” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- famine
- grain, grainfields
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- famine
- grain, grainfields
- declare, proclaim, announce
Ezekiel 36:30

you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations

Experiencing shame is spoken of as if the people had to carry the shame. Alternate translation: “the nations will no longer make you feel ashamed because you suffer from famine” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
• nation
• famine

Translation Words - UST

• fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
• nation
• famine

ULT

30 I will multiply the fruit of the tree and the produce of the field so that you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations.

UST

30 I will cause your fruit trees to produce plenty of fruit and your ground to produce plenty of good crops, with the result that the people of other lands will not mock you because you do not have enough food.
Ezekiel 36:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• iniquity
• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
• evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

• iniquity
• good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
• evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT
31 Then you will think of your wicked ways and your deeds that were not good, and you will show loathing on your faces because of your own sins and your disgusting deeds.

UST
31 When that happens, you will think about your previous evil behavior and wicked deeds, and you will be very displeased with yourselves for your sins and the detestable things that you did.
Ezekiel 36:32

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**let this be known to you**

“know this” or “you can be sure of this.” Yahweh says this to emphasize that it is not because the people are good that he will restore them. This phrase can be moved to the beginning of the verse. (See: Active or Passive)

**So be ashamed and disgraced**

The words “ashamed” and “disgraced” share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of the shame. Alternate translation: “So be very ashamed” (See: Doublet)

**because of your ways**

“because of what you do”

**house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 36:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- iniquity
- pure, purify, purification

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- iniquity
- pure, purify, purification

ULT
33 The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I purify you from all your iniquity, I will cause you to inhabit the cities and to rebuild the ruined places.

UST
33 I, the Lord Yahweh, also tell you this: At the time that I cleanse you from all the sins that you have committed, I will enable you to live in your cities again and to build houses where there are now only ruins.
Ezekiel 36:34

you will plow the ruined land
“you will farm the ruined land”

before the eyes of all who pass by
The eyes represent sight. Alternate translation: “to those who pass by and see it” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

• desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
34 For you will plow the ruined land until it is no longer a ruin before the eyes of all who pass by.

UST
34 People who walk through your country will see that you are once again cultivating your land, and that your people are living in it again.
Ezekiel 36:35

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

Then they

The word “they” refers to the people who walk through the land of Israel.

the uninhabited ruins

“the ruins that no one lived in”

that were torn down

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: “that enemies had torn down” or 2) Alternate translation: “that people could not get into” (See: Active or Passive)

are now fortified and inhabited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people have now rebuilt them and have started living there again” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 36:36

that I built up the ruins

“and that I built up the cities that enemies had torn down”

replanted the abandoned places

“planted crops in the desolate land”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

36 Then the other nations around you will know that I am Yahweh, that I built up the ruins and replanted the abandoned places. I am Yahweh. I have declared it and I will do it.

UST

36 When that happens, the people who are still left in the lands that are around you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have enabled you to rebuild what was destroyed, and to again plant crops in the fields that had nothing growing in them. I, Yahweh, have said that it will happen, and I will cause it to happen.
Ezekiel 36:37

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

I will be asked by the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The people of Israel will ask me” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

to increase them like a flock of people

Yahweh causing the people to multiply greatly and quickly is spoken of as if they were a flock of sheep. Sheep multiply very quickly. Alternate translation: “to make them multiply like a flock of sheep” or “to make the people multiply quickly like sheep” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• seek, search, look for
• house

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• Israel, Israelites
• seek, search, look for
• house
Ezekiel 36:38

Like the flock is set apart for sacrifices, like the flock in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts

The phrase “is set apart” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Like the great number of sheep that the people set apart for sacrifices or bring to Jerusalem for the appointed feasts” (See: Active or Passive)

so will the ruined cities be filled with flocks of people

This speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so will the great number of people be who will be living in the cities that are now ruined but the people will rebuild” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- flock, herd
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- flock, herd
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 37

Ezekiel 37 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel restored

God will unite the two kingdoms of Israel and Judah and the Messiah will rule over them. This will come in a prophesied day of restoration. (See: Christ, Messiah and restore, restoration)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people are discouraged and compare themselves to skeletons, but God will cause them to become a nation again. (See: Metaphor)
Ezekiel 37:1

General Information:

Ezekiel is speaking.

The hand of Yahweh was upon me

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 1:3. Alternate translation: “Yahweh was controlling me” (See: Metonymy)

in the midst

“in the middle”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

1 The hand of Yahweh was upon me, and he brought me out by the Spirit of Yahweh and set me down in the midst of a valley; it was full of bones.

UST

1 One day Yahweh gave me another vision. In the vision I felt the power of God on me, and by his Spirit he took me to the middle of a valley. It was full of bones of people who had been killed.
Ezekiel 37:2

round and round

“in every direction”

Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
• face, facial

ULT

2 Then he made me pass through them round and round. Behold! A great many of them were in the valley. Behold! They were very dry.

UST

2 He led me to walk back and forth among those bones. I saw that there were very many bones there, bones that were very dry.
Ezekiel 37:3

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

3 He said to me, “Son of man, can these bones live again?” So I said, “Lord Yahweh, you alone know.”

UST

3 He asked me, “Son of man, do you think that these bones can become living people again?” I replied, “Yahweh my Lord, only you know if that can happen.”
Ezekiel 37:4

General Information:
Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.

Listen to the word of Yahweh
“Listen to Yahweh’s message”

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh

ULT
4 Then he said to me, “Prophesy over these bones and say to them, ‘Dry bones. Listen to the word of Yahweh.

UST
4 Then he said to me, “Speak a message for me to these bones. Say to them, ‘You dry bones, listen to what Yahweh says.}
Ezekiel 37:5

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

to put breath into you

The noun “breath” can be stated as the verb “breathe.” Alternate translation: “I will cause you to breathe”

breath

The Hebrew word translated as “breath” in these verses is translated as “spirit” by a few modern versions. It is also translated as “wind” in Ezekiel 37:9.

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• spirit, spiritual

ULT

5 The Lord Yahweh says this to these bones: Behold! I am about to put breath into you, and you will live.

UST

5 This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you bones: I am going to put my breath into each of you, and you will become alive again.
Ezekiel 37:6

**sinews**
the tissue that connects muscles to bones

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- life, live, living, alive
- flesh
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**
- life, live, living, alive
- flesh
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
6 I will place sinews over you and bring flesh onto you. I will cover you with skin and put breath within you so you will live. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.”

UST
6 I will fasten tendons to your bones and cause your bones to be covered with flesh. I will cover the flesh with skin. Then I will breathe into you, and you will become alive. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”
Ezekiel 37:7

General Information:

Ezekiel is speaking.

as I was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh had commanded me to speak” (See: Active or Passive)

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment
• prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment
• prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
Ezekiel 37:8

sinews
This refers to the parts of human bodies that are like hard strings and hold the bones and muscles together. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 37:6.

But there was still no breath in them
The noun “breath” can be stated as the verb “breathing.” Alternate translation: “But they were not breathing” or “But they were not alive”

Translation Words - ULT
• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST
• spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 37:9

the breath
Possible meanings are: 1) “breath” or 2) “spirit” or 3) “wind.”

from the four winds
“from the four directions that the wind can blow in.” This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “from every direction” (See: Idiom)

these who have been killed
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “these people that enemies and disasters have killed” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• life, live, living, alive
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
• spirit, spiritual

ULT
9 Then Yahweh said to me, “Prophesy to the breath, prophesy, son of man, and say to the breath, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Breath, come from the four winds, and breathe on these who have been killed, so they may live.’”

UST
9 Then he said to me, “Son of man, speak a message for me to the wind. Say to the wind, ‘Wind, Yahweh says to you, blow from all four directions. Breathe into these people who have been killed, in order that they can come alive again!’”
Ezekiel 37:10

as I was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh had commanded me” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

10 So I prophesied as I was commanded; the breath came into them and they lived. Then they stood on their feet, a very great army.

UST

10 So I said what he commanded me to say, and then breath entered them, and they began to breathe. They became alive and stood up, like a huge army.
Ezekiel 37:11

The entire house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. (See: Metonymy)

Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

We have been cut off

The people being destroyed and removed from their land is spoken of as if they had been cut off like a person would cut off a branch or piece of cloth. Alternate translation: “Our nation is destroyed” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- hope, hoped
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- decree, decreed
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- hope, hoped
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- decree, decreed
- house
Ezekiel 37:12

I will open your graves and lift you out from them

Yahweh restoring the people and bringing them back to their land is spoken of as if he will bring them back to life again. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

12 Therefore prophesy and say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will open your graves and lift you out from them, my people. I will bring you back to the land of Israel.

UST

12 So speak my message to them and say, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says: My people, it will be as though I will open your graves and cause your corpses to become alive again. I will bring you back to Israel.
Ezekiel 37:13

General Information:
These are Yahweh's words to the house of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
13 Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when I open your graves and bring you out from them, my people.

UST
13 Then when that happens, you my people will know that I, Yahweh, have done this.
Ezekiel 37:14

to rest in your land
“to live peacefully in your own land”

this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT
- life, live, living, alive
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
- life, live, living, alive
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 37:15

the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 37:16

For Judah

Here “For” means “representing.” Alternate translation: “Representing Judah” or “Belonging to Judah”

Judah

The tribe of Judah lived in the southern kingdom of Israel which was called Judah. Here the name is used to refer to the whole southern kingdom. (See: Synecdoche)

the people of Israel, his companions

This refers to the Israelites who lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. Alternate translation: “all the tribes of Judah” or “the tribes of Israel who are part of the kingdom of Judah”

For Joseph, the branch of Ephraim

Joseph was Ephraim’s father. The tribe of Ephraim lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. Here the names are used to represent the whole northern kingdom. (See: Synecdoche)

all the people of Israel, their companions

This refers to the Israelites who lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “all the tribes of Israel” or “the Israelites who were part of the kingdom of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites (2)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Judah
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites (2)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Judah
- house
Ezekiel 37:17

into one stick

“so that they become one stick”

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT
17 Bring both of them together into one stick, so that they become one in your hand.

UST
17 Then join them together to become as though they were one larger wooden stick in your hand.
Ezekiel 37:18

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**what these things of yours mean**

“what your sticks mean” or “why you have these sticks”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- people, people group,

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- people, people group,
Ezekiel 37:19

Behold!

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. Alternate translation: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

the branch of Joseph

“the stick of Joseph.” This represents the kingdom of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

that is in the hand of Ephraim

The word “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “that is in the power of Ephraim” or “that the tribe of Ephraim rules over” (See: Metonymy)

the tribes of Israel his companions

“the other tribes of Israel who are his companions” or “the other tribes of Israel who are part of that kingdom”

the branch of Judah

“the stick of Judah.” This represents the kingdom of Judah. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- Judea
- Ephraim, Ephraimites
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- Judea
- Ephraim, Ephraimites
- hand
- hand
Ezekiel 37:20

before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “while they watched you” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT
20 Hold in your hand the branches that you wrote on before their eyes.

UST
20 Then, Son of man, hold up the pieces of wood that you have written on, in order that the people can see them.
Ezekiel 37:21

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**Behold!**

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- nation
- walk, walked

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- nation
- walk, walked

**ULT**

21 Declare to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am about to take the people of Israel from among the nations where they went. I will gather them from the surrounding lands and I will bring them to their land.

**UST**

21 Say to the people, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I will take you Israelite people out of the countries to which you have been forced to go. I will gather you from all those lands, back to your own land.”
Ezekiel 37:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Israel, Israelites
- nation
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom

**Translation Words - UST**

- Israel, Israelites
- nation
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom

ULT

22 I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and there will be one king as king over all of them, and they will no longer be two nations. They will no longer be divided into two kingdoms.

UST

22 And I will cause you to again be one nation in your land, on the mountains of Israel. And there will be one king to rule over all of you. Never again will you be two nations or divided into two kingdoms.
Ezekiel 37:23

they will be my people and I will be their God

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 11:20.

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- pure, purify, purification
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- pure, purify, purification
- people, people group,
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

23 Then they will no longer defile themselves with their idols, their disgusting things, or any of their other sins. For I will save them from all of their faithless actions with which they have sinned, and I will purify them, so they will be my people and I will be their God. (1)

UST

23 No longer will you defile yourselves by worshiping idols and disgusting statues of your gods, because I will enable you to stop sinning and to stop rejecting me. You will be my people, and I will be your God.'
Ezekiel 37:24

General Information:
Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

David my servant
Yahweh said “David” to refer to a descendant of David. See how you translated “my servant David” in Ezekiel 34:23. Alternate translation: “A descendant of my servant David” (See: Metonymy)

one shepherd over them
This speaks of a king ruling a people as if he were a shepherd leading sheep. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 34:23. (See: Metaphor)

over them
“over the people of Israel”

will walk according to my decrees
This speaks of acting or behaving in a certain way as if it were a person walking. Alternate translation: “will live as I have commanded” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- judge, judgment
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST
- judge, judgment
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
Ezekiel 37:25

had stayed

“had lived”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
25 They will live in the land that I have given to my servant Jacob, where your fathers had stayed. They will live in it forever—they, their children, and their grandchildren, for David my servant will be their chief forever.

UST
25 They will live in the land that I gave to Jacob, who also served me well; they will live in the land where your ancestors lived. They and their children and their grandchildren will live there forever, and the one who will be like King David will be their king forever.
Ezekiel 37:26

General Information:
Yahweh is speaking about the people of Israel.

I will establish
“I will set up” or “I will create”

a covenant of peace
“a covenant that brings peace.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 34:25.

I will establish them
It was implied that Yahweh would establish them in the land of Israel. Alternate translation: “I will set them in the land of Israel” or “I will cause them to live securely in the land of Israel” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

multiply them
“cause their people to increase in number”

my holy place
“my holy sanctuary” or “my holy temple”

in their midst
“among them”

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- covenant
- cut off
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- covenant
- cut off
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT
26 I will establish a covenant of peace with them. It will be an everlasting covenant with them. I will establish them and multiply them and set my holy place in their midst forever.

UST
26 I will make a covenant with them to give them peace; it will be a covenant that will last forever. I will give them that land again and cause their population to increase. And I will put my temple among them forever.
Ezekiel 37:27

My dwelling place

“The place where I live”

I will be their God, and they will be my people

See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 11:20.

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

• God
• people, people group,
Ezekiel 37:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• consecrate, consecrated, consecration
• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• nation
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• consecrate, consecrated, consecration
• Yahweh
• Israel, Israelites
• nation
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
28 Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh who sets Israel apart, when my holy place is among them forever.’”

37:23 [1] Some ancient and most modern versions read in this way: from all of their faithless actions. However, the Hebrew text reads from their dwelling places, which many think makes little sense in this context.

UST
28 Then, when my temple is there again among them, the people of nations will know that I, Yahweh, set apart Israel for my honor.”
Ezekiel 38

Ezekiel 38 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section prophesying against Gog. Later Gog will try to conquer Israel.
Ezekiel 38:1

The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:16. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message" or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
Ezekiel 38:2

**set your face toward Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince...Tubal**

This is a command to stare at Gog and Magog as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezekiel 4:3. Alternate translation: “Stare at the land of Magog and at Gog, the chief prince...Tubal” or “Stare at Gog, the chief prince...Tubal, and at the land of Magog so that they will be harmed” (See: Symbolic Action)

**set your face**

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” represents staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: Metonymy)

**Gog, the land of Magog**

It is implied that Magog is the land over which Gog rules. Alternate translation: “Gog who rules over the land of Magog” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Gog**

This is the name of a leader or king who ruled in the land of Magog. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Magog**

This is the name of an ancient nation that was probably located in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia.

**the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal**

This expression occurs twice in these verses. Some modern versions, however, interpret the Hebrew expression as “the chief of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.” This is another title for Gog. Alternate translation: “who is the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Meshech...Tubal**

See how you translated these names in Ezekiel 32:26.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 38:3

Behold!
This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows. It can be translated as “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I am against you
This idiom means “I am your enemy.” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT
• lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST
• lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT
3 Say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal.

UST
3 Say this: ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Gog, you who rule Meshech and Tubal, I am your enemy.”
Ezekiel 38:4

General Information:
These verses list the various nations who will join Gog's army.

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

set hooks in your jaw
Here “hooks in your jaw” represents God’s control over Gog. People put hooks in the mouths of animals so that they could lead the animals wherever they wanted. (See: Metaphor)

in full armor...holding swords
These phrases describe an army that is ready for battle.

Translation Words - ULT
- command, commandment
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- horseman
- sword, swordsmen
- return
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST
- command, commandment
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- horseman
- sword, swordsmen
- return
- horse, warhorse, horseback
Ezekiel 38:5

with shields and helmets

This phrase describes an army that is ready for battle.

Translation Words - ULT

• Ethiopia, Ethiopian
• Persia, Persians

Translation Words - UST

• Ethiopia, Ethiopian
• Persia, Persians

ULT

5 Persia, Cush, and Libya are with them, all of them with shields and helmets!

UST

5 Your soldiers also include armies from Persia, Ethiopia, and Put, all of them with shields and helmets—
Ezekiel 38:6

**Gomer**
a nation that lived north of the Black Sea

**Beth Togarmah**
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:14.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- people, people group,
- house

**Translation Words - UST**
- people, people group,
- house

**ULT**
6 Gomer and all her troops, and Beth Togarmah, from the far parts of the north, and all its troops! Many peoples are with you!

**UST**
6 also all the soldiers from Gomer and an army from Beth Togarmah—both of these lands that are far north of Israel. Armies of many nations will come with you.’
Ezekiel 38:7

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

your troops assembled with you
“all of your troops that you have gathered to yourself” or “all of your army that you have brought together for yourself”

Translation Words - ULT
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT
7 Get ready! Yes, prepare yourself and your troops assembled with you, and be their commander.

UST
7 Tell Gog this: ‘Get ready, and be prepared to be the commander of all those soldiers.'
You will be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will call you to come for war” (See: Active or Passive)

recovered from the sword

Here the “sword” represents war. Alternate translation: “recovered from war” (See: Metonymy)

that has been gathered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that I have gathered together” (See: Active or Passive)

from many peoples

“from many nations”

a continuous ruin

“destroyed for a long time”

the land’s people will be brought out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will bring the Israelites out” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 38:9

you will go up as a storm goes

This simile means Gog will bring destruction like a large storm does. (See: Simile)

a cloud covering the land

This simile means the army will be so large that it will cover the entire land. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• people, people group,
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• people, people group,
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
9 So you will go up as a storm goes; you will be like a cloud covering the land, you and all your troops, all the many soldiers with you.

UST
9 You and all those armies from many nations will go up to Israel, advancing like a great storm. Your army will be like a huge cloud that covers the land.
Ezekiel 38:10

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

on that day that

“at that time”

plans will form in your heart...you will devise wicked schemes

These phrases mean the same thing and can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: “you will plan to do something very evil” (See: Doublet)

plans will form in your heart

Here “heart” refers to his thinking. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will think of plans” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
Then you will say: “I will go up to the open land; I will go to the quiet people living in safety, all of them living where there are no walls or bars, and where there are no city gates.

You will say this to yourself: “My army will invade a country where the villages do not have walls around them. We will attack people who are peaceful and think that no one will harm them. Their towns and villages do not have walls with gates and bars.”
**Ezekiel 38:12**

**capture booty and steal plunder**

These phrases mean the same thing and can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: “take away all their valuable possessions” (See: Doublet)

**bring my hand**

Here “hand” refers to Gog’s military power. (See: Metonymy)

**against the ruins**

Here “ruins” refers to the people who live in the destroyed cities. Alternate translation: “against the people who live in the ruins” (See: Metonymy)

**at the center of the earth**

“in the middle of the most important countries in the world”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- restore, restoration
- hand
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- restore, restoration
- hand
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 38:13

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

Sheba
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 27:22.

Dedan
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 25:13.

Have you come to plunder? Have you assembled your armies...to haul away much plunder?

These two questions are used to accuse Gog of attacking Israel without cause. These can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: “It is not right for you to assemble your army to plunder, to carry off silver and gold, to take their livestock and property, and to haul away much plunder!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

to take their livestock and property...to haul away much plunder

These phrases have similar meaning and can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: “to take away their livestock and all their valuable possessions” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- gold, golden
Ezekiel 38:14

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel what he is to say to Gog.

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

On that day…learn about them?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that Gog will indeed hear about the people living in Israel. Alternate translation: “On that day, when my people Israel are living securely, you will hear about them.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 38:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• people, people group,
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

• people, people group,
• assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
• horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT
15 You will come from your place far away in the north with a great army, all of them riding on horses, a great company, a large army.

UST
15 You will come from your place far north of Israel, with the armies of many other nations, all riding horses, a huge army.
Ezekiel 38:16

You will attack my people Israel like a cloud that covers the land. In the latter days I will bring you against my land, so the nations might know me when I show myself through you, Gog, to be holy before their eyes.

In the latter days

This refers to the distant future before the world ends. Alternate translation: “In the last days” or “At the end of time” or “In the distant future”

In the latter days...to be holy before their eyes

All the nations will understand that Yahweh is holy when they see what he does to Gog.

might know me

“might know who I am”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- nation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 38:17

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues telling Ezekiel what he is to say to Gog.

Are you not the one...bring you against them?
Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he was the one who brought Gog to the land of Israel. Alternate translation: “You are the one...bring you against them.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

of whom I spoke
“that I spoke about”

in former days
“in the past” or “a long time ago”

by the hand of my servants
Here “hand” refers to the fact that these prophets wrote down Yahweh’s message. Alternate translation: “by means of my servants” or “through my servants” (See: Metonymy)

against them
“against the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
Ezekiel 38:18

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

my wrath will mount up in my anger

Here “mount up” means “rise up” and expresses that his wrath will increase. The words “wrath” and “anger” mean the same thing and emphasize how intense his anger will be. Alternate translation: “my anger will greatly increase” or “I will be very angry with you” (See: Metaphor and Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
Ezekiel 38:19

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.

In my zeal
Here “zeal” refers to Yahweh's desire to defend his honor against Gog's attacks.

in the fire of my anger
The intensity of Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were as hot as fire. Alternate translation: “because my anger was intense” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 38:20

The mountains will be thrown down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will make mountains fall down” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT
20 They will shake before me—the fish of the sea and the birds of the skies, the beasts of the fields, and all the creatures that crawl on the earth, and every person who is on the surface of the land. The mountains will be thrown down and the cliffs will fall, until every wall falls to the earth.

UST
20 The fish in the sea, the birds, the wild animals, and the animals that crawl on the ground, and all the people on the earth will tremble because of what I will do. Mountains will fall down, cliffs will crumble, and walls everywhere will fall to the ground.
Ezekiel 38:21

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog. He speaks of the people of Gog as if they were one man. (See: Metaphor)

I will summon a sword against him

The word “sword” here is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. Alternate translation: “I will cause soldiers to attack him” (See: Metonymy)

each man’s sword will be against his brother

Here “sword” is a metonym for the person who uses the sword to fight. Alternate translation: “all of his soldiers will fight each other” (See: Metonymy)

his brother

“his fellow soldier”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- sword, swordsmen
- sword, swordsmen
- declare, proclaim, announce
Ezekiel 38:22

I will judge him by plague and blood

Here “blood” is a metonym for injury and death. Alternate translation: “I will judge him by causing him to be sick and by sending soldiers to kill him” (See: Metonymy)

overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur I will rain down upon him

It may be helpful to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: “I will rain down overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur upon him”

hailstones

ice that falls out of the sky

Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 38:23

show my greatness and my holiness

The abstract nouns “greatness” and “holiness” can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “show that I am great and holy” (See: Abstract Nouns)

I will make myself known in the eyes of the many nations

Here “eyes” refers to sight, which is a metonym for understanding. Alternate translation: “I will cause many nations to understand who I am” (See: Metonymy)

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- set apart
- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- set apart
- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 39

Ezekiel 39 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes the prophecy against Gog. God will destroy Gog and his army.
Ezekiel 39:1

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to Gog.

son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

Behold!

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. Alternate translation: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

I am against you

“I am your enemy”

chief of Meshech and Tubal

Some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression as “prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.” This is another title for Gog. See how you translated these names in Ezekiel 38:2. Alternate translation: “who is the prince of Meshech and Tubal” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• son
**Ezekiel 39:2**

**I will turn you and lead you on**

God speaks of leading Gog as if Gog was an animal. (See: Metaphor)

**bring you up**

God speaks of bringing Gog “up” to Israel because it was located in the mountains.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Israel, Israelites
- return

**Translation Words - UST**
- Israel, Israelites
- return

**ULT**
2 I will turn you and lead you on; I will bring you up from the far north and bring you to the mountains of Israel.

**UST**
2 I will turn you around and drag you and your armies from far north of Israel and send you to fight on the mountains of Israel.
Ezekiel 39:3

I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.

Knocking Gog’s bow and arrows out of his hands is spoken of as if God is destroying Gog’s military power. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• hand

ULT

3 Then I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.

UST

3 When you are there, I will snatch your bows from your left hands and cause your arrows to fall from your right hands.
Ezekiel 39:4

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

your troops and the soldiers
These refer to the same people. It can be stated as a single phrase. Alternate translation: “all your soldiers” (See: Doublet)

I will give you to the birds of prey and the wild beasts of the fields for food
The scavengers eating the corpses is spoken of as if Yahweh was giving food to them. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
• Israel, Israelites
• people, people group,

Translation Words - UST
• Israel, Israelites
• people, people group,
Ezekiel 39:5

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- face, facial

ULT

5 You will fall on the open field, for I myself declare it—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST

5 You will die in the open fields. This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said that it will happen.
Ezekiel 39:6

I will send out fire on Magog

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh will send literal fire down on Gog and his army or 2) “fire” is a metonym for the destruction that it causes. (See: Metonymy)

Magog

This is the name of an ancient nation that probably lived in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 38:2.

know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:7. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 39:7

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel

Here the metonym “my holy name” refers to Yahweh's character. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will make my people, Israel, know that I am holy” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• Yahweh
• name
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites
• people, people group,
• nation
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• Yahweh
• name
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites
• people, people group,
• nation
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
7 For I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel, and I will no longer allow my holy name to be profaned; the nations will know that I am Yahweh, the Holy One in Israel.

UST
7 I will enable my Israelite people to know that I am holy. I will no longer allow them to mock me, and the people groups in the other lands will know that I am Yahweh, the God whom Israel worships and honors.
Ezekiel 39:8

**Behold!**

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. Alternate translation: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**is coming...will take place**

These two phrases have similar meaning and emphasize the fact that this will really happen. Alternate translation: “is surely going to happen” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir

**ULT**

8 Behold! The day is coming, and it will take place—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**UST**

8 That day is fast approaching. I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that those things will happen soon.
Ezekiel 39:9

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

**to kindle and make fires**

These two phrases mean the same thing. The Israelites will use the wood from the weapons as kindling for fires. Alternate translation: “to start fires” (See: Doublet)

**small shields, large shields, bows, arrows, the clubs and spears**

This list includes all the typical weapons of war of that day. It may represent weapons in general.

**clubs**

wooden sticks used as a weapon

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
Ezekiel 39:10

wanted to take...wanted to plunder

Here “to take” and “to plunder” mean the same thing. Gog intended to take Israel’s possessions, but Yahweh prevented him so that he was not able to do that. (See: Doublet)

will plunder...wanted to plunder

Translate “plunder” as in Ezekiel 23:46.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT 10 They will not gather wood from the fields or cut down trees from the forests, since they will burn the weapons; they will take from those who wanted to take from them; they will plunder those who wanted to plunder them—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

UST 10 They will not need to gather firewood in the fields or cut wood from trees in the forests, because those weapons will be all the firewood that they will need. And they will take valuable things from those who took valuable things from them, and steal things from people who stole things from them. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare will happen.
Ezekiel 39:11

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh begins to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

it will happen on that day that
This signals an important event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could use it here.

to the east of the sea
A few modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “to the east toward the sea.”

It will block
Possible meanings are 1) “The grave will block” or 2) “The dead army will block.”

There they
“There the house of Israel”

They will call it
“People will call it”

Valley of Hamon Gog
“Valley of the Great Army of Gog”

Translation Words - ULT
- Israel, Israelites
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST
- Israel, Israelites
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- declare, proclaim, announce
Ezekiel 39:12

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

seven months

“7 months.” (See: Numbers)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

will bury them in order to purify the land

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

bury them

“bury the soldiers of Gog's army”

Translation Words - ULT

• pure, purify, purification
• Israel, Israelites
• earth, earthen, earthly
• house

Translation Words - UST

• pure, purify, purification
• Israel, Israelites
• earth, earthen, earthly
• house
Ezekiel 39:13

dthis is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

13 For all the people of the land will bury them; it will be a memorable day for them when I am glorified—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST

13 All the people of Israel will do the work of burying them. The day when I win that victory they will honor me, and they will remember that day forever.
Ezekiel 39:14

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

through the land

“through the land of Israel”

those who were traveling through, but who died and their bodies remained on the surface of the land

This refers to the dead bodies of Gog’s soldiers whom Yahweh killed as they entered the land.

so that they may bury them

“so that the designated men may bury the dead bodies”

to cleanse the land

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

seventh month

This “seventh” is the ordinal number for seven. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• bury, buried, burial
• face, facial
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• bury, buried, burial
• face, facial
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 39:15

any human bone

Bones would be all that remained of the corpses after a period of time.

they will put a marker by it, until gravediggers come and bury it

There are apparently two groups of men. The first will mark the location of corpses, and the second group will bury them.

Translation Words - ULT

• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
• bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
• bury, buried, burial
Ezekiel 39:16

purify the land

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

Hamonah

This name means “Great Army.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- pure, purify, purification
- name
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- pure, purify, purification
- name
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 39:17

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh gives Ezekiel a message for the birds and the wild animals about what they will do to Gog.

son of man
“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

to the sacrifice
“to the feast” or “to the slaughter.” Yahweh means that he will give the birds and animals a very good meal and not that he is worshiping them.

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- flesh
- blood
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- flesh
- blood
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT
17 Now to you, son of man, the Lord Yahweh says this: Say to all the winged birds and all the wild beasts in the fields, ‘Gather together and come. Gather from all around to the sacrifice that I myself am making for you, a large sacrifice on the mountains of Israel, so that you may consume flesh and drink blood.

UST
17 Yahweh said to me, “Son of man, this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say: Summon every kind of bird and wild animal. Say to them, ‘Gather together from everywhere and come to the feast that Yahweh is preparing for you. It will be a great feast on the mountains of Israel. There you will eat men's flesh and drink their blood.”
Ezekiel 39:18

**they will be rams, lambs, goats, and bulls**

Yahweh is speaking with irony. Normally people sacrificed animals to God. Here, God is sacrificing people to animals. Alternate translation: “as if they were male sheep, lambs, goats, and bulls” (See: Irony)

**they were all fattened in Bashan**

That can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they all became fat while grazing in Bashan” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- might, mighty, mighty works
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- might, mighty, mighty works
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
Ezekiel 39:19

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message for the birds and the wild animals about what they will do to Gog.

to your satisfaction

The abstract noun “satisfaction” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “until you are satisfied” (See: Abstract Nouns)

until drunkenness

The abstract noun “drunkenness” can be stated as a adjective. Alternate translation: “until you become drunk” or “until you are intoxicated” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
Ezekiel 39:20

chariot

The metonym "chariot" refers to the men in the chariots. Alternate translation: "chariot driver" (See: Metonymy)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- might, mighty, mighty works
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- might, mighty, mighty works
- horse, warhorse, horseback
Ezekiel 39:21

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh gives Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

I will set my glory among the nations

Yahweh speaks of his glory as if he will place it in the middle of the nations where they can see it. Alternate translation: “I will make the nations see my glory” (See: Metaphor)

my judgment that I perform and my hand that I have set against them

Both of these phrases refer to the punishment that Yahweh will inflict upon Israel and are repeated for emphasis. They can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: “the way that I will judge them” (See: Doublet)

my hand

Here the metonym “hand” refers to Yahweh's power that he uses to bring punishment. (See: Metonymy)

against them

“against Gog and his great army”

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- judge, judgment
- hand
- nation
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- judge, judgment
- hand
- nation
- nation
**Ezekiel 39:22**

**The house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**ULT**

22 The house of Israel will know that I am Yahweh their God from that day onward.

**UST**

22 At that time, the Israelite people will learn that I, Yahweh their God, have the power to do what I say that I will do.
Ezekiel 39:23

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

because of their iniquity by which they betrayed me

The abstract noun “iniquity” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “because they sinned and betrayed me” (See: Abstract Nouns)

I hid my face from them

Here “face” refers to Yahweh’s help and protection. Alternate translation: “I stopped protecting them and taking care of them” (See: Idiom)

gave them into the hand of their adversaries

Here the metonym “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “gave their enemies power over them” (See: Metonymy)

all of them fell by the sword

Here falling represents being killed, and the sword represents battle. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 32:23. Alternate translation: “their enemies killed them all in battle” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel, Israelites
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• hand
• adversary, enemy
• nation
• sword, swordsmen
• face, facial
• exile, exiled
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

• Israel, Israelites
• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• hand
• adversary, enemy
• nation
• sword, swordsmen
• face, facial
• exile, exiled
• house
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 39:24

their uncleanness and their sins

This speaks of the people's disgusting behavior as if they were physically unclean. Here "uncleanness" means basically the same as "sins." Alternate translation: "their disgusting behavior and their sins" or "their sins" (See: Metaphor and Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST
• face, facial
Ezekiel 39:25

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

will restore the fortunes of Jacob

Translate “will restore the fortunes” as in Ezekiel 16:53. However, some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “will bring Jacob back from captivity.”

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

act with zeal for my holy name

“make sure that they honor me”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- zeal, zealous
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- zeal, zealous
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- house
Ezekiel 39:26

they will bear their shame and all the treason

Experts do not agree on the meaning of this phrase. Possible meanings are 1) “they will regret their shame and all the treason” or 2) “they will forget their shame and all the treason.”

the treason

“the unfaithfulness”

Translation Words - ULT

• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• transgress, transgression

Translation Words - UST

• faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
• transgress, transgression
Ezekiel 39:27

I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations

Here "sight" is a metonym for understanding. Alternate translation: "many nations will understand that I am holy because of what I did for the house of Israel" (See: *Metonymy*)

Translation Words - ULT

- set apart
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- set apart
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- nation

ULT

27 When I restore them from the peoples and gather them from the lands of their enemies, I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations.

UST

27 When I have brought them back from their enemies' countries and gathered them together in Israel, the people of many nations will know how holy I am because of what I did for my people.
Ezekiel 39:28

Connecting Statement:
Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

I sent them into captivity...I will gather them back to their land

At the time when Ezekiel wrote, Israel was still in captivity in Babylon.

Translation Words - ULT
- God
- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
- God
- Yahweh
- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 39:29

I will no longer hide my face from them

Here “no longer hide my face” is an idiom that means Yahweh will not continue to abandon Israel to exile in Babylon. Alternate translation: “I will no longer abandon them” (See: Idiom)

when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel

Here to give the Spirit abundantly is spoken of as to “pour out” the Spirit. Alternate translation: “when I generously give my Spirit to the house of Israel” (See: Metaphor)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)
Ezekiel 40

Ezekiel 40 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The new temple and city

In a vision, Ezekiel saw a man measuring the wall of a new temple. The next chapters will give precise measurements for the construction of a temple to be built. This was not the temple of Ezra's day. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 40:1

twenty-fifth...tenth...fourteenth

These words are the ordinal forms of 25, 10, and 14. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

of our captivity

Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem, but not to the reader. Alternate translation: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

the beginning of the year on the tenth day of the month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is in April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the city was captured

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Babylonians captured the city of Jerusalem” (See: Active or Passive)

the hand of Yahweh

Here “hand” refers to Yahweh’s power to show Ezekiel supernatural visions. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:3.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- head

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- head
Ezekiel 40:2

**He brought me to rest**

“He put me down”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- rest, rested, restless

**Translation Words - UST**
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- rest, rested, restless

ULT
2 In visions from God he brought me to the land of Israel. He brought me to rest on a very high mountain; to the south were what appeared to be buildings of a city.

UST
2 He set me on a very high mountain. On the south side of that mountain there were some buildings that looked like part of a city.
Ezekiel 40:3

**he brought me there**

“Yahweh brought me to the place that had the buildings”

**Behold**

Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**His appearance was like the appearance of bronze**

The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “The way he appeared was like the way bronze appears” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**linen cord**

“a rope made of linen.” This is a tool for measuring very long distances.

**linen**

This is a type of cloth. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:2.

**measuring stick**

This is a tool for measuring shorter distances.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- bronze

**Translation Words - UST**

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- bronze
Ezekiel 40:4

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

fix your mind on

This idiom means “pay attention to” or “think about.” (See: Idiom)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• heart
• appoint, appointed
• Israel, Israelites
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• heart
• appoint, appointed
• Israel, Israelites
• house

ULT

4 The man said to me, “Son of man, look with your eyes and listen with your ears, and fix your mind on all that I am revealing to you, for you were brought here so I could reveal them to you. Report everything that you will see to the house of Israel.”

UST

4 He said to me, “Son of man, look carefully at everything that I am going to show you, and pay attention to everything that I say and everything that I will show you, because that is why God brought you here. And then later you must tell the Israelite people everything that you have seen here.”
Ezekiel 40:5

surrounding the temple area

“entirely around the temple area”

Each long cubit was a cubit and a handbreadth in length

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. Alternate translation: “These were the long cubits, which were the length of a regular cubit plus a handbreadth” (See: Biblical Distance)

a handbreadth

“the width of a hand.” This was about 8 centimeters. (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• house

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• house

ULT
5 There was a wall surrounding the temple area. The length of the measuring stick in the man's hand was six long cubits. Each long cubit was a cubit and a handbreadth in length. So he measured the wall, and it was one measuring stick thick and one rod high.

UST
5 In the vision I saw that there was a wall that completely surrounded the temple area. The measuring stick in the man's hand was three and one-tenth meters long. He measured the wall and it was three and one-tenth meters thick and three and one-tenth meters high.
Ezekiel 40:6

one stick
“it was one stick wide.” This was about 3.2 meters.

the temple gate that faced east
This gate was part of the wall that surrounded the temple area. It was not part of the temple building itself. Alternate translation: “the gate on the eastern side of the wall surrounding the temple” or “the gate on the eastern wall of the temple courtyard”

up its steps
“up the steps of the gate”

in depth
“from the front edge of the threshold to its back edge”

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial

ULT
6 Then he went to the temple gate that faced east. He went up its steps and measured the threshold of the gate—one stick in depth. [1]

UST
6 Then he went to the gate in the temple wall on the temple’s east side. He climbed the steps and measured the gateway that faced outward; it was three and one-tenth meters deep.
Ezekiel 40:7

The guard chambers

These were rooms that were built inside of the gate where guards stayed to protect the gate.

five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

there were five cubits between any two of the chambers

“the chambers next to each other were five cubits apart” or “there were five cubits between a chamber and the one next to it”

the chambers

“the rooms”

portico

This was a covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 40:8

portico
This was a covering in front of a doorway or gateway with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

one stick
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5.

Translation Words - ULT
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
8 He measured the portico of the gate; it was one stick in length.

UST
8 Then he measured the portico that was after the gate; it was three and one-tenth meters long.
Ezekiel 40:9

**the portico of the gate facing the temple**

Here “facing the temple” means that the portico was attached to the gate in the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: “the portico of the gate on the inner side of the wall that surrounded the temple”

**two cubits**

about one meter (See: Biblical Distance)

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 40:10

had the same measurement

“were the same size”

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
10 There were three guard chambers on either side of the east gate, and each of them had the same measurement, and the walls that separated them had the same measurement.

UST
10 Inside the east gate there were three alcoves for guards on each side of the gate. They all had the same length and depth. And the distance of wall between them was the same.
Ezekiel 40:11

ten cubits
about 5.4 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

thirteen cubits
about 7 meters

Translation Words - ULT
  • gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
  • gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 40:12

The chambers measured six cubits

“The chambers were 6 cubits long”

six cubits

about 3.2 meters

one cubit

“54 centimeters” or “about one-half meter”

ULT

12 He measured the wall that was bordering the front of the chambers—one cubit high. The chambers measured six cubits on each side.

UST

12 Running along in front of the alcoves was a low wall one-half meter high. Each of the alcoves was three and one-tenth meters long on all sides.
Ezekiel 40:13

twenty-five cubits
about 13.5 meters
	hath of the second
“the entrance of the second chamber”

Translation Words - ULT
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
13 Then he measured the gateway from the roof of one chamber to that of the next chamber—twenty-five cubits, from the entrance of the first chamber to that of the second.

UST
13 Then the man measured the gateway's width from the roof of the alcove on one side, to the roof of the alcove on the other side. The distance was 13 and one-half, from one alcove's entrance to that of the other.
Ezekiel 40:14

sixty cubits
about 32 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

portico
This was a covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
14 Then he measured the wall that went between the guard chambers—sixty cubits in length; he measured as far as the gate’s portico.

UST
14 Then the man measured along the wall that separated the alcoves from each other; it was thirty-two meters long. He measured them as far as the gate’s portico.
Ezekiel 40:15

**fifty cubits**

about 27 meters

**Translation Words - ULT**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- face, facial

ULT

15 The entrance from the front of the gate to the other end of the gate's portico was fifty cubits.

UST

15 The distance from the entrance of the gate to the far end of its portico was twenty-seven meters.
Ezekiel 40:16

**closed windows**
Possible meanings are 1) “closed windows” or 2) “windows with shutters” or 3) “narrow windows.”

**likewise for the porches**
“the porches also had closed windows all around”

**each jamb**
jambs are the sides of a wooden frame of a door

**ULT**
16 There were closed windows toward the chambers and toward their pillars within the gates all around; and likewise for the porches. The were windows all around the inside, and each jamb was decorated with palm trees.

**UST**
16 There were narrow windows in the walls of all the alcoves, and also in the inner walls between the alcoves. The portico also had these same windows on its inner side. The wall that ran between the alcoves was decorated with carvings of palm trees.
Ezekiel 40:17

General Information:
There were two walls surrounding the temple. The outer wall surrounded the outer courtyard, and within that, the inner wall surrounded the inner courtyard. The inner courtyard was higher than the outer courtyard. Each wall had gates on the east, north, and south sides.

the man brought me to the outer courtyard of the temple

“The man brought me from outside the temple area into the outer courtyard of the temple”

outer courtyard

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:5.

Behold

The word “Behold” here indicates that Ezekiel saw something interesting.

pavement

a flat floor that is made out of rocks

with thirty rooms next to the pavement

“and there were 30 rooms all around the pavement” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• court, courtyard

Translation Words - UST

• court, courtyard
Ezekiel 40:18

went up to

“went all the way to”

Translation Words - ULT
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
18 The pavement went up to the side of the gates, and its width was the same as the gates’ length. This was the lower pavement.

UST
18 The stone pavement was all around the courtyard, and it extended out from the walls into the courtyard for the same distance as the gate entrances. That was the lower pavement.
Ezekiel 40:19

the front of the lower gate to the front of the inner gate

The lower gate was on the wall of the outer courtyard, and the inner gate was on the wall of the inner courtyard. Alternate translation: “the front of the outer gate to the front of the inner gate”

one hundred cubits

about 54 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

the same on the north side

“It was the same on the north side” or “on the north side, the distance from the outer gate to the inner gate was also one hundred cubits”

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 40:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard
- face, facial

ULT
20 Then he measured the length and width of the gate that was at the north of the outer court.

UST
20 Then he measured how long and how wide was the gateway on the north side, which was an entrance into the outer courtyard of the temple complex.
There were three chambers on either side of that gate, and the gate and its portico measured the same as the main gate—fifty cubits in total length and twenty-five cubits in width.

There were three alcoves for guards on each side of that gateway. From the gateway to the end of its portico was twenty-seven meters, and they were thirteen and one-half meters wide.
Ezekiel 40:22

General Information:
Ezekiel continues to describe the vision of the temple and of the man who looked like bronze.

Its windows
The word “Its” refers to the gate that was on the north side of the outer courtyard. Alternate translation: “The northern gate's windows”

chambers
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:7.

corresponded to the gate that faced east
“were like those of the eastern gate” or “were like those of the eastern gate of the outer courtyard”

Translation Words - ULT
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial
Ezekiel 40:23

**inner courtyard**

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

**in front of the gate facing north**

“directly across from the northern gate” or “across the outer courtyard from the northern gate”

**the gate facing north**

“the gate on the northern side of the outer courtyard”

**just as also there was a gate to the east**

“just as there was a eastern gate to the inner courtyard” or “just as there was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the eastern gate”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

**one hundred cubits**

about 54 meters

**Translation Words - ULT**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard

**Translation Words - UST**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard
Ezekiel 40:24

measured the same as the other outer gates
“had the same measurements as the northern and eastern gates”

Translation Words - ULT
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 40:25

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

fifty cubits
about 27 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

twenty-five cubits
about 13.5 meters

ULT
25 There were closed windows in the gateway and its portico just as at that gate. The south gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

UST
25 The gateway and its portico had narrow windows along the walls, as on the other sides. The gateway and its portico measured twenty-five meters long and thirteen and one-half wide.
Ezekiel 40:26

portico
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16

on either side
“on both sides”

ULT
26 There were seven steps up to the gate and its portico, and there were carvings of palm trees on the walls on either side.

UST
26 There were seven steps leading up to that gate and its portico. It also had carvings of palm trees on the walls that were between the rooms.
Ezekiel 40:27

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

one hundred cubits
about 54 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard

Translation Words - UST
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard

ULT
27 There was a gate to the inner courtyard on the southern side, and the man measured from that gate to the gate of the south entrance—one hundred cubits in distance.

UST
27 Across the outer courtyard from the south gate was a gate opening onto the inner courtyard. The man measured from that gateway to the entrance on the south side of the outer courtyard; it was also fifty-four meters in distance.
Ezekiel 40:28

inner courtyard

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

by way of its southern gate

“through its southern gate”

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

28 Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by way of its southern gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates.

UST

28 Then the man brought me through the south entrance into the inner courtyard, and he measured the south entrance. It measured the same as the other gates.
Ezekiel 40:29

chambers
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:7.

porticos
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

measured the same
“had the same measurements”

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

fifty cubits
about 27 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

twenty-five cubits
about 13.5 meters

five cubits
about 2.7 meters
Ezekiel 40:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
30 There were also porticos all around the inner wall; these were twenty-five cubits in length and five cubits in width.

UST
30 The porticos of the inner gates, which led to the inner courtyard, were about thirteen and one-half meters long and two and three-quarters meters wide.
Ezekiel 40:31

This portico faced the outer courtyard

“The portico’s entrance was towards the outer courtyard”

with carved palm trees

“and it had carvings of palm trees”

ULT
31 This portico faced the outer courtyard with carved palm trees on its walls and eight steps going up to it.

UST
31 The portico’s entrance faced the outer courtyard. Carvings of palm trees decorated the walls, and there were eight steps leading up to it.
Ezekiel 40:32

to the inner courtyard by the eastern way
“to the east side of the inner courtyard”

Translation Words - ULT
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
32 Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by the eastern way and measured the gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates.

UST
32 Then the man led me to the east side of the inner courtyard, and he measured the gate. It had the same measurements as the other gates.
Ezekiel 40:33

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

fifty cubits
about 27 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

twenty-five cubits
about 13.5 meters

ULT
33 Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

UST
33 Its alcoves, walls, and portico measured the same as the others. The gate and its portico had windows all around. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half wide.
Ezekiel 40:34

Its portico faced the outer courtyard

The entrance of its portico was towards the outer courtyard

**Translation Words - ULT**
- court, courtyard

**Translation Words - UST**
- court, courtyard

ULT
34 Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

UST
34 Its portico faced the outer courtyard. It also had carvings of palm trees decorating the walls, and it had eight steps leading up to it.
Ezekiel 40:35

measured the same
“had the same measurements”

Translation Words - ULT
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
35 Next the man brought me to the northern gate and measured it; it measured the same as the other gates.

UST
35 Then he led me to the entrance on the north side and measured it. It measured the same as the other entrances.
Ezekiel 40:36

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

fifty cubits
about 27 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

twenty-five cubits
about 13.5 meters
Ezekiel 40:37

Its portico faced the outer courtyard

“The entrance of its portico was toward the outer courtyard”

on either side of it

“on both sides of it”

Translation Words - ULT

- court, courtyard

Translation Words - UST

- court, courtyard

ULT

37 Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

UST

37 Its portico faced the outer courtyard. It also had carvings of palm trees decorating the walls, and it had eight steps leading up to it.
Ezekiel 40:38

by each of the inner gateways

“in each of the inner gates”

they rinsed the burnt offerings

Possible meanings for “they” are 1) the people who were bringing offerings or 2) the priests who killed the animals.

the burnt offerings

the animals that would be killed and burned as offerings

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 40:39

**There were two tables on each side of each portico**

There were four tables—two on each side of each portico

**the burnt offering was slaughtered**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they killed the burnt offering” or “they killed the animals that they would burn as an offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

**Translation Words - UST**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

**ULT**

39 There were two tables on each side of each portico, on which the burnt offering was slaughtered, and also the sin offering and the guilt offering.

**UST**

39 In each portico were four tables, two on each side. On those tables would be slaughtered the animals that were to be completely burned, also the animals for offerings of sins that people had committed, and offerings that acknowledged their guilt for having sinned against other people.
Ezekiel 40:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

40 By the wall of the courtyard, going up to the gate to the north, there were two tables. Also on the other side there were two tables at the gate's portico.

UST

40 Just outside the inner courtyard, to the left of the steps leading up to its north gate, there were two tables, and to the right of the steps were two more tables.
There were four tables on either side by the gate; they slaughtered animals on the eight tables.

There were four tables on the outer side of each inner courtyard gate, and there were also four tables on the inner side. The animals to be sacrificed were slaughtered on these tables.
Ezekiel 40:42

There were four tables of cut stone

These were apparently different tables than the eight tables on which the sacrifices were killed. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "There were also four tables of cut stone" or "There were four other tables made of cut stone" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

of cut stone

“that were made out of stone that had been cut”

cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

one and a half cubits

about 0.8 meter (See: Biblical Distance)

one cubit

about one-half meter
Ezekiel 40:43

Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth in length were fastened in the portico all around

“All around the portico, people had attached hooks that were a handbreadth long and had two prongs each”

Two-pronged hooks

something that has two long curved points, which people can hang things on

a handbreadth in length

about 8 centimeters (See: Biblical Distance)

the flesh of the offerings would be put on the tables

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they would put the flesh of the offerings on the tables” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• flesh
• temple

Translation Words - UST

• flesh
• temple
Ezekiel 40:44

the inner gate

This is the inner gate on the north.

singers’ chambers

“rooms for singers.” However, some ancient and modern versions read only “chambers” without the reference to singers.

one on the north side facing south, and the other on the south side facing north

The word “chamber” or “room” is understood from the previous phrase. The phrase “facing south” means that its door is on its south side, and “facing north” means that its door is on its north side. Alternate translation: “one room on the north side facing south, and the other room on the south side facing north” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- court, courtyard
- face, facial
- face, facial
Ezekiel 40:45

This room facing south

This refers to the chamber on the north side of the inner courtyard. Alternate translation: “This room whose door is on its south side” or “This room on the north side of the inner courtyard”

who are on duty in the temple

“who are working in the temple” or “who are responsible for guarding the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- face, facial
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- face, facial
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- house

ULT

45 Then the man said to me, “This room facing south is for the priests who are on duty in the temple.

UST

45 The man said to me, “The room whose door faces south is for the priests who are working in the temple.”
Ezekiel 40:46

General Information:
The man continues speaking to Ezekiel in the vision.

The room facing north
This refers to the room on the south side of the inner courtyard. The door of the room was on the north side of the room. Alternate translation: “This room whose door is on its north side” or “This room on the south side of the inner courtyard”

the priests on duty at the altar
“the priests who were offering sacrifices on the altar”

come near to Yahweh to serve him
“approach Yahweh in his temple in order to serve him”

Translation Words - ULT

• altar
• son
• son
• Yahweh
• priest, priesthood
• Levi, Levite, Levitical
• face, facial
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

• altar
• son
• son
• Yahweh
• priest, priesthood
• Levi, Levite, Levitical
• face, facial
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 40:47

he measured
“the man measured”

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

one hundred cubits
about 54 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

with the altar
“and the altar was”

the house
This refers to the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house
Ezekiel 40:48

portico
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

the house
this refers to the temple

cubits
See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5.

taxe cubits
about 2.7 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

fourteen cubits
about 7.5 meters

three cubits
about 1.6 meters

Translation Words - ULT
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

Translation Words - UST
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house
The length of the portico was twenty cubits, and its depth was eleven cubits. There were steps that went up to it and columns that stood on either side of it.

40:6 [1] After one stick in depth, the Hebrew text reads in addition: one threshold one stick in depth. Many modern versions, however, leave this expression out, because it seems to be a repetition of preceding text.

40:48 [2] Instead of the walls on each side of it were three cubits in width, the Hebrew text reads the entrance was three cubits in width, but this seems to be a mistake, judging from the preceding words in this verse.

40:49 [3] Instead of steps, some ancient and modern versions read ten steps.


The portico was eleven meters wide, and its depth was six meters on each side. There were steps leading up to it, and there were columns on each side of the portico.

Translation Words - ULT
• column, pillar

Translation Words - UST
• column, pillar
Ezekiel 41

Ezekiel 41 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on the courtyard of the temple. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 41:1

**General Information:**

The man in Ezekiel’s vision (Ezekiel 40:3) continues to show Ezekiel around the temple.

**the temple’s holy place**

the room in the temple in front of the “most holy place”

**six cubits in width on either side**

These cubits were the “long” cubits (Ezekiel 40:5), 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. “they were six cubits in width on both sides”

**six cubits**

about 3.2 meters. (See: Biblical Distance)

**cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. (See: Biblical Distance)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- temple

**Translation Words - UST**

- temple
Ezekiel 41:2

**ten cubits**
about 5.4 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

**five cubits**
about 2.7 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

**the dimensions**
“the size”

**forty cubits**
about 22 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

**twenty cubits**
about 11 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

ULT
2 The width of the doorway was ten cubits; the wall on each side was five cubits in length. Then the man measured the dimensions of the holy place—forty cubits in length and twenty cubits in width.

UST
2 The entrance was five and two-fifths meters wide, and the walls of each side of it were two and three-quarters meters long. He also measured the holy place. It was twenty-two meters long and eleven meters wide.
Ezekiel 41:3

two cubits
about 1.1 meter (See: Biblical Distance)

cubits
Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. (See: Biblical Distance)
six cubits
about 3.2 meters (See: Biblical Distance)
seven cubits
about 3.8 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

ULT
3 Then the man went into the very holy place and measured the posts of the doorway—two cubits, and the doorway was six cubits in width. The walls on either side were seven cubits in width.

UST
3 Then he entered the inner room of the temple, the very holy place, and measured the walls to either side of the entrance; each was one meter wide. The doorway was three and one-tenth meters wide, and each of the walls on each side of the entrance was three and four-fifths meters long.
Ezekiel 41:4

twenty cubits

about 11 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple
- face, facial
Ezekiel 41:5

the house
the temple

six cubits
about 3.2 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

cubits
Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. (See: Biblical Distance)

four cubits
about 2 meters

Translation Words - UST

- house
- house

Translation Words - ULT

- house
- house

ULT
5 Then the man measured the wall of the house—it was six cubits thick. The width of each side room around the house was four cubits in width.

UST
5 Then he measured the wall of the temple; it was three and one-tenth meters thick. There was a row of rooms along the outside wall of the temple. Each of those rooms was two meters wide.
Ezekiel 41:6

three levels
“three stories”

There were ledges around the wall of the house

“The house had ledges all around for the side rooms all around.” This way the side rooms could rest on the ledge of the wall.

to support

“so that the ledges could support”

for there was no support put in the wall of the house

“for there were no supports in the wall of the house.” The people who built the temple did not want stones or wood that would support the side rooms to be sticking out from the wall of the sanctuary.

Translation Words - ULT

• house
• house

Translation Words - UST

• house
• house
Ezekiel 41:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- house
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- house
- house
- house

ULT
7 So the side rooms widened and went around going up, for the house went around higher and higher all around; the rooms widened as the house went up, and a stairway went up to the highest level, through the middle level.

UST
7 Each of the side rooms was wider than the one below it. The most narrow rooms were built first, at the bottom. Then a wider set of rooms was built over it, and the widest set was at the top. A set of stairs was built from the lowest level through the middle level to the highest level.
Ezekiel 41:8

a raised part
a platform

chambers
small rooms

a full stick
Translate “stick” as in Ezekiel 40:5.

cubits
Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. (See: Biblical Distance)

six cubits
about 3.2 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house
Ezekiel 41:9

five cubits
about 2.7 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house

ULT
9 The width of the wall of the side rooms on the outside was five cubits. There was an open space to the outside of these rooms in the sanctuary.

UST
9 The outer wall of those side rooms was two and three-quarters meters thick. All around the sanctuary there was an open area between those side rooms.
Ezekiel 41:10

**the priests’ outer side rooms**

“the side rooms of the priests that were further out from the sanctuary”

**twenty cubits**

about 11 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in Ezekiel 40:5. (See: Biblical Distance)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- house
Ezekiel 41:11

five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: Biblical Distance)

The width of this open area was five cubits all around

“The entire space between the chambers and the temple was five cubits wide, all around the temple”
Ezekiel 41:12

The building that faced the courtyard on the west side was seventy cubits in width

This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “There was a building on the west side of the temple area, and its entrance was towards the courtyard. It was seventy cubits in width”

seventy cubits...five cubits...ninety cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. “70 cubits...5 cubits...90 cubits” or “about 38 meters...about 2.7 meters...about 49 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
Ezekiel 41:13

one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. “100 cubits” or “about 54 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house
Ezekiel 41:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial
• house

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
• house

ULT

14 The width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary was also one hundred cubits.

UST

14 The courtyard on the east side of the temple, across the front of the temple, was also fifty-four meters wide.
Ezekiel 41:15

the galleries

“the balconies.” The balconies were places that were built higher up than the rest of the building. People could go into balconies and look down on the main floor of the building.

one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. “100 cubits” or “about 54 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

the portico

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
Ezekiel 41:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• threshold, doorway
• threshold, doorway

Translation Words - UST

• threshold, doorway
• threshold, doorway

ULT
16 the inner walls and the windows, including the narrow windows, and the galleries all around on three levels, were all paneled in wood.

UST
16 the inner walls above and below the narrow windows, and the galleries on all the stories—all these things were covered with thin panels of wood.
Ezekiel 41:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house

ULT
17 Above the entryway to the inner sanctuary and spaced along the walls there was a measured pattern.

UST
17 All the walls inside the temple were decorated with carvings of winged creatures and palm trees; between each figure of a winged creature was a carving of a palm tree.
Ezekiel 41:18

was decorated
“was made beautiful”

cherubim
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:3.

cherub
This is the singular form of “cherubim.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:9.

Translation Words - ULT
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST
• face, facial
Ezekiel 41:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- face, facial
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- face, facial
- house

**ULT**

19 the face of a man looked toward a palm tree on one side, and the face of a young lion looked toward a palm tree on the other side. They were carved all around the entire house.

**UST**

18-19 Each winged creature had two faces. One face was the face of a human, and one was the face of a lion. Those figures were carved on the walls all around the inside of the temple, and each face looked at the carving of a palm tree.
Ezekiel 41:20

the house
“the temple”

Translation Words - ULT
• temple

Translation Words - UST
• temple

ULT
20 From the ground to above the doorway, cherubim and palm trees were carved on the outer wall of the house.

UST
20 They covered all the walls, from the floor to the wall above the entryway.
Ezekiel 41:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple
- face, facial

ULT

21 The gate posts of the holy place were square. Their appearance was like the appearance of

UST

21 At the entrance to the main room of the temple there were square doorposts, all the same in appearance.
Ezekiel 41:22

the wooden altar in front of the holy place, which was

These words are the end of the sentence that begins with the words “Their appearance was like the appearance of” in verse 21. Possible meanings of the sentence are 1) as it is translated in the ULT or 2) “The appearance of one was like the appearance of the other. The wooden altar in front of the holy place was.” The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “They appeared the same way the wooden altar in front of the holy place appeared. They were” (See: Abstract Nouns)

three cubits...two cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 1.6 meters...about 1.1 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• altar
• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• altar
• Yahweh
Ezekiel 41:23

There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place

“The holy place and the most holy place both had two doors”

Translation Words - ULT
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- temple
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
These doors had two hinged door panels each

“Each door had two parts that were on hinges.” Hinges connect doors to the wall and allow the doors to swing.

two panels for one door and two panels for the other

“both of the doors for both the holy place and the most holy place had two parts”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

**Translation Words - UST**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 41:25

just as the walls were decorated

“just as the walls also had carvings of cherubim and palm trees”

portico

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial
Ezekiel 41:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house

ULT

26 There were narrow windows and palm trees on either side of the portico. These were the side rooms of the house, and they also had overhanging roofs.

41:1 [1] After six cubits in width on either side, most ancient copies and some modern versions add the width of the tent.

41:22 [2] Instead of Their appearance was like the appearance of the wooden altar in front of the holy place, which was, some modern versions have They all looked like each other. The wooden altar in front of the holy place was.

UST

26 On the side walls of the portico were narrow windows with figures of palm trees carved on the sides of the windows. The side rooms around the temple also had projecting roofs.
Ezekiel 42

Ezekiel 42 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focused on the storerooms for keeping the holy things of the temple. (See: temple and holy, holiness, unholy, sacred)
Ezekiel 42:1

the outer courtyard

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:5.

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment

ULT

1 Next the man sent me out to the outer courtyard on the north side, and he brought me to rooms in front of the outer courtyard and the northern outer wall.

UST

1 Then in the vision the man led me out of the inner courtyard, through the gate on the north side. We entered the outer courtyard and came to rooms that were facing the northern outer wall.
Ezekiel 42:2

one hundred cubits...fifty cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “100 cubits...50 cubits” or “about 54 meters...about 27 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial

ULT

2 Those rooms were one hundred cubits along their front and fifty cubits in width.

UST

2 The building with those rooms was fifty-four meters long and twenty-seven meters wide.
Ezekiel 42:3

twenty cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “20 cubits” or “about 11 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Some of those rooms faced the inner courtyard

“One of those rooms was toward the inner courtyard” or “The entrance of some of those rooms was toward the inner courtyard”

inner courtyard

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

were open to them

“looked out onto the inner courtyard”

having a walkway

“because there was a place where one could walk along the rooms”

Some of the rooms looked out onto the outer courtyard

“Some of the rooms were toward the outer courtyard” or “The entrance of some of the rooms was toward the outer courtyard”

Translation Words - UST

- court, courtyard
- court, courtyard (2)
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- court, courtyard
- court, courtyard (2)
- face, facial
Ezekiel 42:4

ten cubits...one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “10 cubits...100 cubits” or “about 5.4 meters...about 54 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

ULT
4 A passage ten cubits in width and one hundred cubits in length ran in front of the rooms. The rooms’ doors were toward the north. [1]

UST
4 To one side of the rooms was a walkway that was five and two-fifths meters wide and fifty-four meters long. All the doors of the rooms were on their north side.
Ezekiel 42:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- devour

**Translation Words - UST**

- devour

ULT

5 But the upper halls were smaller, for the walkways took away from them more space than they did in the lowest and middle levels of the building.

UST

5 Each set of rooms was narrower than the set of rooms below them, because each upper sets had a walkway in front.
Ezekiel 42:6

**smaller in size compared to the rooms**

“smaller than the rooms”

**ULT**

6 For the halls on the third story had no columns, unlike the courtyards, which did have columns. So the highest level’s rooms were smaller in size compared to the rooms in the lowest and middle levels.

**UST**

6 The rooms on the upper levels had no pillars to support them as there were in the courtyard, because those rooms were supported by the walls of the rooms below.
Ezekiel 42:7

**fifty cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in *Ezekiel 40:5*. Alternate translation: “50 cubits” or “about 27 meters” (See: [*Biblical Distance*](#)).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- face, facial

**ULT**

7 The outside wall ran along the rooms toward the outer courtyard, the courtyard that was in front of the rooms. That wall was fifty cubits in length.

**UST**

7 The outer wall ran parallel to the rooms that faced the outer courtyard; this part of the outer wall was twenty-seven meters long.
Ezekiel 42:8

**fifty cubits...one hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “50 cubits...100 cubits” or “about 27 meters...about 54 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- temple
- court, courtyard
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- temple
- court, courtyard
- face, facial

ULT

8 The length of the rooms of the outer courtyard was fifty cubits, and the rooms facing the sanctuary were one hundred cubits in length.

UST

8 The row of rooms that was along the outer courtyard was twenty-seven meters long, and the row of rooms that faced the temple was fifty-four meters long.
Ezekiel 42:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
9 There was an entrance to the lowest rooms from the east side, coming from the outer courtyard.

UST
9 The bottom story had an entrance on its east side, coming from the outer courtyard.
Ezekiel 42:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- face, facial
- face, facial

**Translation Words - UST**

- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

10 Along the wall of the outer courtyard on the eastern side of the outer courtyard, in front of the sanctuary’s inner courtyard, there were also rooms.

UST

10 On the eastern side, along the outer wall of the outer courtyard, next to the temple courtyard, there was also a set of rooms.
Ezekiel 42:11

They were as the appearance of the rooms on the northern side

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “The way the rooms on the northern side appeared was the way these rooms appeared” (See: Abstract Nouns)
Ezekiel 42:12

at its head

“at its beginning”

Translation Words - ULT

• head

Translation Words - UST

• head

ULT

12 On the south side were doors into rooms that were just the same as on the north side. A passage on the inside had a door at its head, and the passage opened into the various rooms. On the east side there was a doorway into the passage at one end.

UST

12 There were also doorways into rooms on the south side that were similar to what was on the north side. There was an inside passage with an outer door; the passage had doors into all the rooms. At the east end of the passage was an outside door leading into it.
Then the man said to me, “The northern rooms and the southern rooms that are in front of the outer courtyard are holy rooms where the priests who work nearest to Yahweh may eat the most holy food. They will put the most holy things there—the food offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering—for this is a holy place.

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred (2)
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- devour
- face, facial

The rooms on the northern and southern sides that overlook the temple sanctuary are only for Yahweh's special purposes. Here the priests who offer sacrifices to Yahweh will eat their portions of those offerings. Because these rooms are special, they will be used to store the offerings for Yahweh: The flour for the flour offerings, for the offerings for the sins that people have committed, and for the offerings that people make for their sins.
Ezekiel 42:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
14 When the priests enter there, they must not go out of the holy place to the outer court, without laying aside the clothes in which they served, since these are holy. So they must dress in other clothes before going near the people.”

UST
14 When the priests leave the temple, they will not be allowed to immediately enter the outer courtyard. First they must remove the clothes that they had been wearing inside the holy place, because those clothes are special, reserved for their work. They must put on other clothes before they enter the parts of the temple area where the other people gather.”
Ezekiel 42:15

to the gate that faced the east

“out to the east gate” or “out through the east gate”

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial
• house

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• face, facial
• house

ULT
15 The man completed measuring the inner house and then took me out to the gate that faced the east and measured all the surrounding area there.

UST
15 When the man had finished measuring the inside of the temple area, he led me out through the east entrance and measured all the surrounding area.
Ezekiel 42:16

He measured

The word “he” refers to the man who looked like bronze (Ezekiel 40:3).

measuring stick

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5.

five hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “500 cubits” or “about 270 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 42:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual
Ezekiel 42:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- spirit, spiritual

**Translation Words - UST**
- spirit, spiritual

ULT
18 He also measured the south side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. [6]
Ezekiel 42:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual

ULT

19 He also turned and measured the west side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. [6]

UST

16-19 He measured the four sides of the area. There was a wall around the area that was two-hundred and seventy meters long on each side.
Ezekiel 42:20

It had a wall around it

“The house had a wall all around it”

five hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “500 cubits” or “about 270 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

common

not holy

Translation Words - ULT

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• spirit, spiritual

Translation Words - UST

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• spirit, spiritual

ULT

20 He measured it on four sides. It had a wall around it that was five hundred cubits in length, and five hundred cubits in width, to separate the holy from that which is common.


42:10 [2] Hebrew and some modern versions read on the eastern side. However, some ancient copies and most modern versions read on the southern side.

42:16 [3] Instead of five hundred cubits, which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads five hundred measuring sticks, which seems to be an error.

42:17 [4] Instead of five hundred cubits, which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads five hundred measuring sticks, which seems to be an error.

42:18 [5] Instead of five hundred cubits, which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads five hundred measuring sticks, which seems to be an error.

42:19 [6] Instead of five hundred cubits, which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads five hundred measuring sticks, which seems to be an error.

UST

20 He measured the wall that separated what was sacred from the areas that were not sacred on four sides. The wall was five hundred cubits long and five hundred cubits wide.
Ezekiel 43

Ezekiel 43 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. God entered the temple. He told the people not to defile the temple by being idol worshipers or by having the funerals of their kings in the temple courtyard. He also told them what offerings to make each day. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 43:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
1 The man then brought me to the gate that opened to the east.

UST
1 Then the man brought me to the entrance on the east side.
Ezekiel 43:2

Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts the reader to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

many waters

This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to a loud river or a large waterfall or the waves crashing at the ocean. All of these are very loud. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:24.

the earth shone with his glory

“the earth was full of bright light from his glory”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- God
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Israel, Israelites

ULT

2 Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory.

UST

2 Suddenly I saw the glory of the God of Israel coming from the east. The sound of his coming was like the roar of a rushing river, and all that area shone with his glory.
Ezekiel 43:3

It was according to the appearance of the vision that I saw, according to the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city.

Possible meanings are 1) the second phrase beginning with “according to” explains the meaning of the first phrase beginning with “according to.” Alternate translation: “It was according to the appearance of the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city” or 2) the first phrase refers to the vision that Ezekiel had just seen of God’s glory. Alternate translation: “The appearance of this vision that I saw was according to the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city”

according to the appearance of the vision

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “just like what appeared in the vision” (See: Abstract Nouns)

according to the vision

“like the vision”

when he had come to destroy the city

“when the God of Israel had come to destroy the city.” If the earlier Hebrew reading “when I had come to destroy the city” is used, then “destroy the city” is a synecdoche for “prophesy that the city will be destroyed.” Alternate translation: “when I had come to prophesy that the city will be destroyed” or “when I had come to prophesy that the God of Israel will destroy the city” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
  - face, facial
  - bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST
  - face, facial
  - bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 43:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- face, facial
- house

ULT

4 So the glory of Yahweh came to the house by way of the gate that opened to the east.

UST

4 The glory of Yahweh entered the temple through the east entrance,
Ezekiel 43:5

Behold

Your language may have a different word to show that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

Translation Words - ULT

• spirit, spiritual
• glory, glorious, glorify
• Yahweh
• house

Translation Words - UST

• spirit, spiritual
• glory, glorious, glorify
• Yahweh
• house

ULT

5 Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner court. Behold! The glory of Yahweh was filling the house.

UST

5 and then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner courtyard, while the glory of Yahweh filled the temple.
Ezekiel 43:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

• appoint, appointed

ULT

6 The man was standing beside me, and I heard someone else speaking to me from the house.

UST

6 Then, while the man was standing beside me, I heard someone speak to me from inside the temple.
Ezekiel 43:7

the corpses of their kings

The idols that the people's kings worshiped are spoken of as if they are corpses because the idols are not alive. Alternate translation: “the lifeless idols that their kings worshiped” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• son
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites
• hand
• throne, enthroned
• king, kingdom, kingship
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• son
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• Israel, Israelites
• Israel, Israelites
• hand
• throne, enthroned
• king, kingdom, kingship
• house

ULT

7 He said to me, “Son of man, this is the place of my throne and the place for the soles of my feet, where I will live in the midst of the people of Israel forever. The house of Israel will no longer profane my holy name—they or their kings—with their faithlessness or with the corpses of their kings at their high places.

UST

7 He said, “Son of man, this is my temple, the place where I sit on my throne and where I rest my feet. This is where I will live with the Israelite people forever. The Israelite people and their kings will never again disgrace me by worshiping other gods at their hilltop places of idol worship, or by building lifeless idols of their past kings.
Ezekiel 43:8

They profaned

“The Israelites profaned”

disgusting actions

“the disgusting things they did.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:9.

consumed them with my anger

The phrase “consumed” here means “completely destroyed.” Alternate translation: “completely destroyed them because I was angry” (See: Idiom)

ULT

8 They will no longer profane my holy name by putting their threshold next to my threshold, and their gateposts next to my gateposts, with nothing but a wall between me and them. They profaned my holy name with their disgusting actions, so I consumed them with my anger.

UST

8 Your people placed their altars near mine, and the doorposts of their temples were next to the doorposts of my temple. There was only a wall between them. And they disgraced me by the detestable things that they did. So I was angry and destroyed them.

Translation Words - ULT

• abomination, abominable
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• devour

Translation Words - UST

• abomination, abominable
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• name
• devour
Ezekiel 43:9

the corpses of their kings

The idols that the people's kings worshiped are spoken of as if they are corpses because the idols are not alive. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:7. Alternate translation: “the lifeless idols that their kings worshiped” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

• king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

9 Now let them remove their faithlessness and the corpses of their kings from before me, and I will live in their midst forever.

UST

9 Now they must stop this disgusting worship of idols and these rituals to honor kings' idols. If they stop doing those things, I will live among them forever.
Ezekiel 43:10

this description
“this pattern” or “this plan”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• iniquity
• Israel, Israelites
• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
• house
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• iniquity
• Israel, Israelites
• shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
• house
• house

ULT
10 Son of man, you yourself must tell the house of Israel about this house so they will be ashamed of their iniquities. They should think about this description.

UST
10 Son of man, describe to the Israelite people what this temple that I have shown you in a vision is like, in order that they will be ashamed of the sins.
Ezekiel 43:11

**before their eyes**

Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 21:6. Alternate translation: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: Synecdoche)

**will keep to all its design**

“will keep its pattern”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 For if they are ashamed of all that they have done, then reveal to them the design of the house, its details, its exits, its entrances, and all its designs, all its decrees and rules. Then write this down before their eyes so they will keep to all its design and all its rules, so as to obey them.

UST

11 If they are ashamed of all the evil things that they have done, tell them all about the temple that I showed you: Its design, the exits and entrances, and everything else about it. And tell them all my laws and regulations about worshiping me there. Write all these things down while they watch you, in order that they will be able to faithfully obey them.
Ezekiel 43:12

the regulation
“the instruction” or “the rule”

the surrounding border
The word “border” probably refers to the wall that goes all the way around the temple.

most holy
“absolutely holy”

Behold!
“This is important!” Your language may have a way of indicating that the words that follow are important.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- head
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- head
- house
- house
Ezekiel 43:13

**a cubit**

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 54 centimeters” (See: Biblical Distance)

**The border around its surrounding edge**

“The border going around its edge”

**one span**

A span was 23 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. Alternate translation: “about 23 centimeters” (See: Biblical Distance)

**This will be the base of the altar**

“These will be the measurements of the base of the altar”

**the base of the altar**

“the bottom supporting the altar” or “the foundation of the altar”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- altar
- altar

**Translation Words - UST**

- altar
- altar
Ezekiel 43:14

two cubits...four cubits

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 1.1 meters...about 2.2 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

ledge

a narrow and flat surface that sticks out from a wall

Translation Words - ULT

• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 43:15

The hearth
the place where sacrifices were either cooked or burnt up with fire

four cubits
Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 2.2 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

horns
The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar.

ULT
15 The hearth on the altar for the burnt offerings is four cubits high, and there are four horns pointing upward on the hearth.

UST
15 The hearth at the top of the altar is another two meters high, and there is a hornlike projection that juts up from each of the four corners.
Ezekiel 43:16

twelve cubits

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 2.2 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)
Ezekiel 43:17

fourteen cubits...a half cubit...a cubit

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 7.6 meters...about 27 centimeters...about 54 centimeters” (See: Biblical Distance)

with its steps facing east

“with steps on the east side of the altar” or “and the altar’s steps are on its east side”

ULT
17 Its border is fourteen cubits in length and fourteen cubits in width on each of its four sides, and its rim is a half cubit in width. The gutter is a cubit in width all around with its steps facing east.”

UST
17 The upper ledge that borders the hearth is also a square, seven and three-fifths meters long on each side, and has a rim all around that is twenty-seven centimeters wide. There is a gutter measuring one-half meter at the bottom of the altar. There are steps leading up to the east side of the altar.”
Ezekiel 43:18

he said

“Yahweh said”

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

the regulations

“the rules” or “the instructions”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- blood
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- blood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
Ezekiel 43:19

You will give a bull from the cattle as a sin offering for the Levitical priests who are the descendants of Zadok, those who come near to me to serve me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

You must present to the priests a young bull to be an offering for the sins of the priests, the descendants of Levi, from the clan of Zadok, who come near to the altar to serve me.

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- descend, descendant

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- descend, descendant

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)
Ezekiel 43:20

Then you will take

The word “you” is singular. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:19. (See: Forms of You)

four horns

The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:15.

Translation Words - ULT

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Translation Words - UST

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

ULT

20 Then you will take some of its blood and place it on the altar's four horns and the four sides of its edge and on the surrounding rim; you will cleanse it and make atonement for it.

UST

20 You must take some of the blood from the bull and smear it on the four projections of the altar and on the four corners of the upper ledge, and all around the rim, so I will accept the altar, and to make the altar belong only to me.
Ezekiel 43:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- house

Translation Words - UST

- house

ULT
21 Then take the bull for the sin offering and burn it in the appointed part of the temple area outside of the sanctuary.

UST
21 You must burn that bull outside the temple in the part of the temple area designated for that purpose.
Ezekiel 43:22

you will offer

The word “you” and the command refer to Ezekiel and so are singular. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:19. (See: Pronouns and Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

ULT

22 Then on the second day you will offer a male goat without blemish from the goats as a sin offering; the priests will cleanse the altar just as they cleansed it with the bull.

UST

22 The next day you must offer a male goat that has no defects, to be an offering, so I will accept the altar. Then you must purify the altar again, as you did with the bull that was sacrificed.
When you finish its cleansing, offer an unblemished bull from the cattle and an unblemished ram from the flock.

When you have finished doing all that, you must offer a young bull and a ram, both of them without any defects.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

**Translation Words - UST**
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

All instances of “you” and the commands refer to Ezekiel and so are singular. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:19. (See: Pronouns and Forms of You)
Ezekiel 43:24

Offer them before Yahweh

The altar on which they will sacrifice the bull and ram is in front of the temple, where the presence of Yahweh dwells.

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• priest, priesthood
• burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• priest, priesthood
• burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT 24 Offer them before Yahweh; the priests will throw salt onto them and raise them up as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

UST 24 You must offer them to me, Yahweh. The priests must sprinkle salt on them and burn them completely on the altar as a sacrifice to me.
Ezekiel 43:25

You must prepare

This is spoken to Ezekiel and so the word “You” is singular. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:19. (See: Pronouns and Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• son
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• son
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

25 You must prepare a male goat as a sin offering daily for seven days, and the priests must also prepare an unblemished bull of the cattle and unblemished ram from the flock.

UST

25 Then, each day for seven days you must bring to the priest a male goat to be sacrificed for an offering, so I will accept the altar. You must also sacrifice a young bull and a ram, each without any defect, that the priests will provide.
Ezekiel 43:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- pure, purify, purification
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- pure, purify, purification
- hand

ULT

26 They must atone for the altar for seven days and purify it, and in this way they must consecrate it.

UST

26 For seven days the priests will consecrate the altar, so I will accept the altar. By doing that they will set it apart for my honor.
Ezekiel 43:27

it will come about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the instructions. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

your burnt offerings...your peace offerings...accept you

The words “your” and “you” are second person plural and refer to the people of Israel in general. (See: Pronouns and Forms of You)

will accept you

“will gladly receive you”

Translation Words - ULT

• altar
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• priest, priesthood
• burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

• altar
• lord, Lord, master, sir
• priest, priesthood
• burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

27 They must complete these days, and on the eighth day and onward it will come about that the priests will prepare your burnt offerings and your peace offerings on the altar, and I will accept you—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

43:3 [1] Instead of when he had come, which some Hebrew manuscripts and some ancient and many modern versions have, the other Hebrew manuscripts have when I came .
Ezekiel 44

Ezekiel 44 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. Foreigners and the Levites who have worshiped idols are not allowed in the temple. The priests alone will do the temple work. (See: temple and priest, priesthood)
Ezekiel 44:1

**to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east**

“to the outer sanctuary gate on the east side of the temple”

**Translation Words - ULT**
- sanctuary
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- return

**Translation Words - UST**
- sanctuary
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- return

ULT

1 Then the man brought me back to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east; it was closed tightly.

UST

1 Then the man brought me back to the outer entrance to the temple area, the one on the east side, but the gate was shut.
Ezekiel 44:2

it will not be opened

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will open it” (See: Active or Passive)

the God of Israel

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:4.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
Ezekiel 44:3

He will enter by way of the gate's portico and go out the same way

He will enter the courtyard through another gate and then sit in the portico of the east gate and eat.

*portico*

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. In this case, the portico opens into the courtyard and is between the entrance to the temple and the inside of the gate. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

*before Yahweh*

“in front of Yahweh” or “in the presence of Yahweh”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Yahweh
- bread
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- Yahweh
- bread
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
Ezekiel 44:4

Then he

Possible meanings are 1) “Then the man” or 2) “Then Yahweh.”

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

the glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28.

I fell to my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 1:28. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- face, facial
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- face, facial
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 44:5

set your heart

“pay attention to” or “think about.” Translate as you translated “fix your mind on” in Ezekiel 40:4. (See: Idiom)

all its regulations

“all the instructions about the house of Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• heart
• heart
• law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
• sanctuary
• appoint, appointed
• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• house
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• heart
• heart
• law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
• sanctuary
• appoint, appointed
• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• house
• house
Ezekiel 44:6

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: *Metonymy*)

**Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you**

“Your disgusting actions have been more than enough for you” or “You have done far too many disgusting deeds”

**disgusting actions**

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:9.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- house
Ezekiel 44:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- flesh
- heart
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- covenant
- bread
- profane, profaned
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- flesh
- heart
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- covenant
- bread
- profane, profaned
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- house

ULT 7 that you brought foreigners with uncircumcised hearts and uncircumcised flesh to be in my sanctuary, profaning my house, while you were offering me food, fat and blood—you have broken my covenant by all your disgusting actions.

UST 7 In addition to all the other detestable things that you do, you brought into my temple foreign men who had not been circumcised and who knew nothing about how to honor me. By doing that, you caused my temple to be an unacceptable place to worship me, while you offered food and fat and blood, and you disobeyed my covenant with you.
Ezekiel 44:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- appoint, appointed
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- appoint, appointed
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 44:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son (2)
- flesh
- heart
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Israel, Israelites
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- alien, foreign, foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son (2)
- son
- flesh
- heart
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Israel, Israelites
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- alien, foreign, foreigner
Ezekiel 44:10

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

went far from me...wandered away from me, going after their idols

The way a person lives is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: “stopped worshiping me...stopped doing what I wanted them to do. Instead, they worshiped their idols” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT
10 Yet the Levites went far from me—they wandered away from me, going after their idols—but they will pay for their sin.

UST
10 Many of the descendants of Levi deserted me along with most of the Israelite people, and started to worship idols. I will punish them for their sin.
Ezekiel 44:11

They are servants in my sanctuary, watching the gates of the house and serving in the house and they slaughter the burnt offerings and the people’s sacrifices, and they will stand before the people and serve them.

ULT
11 They are servants in my sanctuary, watching the gates of the house and serving in the house and they slaughter the burnt offerings and the people's sacrifices, and they will stand before the people and serve them.

UST
11 I will permit them to work in my temple and to be in charge of the temple gates. They will be able to slaughter the animals that will be completely burned on the altar, and to burn other sacrifices for the people, and they will be able to help the people.

Translation Words - ULT
- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST
- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
Ezekiel 44:12

became stumbling blocks for sin for the house of Israel

A person who causes another person to sin is spoken of as if he were something on a path over which people stumble. Alternate translation: “became people who caused the house of Israel to sin” (See: Metaphor)

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

I will lift up my hand to swear an oath

In those days a person would raise his right hand to show that he realized that God would punish him if he did not do what he swore to do. See how you translated these words in Ezekiel 20:6. Alternate translation: “I will solemnly swear” (See: Symbolic Action)

against them

“that I will punish them”

this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

they will bear their punishment

The abstract noun “punishment” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “I will certainly punish them” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- iniquity
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
Ezekiel 44:13

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

They
the Levites (Ezekiel 44:10)

They will not come near
“I will not permit them to come near.” Yahweh does not want them to come to him the way a servant comes to a king to receive commands, as the descendants of Zadok will do (Ezekiel 40:46).

will bear their reproach and their guilt
“will be ashamed and suffer when I punish them”

disgusting actions
“the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshipping idols and false gods. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:9.

Translation Words - ULT
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Translation Words - UST
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
Ezekiel 44:14

keepers
people who guard or take care of something

that is done in it

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that they need to do in it” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
• house

Translation Words - UST
• watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
• house

ULT
14 But I will place them as keepers of the work in the house, for all of its duties and everything that is done in it.

UST
14 But I will still put them in charge of the work in the temple, and allow them to do all the work that needs to be done there.
Ezekiel 44:15

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**those sons of Zadok who fulfilled**
“who are descendants of Zadok and fulfilled”

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT
15 Then the Levitical priests, those sons of Zadok who fulfilled the duties of my sanctuary when the people of Israel were wandering away from me—they will come near me to worship me. They will stand before me to offer me the fat and the blood—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST
15 But the priests who are descended from Levi and from the clan of Zadok faithfully worked in my temple when the other Israelites deserted me. So they must come near to me to work for me. They will stand in my presence to offer sacrifices of animals’ fat and blood.
Ezekiel 44:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
16 They will come to my sanctuary; they will approach my table to worship me and to fulfill their duties to me.

UST
16 They are the only ones who are permitted to enter my temple. They are the only ones who are permitted to come near my altar to serve me and do what I tell them to do.
Ezekiel 44:17

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

So it will be that

“So”

the inner courtyard
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

linen
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 9:2.

wool
cloth or clothing made of the soft hair of sheep

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• house

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• house
Ezekiel 44:18

turbans
A turban is a head covering that is made of a long cloth wrapped around the head.

Translation Words - ULT
• head
• gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Translation Words - UST
• head
• gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

ULT
18 There should be linen turbans on their heads and linen underclothes on their hips. They must not dress in clothes that make them sweat.

UST
18 They must wear white linen turbans on their heads and linen undergarments around their waists. They must not wear anything that would cause them to perspire.
Ezekiel 44:19

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about how the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests are to do their duties.

outer courtyard
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:5.

Translation Words - ULT
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
19 When they go out to the outer courtyard, to the outer courtyard in order to go to the people, they must take off the clothes they wore when they served; they must take them off and lay them down in a holy room, so they do not make other people holy by contact with their special clothing.

UST
19 Before they go out into the courtyard where other people are, they must take off the clothes that they have been wearing and leave them in the sacred rooms, and put on other clothes, in order that the people are not consecrated by touching the sacred clothes.
Ezekiel 44:20

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

*must trim the hair of their heads*

must keep their hair neat

**Translation Words - ULT**

- head
- head

**Translation Words - UST**

- head
- head
Ezekiel 44:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT
- priest, priesthood
- wine, wineskin, new wine

Translation Words - UST
- priest, priesthood
- wine, wineskin, new wine

ULT
21 No priest may drink wine when he comes to the inner court,

UST
21 Priests must not drink wine before they enter the inner courtyard.
Ezekiel 44:22

widow

a woman whose husband has died

from the line of the house of Israel

“who is a descendant of the people of Israel”

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- descend, descendant
- virgin, virginity
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- descend, descendant
- virgin, virginity
- house
Ezekiel 44:23

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

Translation Words - ULT
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
23 For they will teach my people the difference between the holy and the profane; they will make them know the unclean from the clean.

UST
23 They must teach the people the difference between things that are holy and things that are not, and teach them how to know what things are acceptable to me and what things are not.
Ezekiel 44:24

In a dispute they will stand to judge with my decrees

“When people are arguing, they will be the ones who decide who is right by applying my laws”

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- appoint, appointed
- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- feast, feasting
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- appoint, appointed
- judge, judgment
- Sabbath
- feast, feasting
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
Ezekiel 44:25

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

Translation Words - ULT
- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST
- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT
25 They must not defile themselves by going near to a dead person; however, if the dead person was his father or mother, son or daughter, brother or unmarried sister, then they may defile themselves.

UST
25 Priests are permitted to go near the corpse of a father or mother or son or daughter or brother or unmarried sister. But they must not defile themselves by going near a corpse of anyone else.
Ezekiel 44:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
26 After a priest has become unclean, they will count off a period of seven days for him.

UST
26 If a priest touches the corpse of a close relative, he must perform the rituals to become acceptable to serve me again. After he performs those rituals, he must wait seven days.
Ezekiel 44:27

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

ULT
27 On the day he enters the holy place, into the inner courtyard to serve in the holy place, he must bring a sin offering for himself—this is bring a sin offering for himself—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

UST
27 Then, on the day that he enters the inner courtyard again to serve me in the temple, he must give an offering to remove his guilt for having sinned. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.
Ezekiel 44:28

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

you
The word “you” refers to the people of Israel and so is plural. (See: Pronouns)

property
land that a person owns and uses to provide for the needs of his family

in Israel
“in the land of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• Israel, Israelites
Ezekiel 44:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Israel, Israelites
- devour
- grain offering

ULT

29 They will eat the food offerings, the sin offerings, the guilt offerings, and everything devoted to Yahweh in Israel, will be theirs.

UST

29 They will eat the offerings made from flour, offerings to remove people's guilt for having sinned, and offerings made when people fail to give to me the things that they are required to give. Everything else in Israel that is dedicated to me will belong to the priests.
Ezekiel 44:30

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**every contribution, anything from all of your contributions**

“every gift of whatever kind from all your gifts” or “all gifts of every sort of all of your gifts”

**so that blessing may rest on your house**

This phrase means “so that I will bless your family and everything that belongs to you.” (See: **Idiom**)

Translation Words - **ULT**

- bless, blessed, blessing
- priest, priesthood
- firstfruits
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house

Translation Words - **UST**

- bless, blessed, blessing
- priest, priesthood
- firstfruits
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house

**ULT**

30 The best of the firstfruits of all things and every contribution, anything from all of your contributions will belong to the priests, and you will give the first of your dough to the priests so that blessing may rest on your house.

**UST**

30 The best fruits of the first part of each harvest and all the other special gifts will belong to the priests. You must give them the first part of your ground flour, in order that I will bless the people who live in your house.
Ezekiel 44:31

or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “or any creature that a bird or a wild animal has torn apart” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• priest, priesthood
• devour

Translation Words - UST

• priest, priesthood
• devour

ULT
31 The priests will not eat any carcass or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast.

UST
31 Priests must not eat the flesh of any bird or animal that is found dead or that has been killed by wild animals.
Ezekiel 45

Ezekiel 45 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There should be an area around the temple complex for the homes of the priests and Levites who work at the temple. People should celebrate the festivals. (See: temple and priest, priesthood)
Ezekiel 45:1

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**twenty-five thousand cubits in length...ten thousand cubits in width**

Each cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits long...10,000 cubits wide” or “about 13.5 kilometers long...about 5.4 kilometers wide” (See: Biblical Distance)

**all its area round about**

“all of the area inside of the borders around it”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 45:2

five hundred cubits...fifty cubits in width

Each cubit was about 54 centimeters. Alternate translation: “500 cubits...50 cubits wide” or “about 270 meters...about 27 meters wide” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Translation Words - UST
• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

ULT
2 From this there will be a five hundred cubits by five hundred cubits square surrounding the holy place, with a surrounding border fifty cubits in width.

UST
2 Part of that area, a square about 270 meters long on each side will be left empty all around the temple area. An additional strip of ground, about twenty-seven meters wide, will be left empty all around the temple area.
Ezekiel 45:3

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

this area
the temple and the border surrounding it

a portion
“a portion of land”

twenty-five thousand cubits...ten thousand

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers...about 5.4 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sanctuary

Translation Words - UST
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sanctuary
Ezekiel 45:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sanctuary
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sanctuary
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

**ULT**

4 It will be a holy place in the land for the priests who serve Yahweh, who come near Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place for their houses and a holy area for the holy place.

**UST**

4 It will be the sacred portion of the land for the priests who work in the temple, those who come near to Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place very special for Yahweh, for the priests’ houses, as well as for the temple.
Ezekiel 45:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Levi, Levite, Levitical
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Levi, Levite, Levitical
• servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
• house

ULT

5 So it will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand in width, and it will be for towns for the Levites who serve in the house.

UST

5 An area thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifths kilometers wide will be for the descendants of Levi who work in the temple. That area will belong to them, and they can build towns there to live in.
Ezekiel 45:6

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**five thousand cubits...twenty-five thousand**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “5,000 cubits...25,000 cubits” or “about 2.7 kilometers...about 13.5 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

**reserved for the holy place**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you gave for the holy place” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- house

ULT

6 You will designate an area for the city, five thousand cubits in width and twenty-five thousand in length, that will be next to the area reserved for the holy place; this city will belong to all the house of Israel.

UST

6 Alongside this sacred area will be a section of land that is thirteen and one-half kilometers long and two and three-quarters kilometers wide. It will be for a city where anyone in Israel may live.
Ezekiel 45:7

The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions

It is implied that Ezekiel is comparing the prince's land with the size of the land given to each of the tribes. Alternate translation: “The length will be the same as the length of one of the portions given to the tribes” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

from the west to the east

It is implied that these are the western and eastern borders of the land of Israel. “from the western border of Israel at the sea to the eastern border at the Jordan River”

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

7 The prince's land will be on both sides of the area reserved for the holy place and the city. It will be to their west and to their east. The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions, from the west to the east.

UST

7 The ruler of Israel will have the land that is on each side of the area formed by the temple district and the city. It will extend to the west from the western end of those areas, and to the east from the eastern end of those areas. The far eastern and far western borders of the king's land will measure the same as the parallel borders of those other tracts.
Ezekiel 45:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

This land will be property for the prince in Israel

“This portion of the land will be the property of the prince among the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

Translation Words - UST
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

ULT
8 This land will be property for the prince in Israel. My princes will no longer oppress my people; instead, they will give the land to the house of Israel, for their tribes.

UST
8 This portion of land will belong to the ruler. So the rulers will no longer have any excuse for oppressing my people and stealing their land. They will assign the remaining parts of the land in Israel to each tribe, to be divided up among the people.
Ezekiel 45:9

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**It is enough for you**

“You have done too many bad things” or “You have been acting badly for far too long”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- statute

**Translation Words - UST**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- statute

**ULT**

9 The Lord Yahweh says this: It is enough for you, princes of Israel! Remove violence and strife; do justice and righteousness! Quit your evictions of my people!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**UST**

9 This is what Yahweh the Lord says: You rulers of Israel must stop acting violently and oppressing the people! You must do what is fair and right. Stop taking land from the people; stop forcing them off their land!
Ezekiel 45:10

**scales**

an instrument that was used to weigh things that people sold or bought

**ULT**
10 You must have accurate scales, accurate ephahs, and accurate baths!

**UST**
10 Also, you must use accurate scales and accurate containers for measuring things.
Ezekiel 45:11

so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer

“so that ten baths will be the same amount as a homer”

homer

about 220 liters (See: Biblical Volume)
Ezekiel 45:12

shekel
about 11 grams (See: Biblical Weight)

gerahs
about 0.55 grams (See: Biblical Weight)

mina
about 660 grams (See: Biblical Weight)

ULT
12 The shekel will be twenty gerahs; sixty shekels will make a mina for you.

UST
12 When you weigh things, you must use weights that everyone accepts as being correct. The shekel is to be divided into twenty gerahs, and a mina will be worth sixty shekels.
Ezekiel 45:13

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

for every homer of wheat

It is implied that this is the amount of wheat that the people harvest. Alternate translation: “for every homer of wheat from the harvest” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• wheat
• barley

Translation Words - UST

• wheat
• barley
Ezekiel 45:14

The regulation offering of oil will be a tenth of a bath

“You must offer one tenth of a bath of oil”

Translation Words - ULT

• statute

Translation Words - UST

• statute

ULT

14 The regulation offering of oil will be a tenth of a bath for every cor (which is ten baths), or for every homer, since a homer is also ten baths.

UST

14 You must give him one measure of olive oil for every one hundred measures that you produce.
Ezekiel 45:15

**the watered regions of Israel**

“the parts of Israel that get a good amount of water”

**will be used for**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will use for” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

15 One sheep or goat from the flock for every two hundred animals from the watered regions of Israel will be used for any burnt offering or peace offering to make atonement for the people—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

UST

15 Also, Yahweh declares that you must take one sheep or goat from every two hundred in your flocks in the lush pastures of Israel. You must offer a sheep or a goat for various offerings: Burnt offerings and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh, offerings to atone for the people's sins. “This is the Lord Yahweh's command.”
Ezekiel 45:16

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
16 All the people of the land will give this contribution to the prince in Israel.

UST
16 All the people in the land must join in bringing these offerings to the ruler of Israel.
Ezekiel 45:17

the fixed festivals

the festivals that happen at the same time every year or month or week

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 3:1. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- atonement, atone, atoned
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting
- grain offering
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- atonement, atone, atoned
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting
- grain offering
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house
- house

ULT

17 It will be the prince's responsibility to furnish animals for the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the drink offerings at the festivals and the new moon celebrations, and on the Sabbath days—all the fixed festivals of the house of Israel. He will provide for the sin offerings, the grain offerings, the burnt offerings, and the peace offerings for atonement on behalf of the house of Israel.

UST

17 The ruler must provide the animals to be completely burned on the altar, flour for the offerings made from grain, and wine for the sacred festivals that Yahweh has appointed for the people of Israel—including the festivals to celebrate the new moons, and the offerings for the Sabbath days. He must provide the animals for the offerings for the people to become acceptable to God, offerings of flour made from grain, offerings to be completely burned, and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh, to atone for the sins of the people of Israel.”
Ezekiel 45:18

General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:11. Alternate translation: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

In the first month, on the first day of the month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

you will take

The word “you” is singular and refers to whoever is the prince in Israel. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- sanctuary
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- sanctuary
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
ULT
19 The priest will take some of the blood of the sin offering and place it on the doorposts of the house and on the four corners of the border of the altar, and on the doorposts of the gate to the inner court.

UST
19 The priest must take some of the blood of the offering to atone for the people's sins, and he must smear it on the temple doorposts, on the four corners of the upper ledge surrounding the altar, and on the gateposts of the inner courtyard.
Ezekiel 45:20

on the seventh of the month

“on the seventh day of the first month” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

for each person’s sin by accident or ignorance

“for each person who had sinned without meaning to or because he did not know he was sinning” or “for each person who had sinned by accident or because he did not know what was right”

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house
Ezekiel 45:21

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month**

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

**for you**

The word “you” is plural and refers to the prince and the rest of the people of the house of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- unleavened bread
- Passover
- devour
- feast, feasting

**Translation Words - UST**

- unleavened bread
- Passover
- devour
- feast, feasting

ULT

21 In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month, there will be for you a festival, a seven-day festival. You will eat unleavened bread.

UST

21 In the first month of each year, on the fourteenth day of the month, you must start to celebrate the Passover festival. The festival will last for seven days. During that time you must not eat any bread made with yeast.
Ezekiel 45:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• people, people group,
• earth, earthen, earthly
• prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• people, people group,
• earth, earthen, earthly
• prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT
22 On that day, the prince will prepare for himself and for all the people of the land a bull as a sin offering.

UST
22 On the first day, the ruler must provide a bull as an offering for himself and for the other people of the country.
Ezekiel 45:23

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

Seven bulls and seven unblemished rams
“Seven bulls and seven rams that are completely healthy”

Translation Words - ULT
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• Yahweh
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
• burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST
• sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
• Yahweh
• cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
• ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
• burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT
23 For the seven days of the festival, the prince will prepare a burnt offering for Yahweh: Seven bulls and seven unblemished rams each day for seven days, and a male goat each day as a sin offering.

UST
23 And every day during those seven days he must provide seven bulls and seven rams that have no defects, to be an offering to make it possible for Yahweh to accept the people.
Ezekiel 45:24

**food offering**

This is also called a “grain offering.”

**an ephah**

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “twenty-two liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

**a hin**

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “four liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

**each ephah**

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “each twenty-two liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- oil
- grain offering

**Translation Words - UST**

- oil
- grain offering
Ezekiel 45:25

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month
This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of October. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

at the festival
This is a different festival from the festival Ezekiel was describing before.

Translation Words - ULT
• feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST
• feast, feasting

ULT
25 In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month, at the festival, the prince will perform offerings on these seven days: Sin offerings, burnt offerings, food offerings, and offerings of oil.

45:1 [1] Instead of ten thousand, which the Hebrew text and some modern versions have, some ancient copies and many modern versions have twenty thousand.

UST
25 During the seven days of the festival celebrating when the Israelites lived in tents during the exodus from Egypt, which starts on the fifteenth day of the seventh month of each year, the ruler must provide the same things for offerings to make it possible for God to accept the people, for offerings to be completely burned, for offerings of things made from grain, and for offerings of olive oil.
Ezekiel 46

Ezekiel 46 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on many of the temple's rules. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 46:1

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

The Lord Yahweh says this
Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:11. Alternate translation: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

The gate of the inner courtyard, facing east
“the gate on the east side of the inner courtyard” or “the eastern gate of the inner courtyard”

inner courtyard
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Sabbath
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- new moon

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Sabbath
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- new moon
Ezekiel 46:2

inner gate

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:19.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- priest, priesthood
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- priest, priesthood
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

2 The prince will enter the outer courtyard by the way of the gate and its portico from outside, and he will stand before the doorposts of the inner gate while the priests perform his burnt offering and peace offering. Then he will worship at the threshold of the inner gate and go out, but the gate will not be shut until evening.

UST

2 The ruler must enter the courtyard through the entry room of the gateway, and stand alongside the gateposts of the inner courtyard. Then the priests must sacrifice the animal that will be completely burned on the altar, and also his offering to promise friendship with me. The ruler must worship me at the entrance of the inner gateway, and then he must leave. But the gate will not be shut until that evening.
Ezekiel 46:3

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

before Yahweh
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 43:24.

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• prostrate, worship
• Sabbath
• people, people group,
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• prostrate, worship
• Sabbath
• people, people group,
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• earth, earthen, earthly
Ezekiel 46:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT
4 The burnt offering that the prince offers to Yahweh on the Sabbath day will be six unblemished lambs and an unblemished ram.

UST
4 The offering that the ruler brings to be completely burned on the Sabbath day must be six male lambs and one ram, all with no defects.
Ezekiel 46:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• oil
• grain offering
• grain offering

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• oil
• grain offering
• grain offering

ULT
5 The grain offering with the ram will be an ephah, and the grain offering with the lambs will be what he wishes to give, and a hin of oil with each ephah of grain.

UST
5 The offering that he gives with the ram is twenty-two liters of flour, and the flour that he offers with the lambs should be as much as he pleases, along with one liter of olive oil for every twenty-two liters of flour.
Ezekiel 46:6

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**unblemished**
perfectly healthy and normal

**Translation Words - ULT**
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- new moon

**Translation Words - UST**
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- new moon

ULT
6 On the day of the new moon he must offer an unblemished bull from a herd, six lambs, and an unblemished ram.

UST
6 Then each day that there is a new moon, he must offer a young bull, six lambs and a ram, all with no defects.
Ezekiel 46:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- oil
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- oil
- grain offering

ULT

7 He must make a grain offering of an ephah for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and what he wishes to give for the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah of grain.

UST

7 He must also provide twenty-two liters of flour with the bull, the same amount of flour with the ram, and as much flour as he wants with the lambs, along with one liter of olive oil with every twenty-two liters of flour.
Ezekiel 46:8

**portico**

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:16.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**Translation Words - UST**

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

8 When the prince enters by the way of the gate and its portico, he must leave by the same way.

UST

8 When the ruler enters the temple area, he must enter through gate and its entry room, and he must go out by the same way.
Ezekiel 46:9

**before Yahweh**

“in front of Yahweh” or “in the presence of Yahweh.” See how you translated this in Ezekiel 44:3.

**appointed festivals**

Translate as you translated “appointed feasts” in Ezekiel 36:37.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway (2)
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway (3)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway (2)
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway (3)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

9 But when the people of the land come before Yahweh at the appointed festivals, anyone entering through the north gate to worship must leave through the south gate; and anyone entering through the south gate must leave through the north gate. No one may turn back to the gate through which he entered, for he must go out straight ahead.

UST

9 When the people come to worship me at the festivals that I, Yahweh, have commanded, those who enter the temple area through the north gateway must go out through the south gateway. And those who enter through the south gateway must go out through the north gateway. People must not go out through the gateway through which they entered; they must go out through the opposite gateway.
Ezekiel 46:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
10 The prince must be in their midst; when they go in, he must go in, and when they leave, he must leave.

UST
10 The ruler must go in when the other people go in, and go out when the people go out.
At the festivals, the grain offering must be an ephah of grain for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and whatever he wishes to give with the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah.

During the festivals that you hold for me, the king must present twenty-two liters of flour along with a bull or a ram, and as much flour as he wants to with the lambs, along with one liter of olive oil with every twenty-two liters of flour.
Ezekiel 46:12

the gate facing east will be opened for him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Levites will open the gate facing east for him” (See: Active or Passive)

the gate facing east

“the eastern gate” or “the gate on the east side of the courtyard”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- freewill offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- freewill offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

12 When the prince gives a freewill offering, either a burnt offering or a peace offering to Yahweh, the gate facing east will be opened for him. He will offer his burnt offering offering or his peace offering as he does it on the Sabbath day. Then he must go out, and after he has gone out the gate will be shut.

UST

12 When the ruler gives an offering that is not required, either one to be completely burned or an offering to celebrate fellowship with me, the gate on the east side must be opened for him. He must then present his offerings like he does on the Sabbath days. Then he will go out, and after he goes out, they must shut the gateway.
**Ezekiel 46:13**

**General Information:**
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- son
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

**Translation Words - UST**

- son
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT
13 In addition, you will give an unblemished lamb one year old as a burnt offering to Yahweh daily; you will do this morning after morning.

UST
13 In the morning of every day, someone must provide a one year old lamb with no defects to be an offering to me, one that the priests will completely burn.
Ezekiel 46:14

to moisten

“which will soak”

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• oil
• grain offering
• grain offering

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh
• oil
• grain offering
• grain offering

ULT

14 You will give a grain offering with it morning after morning, a sixth of an ephah and a third of a hin of oil to moisten the flour of the grain offering for Yahweh, according to a permanent statute.

UST

14 Someone must also provide each morning an offering of flour. It must be three and one-half liters of flour mixed with one liter of olive oil. You must never stop presenting these offerings of flour and olive oil to me, Yahweh, each day.
Ezekiel 46:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• burnt offering, offering by fire
• grain offering

Translation Words - UST

• burnt offering, offering by fire
• grain offering

ULT
15 They will prepare the lamb, the grain offering, and the oil morning after morning, a permanent burnt offering.

UST
15 The lamb and the offering of flour and olive oil must be presented to me every morning, to be completely burned on the altar.
Ezekiel 46:16

The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 6:11. Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son

• prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT
16 The Lord Yahweh says this: If the prince gives a gift to any of his sons, it is his inheritance. It will be the property of his sons, it is an inheritance.

UST
16 This is what Yahweh the Lord declares: If the ruler gives some of his land to one of his sons, to belong to him permanently, it will then eventually belong to his son's descendants.
Ezekiel 46:17

year of liberty

This is the year that a servant gains freedom. This is also called the “Year of Jubilee.”

Translation Words - ULT

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• son
• return

Translation Words - UST

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• son
• return

ULT

17 But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, then it will be that servant's until the year of liberty, and then it will return to the prince. His inheritance will certainly be for his sons.

UST

17 However, if he gives some of his land to one of his servants, the servant is allowed to keep that land until the year of the celebration of Jubilee. Then the ruler must take possession of it again. But if the ruler gives land to his sons, that land will belong to them permanently.
Ezekiel 46:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

18 The prince will not take the people's inheritance away from their own property; he must provide for his sons from his own property so that my people will not be scattered, each man from his own property."

UST

18 The ruler must not take any land that the people own and force them to live somewhere else. The land that he gives to his sons must be from his own property, not from anyone else's property, in order that none of my people will be separated from his own property."
Ezekiel 46:19

which faced north
“which had their main entrances to the north”

behold!
Ezekiel saw something interesting.

Translation Words - ULT
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
19 Next the man brought me through the entrance at the gate to the holy rooms for the priests, which faced north and behold! There was a place toward the west.

UST
19 Then, in the vision, the man brought me through the entrance alongside the gateway to the sacred rooms on the north side, the rooms that belonged to the priests, and he showed me a place at the western end.
Ezekiel 46:20

outer courtyard

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:5.

Translation Words - ULT

• set apart
• priest, priesthood
• people, people group,
• grain offering
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

• set apart
• priest, priesthood
• people, people group,
• grain offering
• know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT 20 He said to me, “This is the place where the priests must boil the guilt offering and the sin offering and where they must bake the grain offering. They must not bring the offerings into the outer courtyard, for then the people would be consecrated.”

UST 20 He said to me, “This is the place where the priests will cook the meat of the offerings that people make because they failed to do what they promised Yahweh that they would do, and offerings to cause people to become acceptable to God, and where they will bake bread made with the flour brought as offerings. They will cook those things in their rooms in order to avoid bringing them into the outer courtyard to cook them there, lest someone might be consecrated by touching them.”
Ezekiel 46:21

outer courtyard

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 10:5.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT
21 Then he brought me to the outer courtyard and he led me past the four corners of that courtyard, and I saw that in at every corner of the courtyard there was a another court.

UST
21 Then the man brought me to the outer courtyard and led me around to its four corners. In each corner I saw an enclosed area;
Ezekiel 46:22

forty cubits...thirty

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “40 cubits...30 cubits” or “about 21.6 meters...about 16.2 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)
Ezekiel 46:23

cooking hearths
places where people can build fire and cook food

ULT
23 There was a row made of stone all around the four of them, and cooking hearths were under the stone row.

UST
23 Around the inside of each of these enclosed areas was a stone ledge, with places to make fires all around under the ledge.
Ezekiel 46:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house

ULT

24 The man said to me, “These are the places where the temple servants will boil the people's sacrifices.”

46:22 [1] The Hebrew word translated here as small is unclear. It is translated in this way by some ancient and some modern versions. However, other modern versions translate it differently.

UST

24 The man said to me, “These are the kitchens where the descendants of Levi who work in the temple will cook the sacrifices that the people bring.”
Ezekiel 47

Ezekiel 47 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There was a river flowing from the temple. The land was to be divided among the tribes. The landscape of Jerusalem will have changed in a significant way. (See: temple)
Ezekiel 47:1

to the right of the altar

This is the right side of the altar when a person looks at it while they are facing east, so it is on the south side of the altar. Alternate translation: “on the south side of the altar”

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- return
- house
- house
- house (2)
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- return
- house
- house
- house
- house (2)
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

1 Then the man took me back to the entrance to the temple, and there was water flowing out from under the temple threshold of the house toward the east—for the front of the temple faced east—and the water was flowing down the south side of the temple, to the right of the altar.

UST

1 Then in the vision, the man brought me back to the entrance of the temple. There I saw water coming out from under the entrance and flowing toward the east. The water was flowing down the south side of the entrance, to the right of the altar.
Ezekiel 47:2

the gate facing east

“the eastern gate” or “the eastern gate of the outer wall”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway (2)

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway (2)

ULT

2 So he brought me out through the northern gate and led around to the gate facing east, and there the water was flowing from this gate on its south side.

UST

2 Then he brought me out through the north gate and led me around to the eastern gate at its exterior side.
Ezekiel 47:3

measuring line

a string or a rope that people use to measure longer distances

one thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. Alternate translation: “1,000 cubits” or “about 540 meters” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT
3 As the man was going toward the east, there was a measuring line in his hand; he measured off one thousand cubits and brought me through the water to ankle-deep water.

UST
3 As the man continued walking toward the east, I saw that he had a measuring line in his hand. He measured off 540 meters and then led me through water that covered my ankles.
Then he measured one thousand cubits again and brought me through the water to knee-deep water; and he measured another thousand cubits and brought me to hip-deep water.

ULT

4 Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my knees. Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my waist.

ULT

4 Then he measured one thousand cubits again and brought me through the water to knee-deep water; and he measured another thousand cubits and brought me to hip-deep water.

UST

4 Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my knees. Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my waist.
Ezekiel 47:5

a river that could not be crossed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “a river that no one could cross on foot” (See: Active or Passive)
Ezekiel 47:6

Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 2:1. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

do you see this?

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 8:15. Alternate translation: “think about this.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• return

Translation Words - UST

• son
• return
Ezekiel 47:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
7 As I walked back, there the riverbank had many trees on this side and also the other side.

UST
7 and back along it toward in the direction from where we had come. There I saw many trees growing on each side of the river.
Ezekiel 47:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Arabah
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Arabah
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT
8 The man said to me, “This water is going out to the eastern territory and down to the Arabah; this water flows into the Salt Sea and will make it fresh.

UST
8 He said to me, “This water flows east and goes down into the Dead Sea. And when the water enters the Dead Sea, it stays fresh and restores the water of the Sea and makes it fresh again.
Ezekiel 47:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

ULT

9 It will be that every living creature that swarms will live where the water goes; there will be many fish, for these waters flow there. It will make the salt water fresh. Everything will live wherever the river goes.

UST

9 Swarms of fish will live in the water wherever the river flows. There will be many fish in the Dead Sea, because the water that flows into it will cause the salt water to become fresh water. Wherever the river flows, everything alongside it will flourish.
Ezekiel 47:10

Then it will happen

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 21:7.

En Gedi

This is the name of a very large spring on the western side of the Salt Sea. (See: How to Translate Names)

a place to dry out the fishing nets

“a place for people to dry out their fishing nets”

En Eglaim

This is the name of a large spring on the eastern side of the Salt Sea. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
Ezekiel 47:11

**swamps**
places with shallow water and trees growing in deep mud

**marshes**
places with shallow water and grasses growing in deep mud

**ULT**
11 But the Salt Sea's swamps and marshes will not be made fresh; they will be for providing salt.

**UST**
11 But the swamps and marshes along the shore will not become fresh; they will be left to make salt.
Ezekiel 47:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sanctuary
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- sanctuary
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

12 Beside this river on its banks, on both sides, all kinds of trees will grow that bear food. Their leaves will not wither and their fruit will never fail to grow. Each month the trees will bear fruit, because the water from the sanctuary flows to them. Their fruit will be for food, and their leaves will be for healing.

UST

12 Many kinds of fruit trees will grow on both sides of the river. Their leaves will not wither, and they will always have fruit. They will bear new fruit every month, because the water that comes from the temple flows continually to the trees. Their fruit will be good to eat and their leaves will be good for healing.”
Ezekiel 47:13

Joseph will have two portions

The person is a metonym for his descendants. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Joseph will receive two areas of land” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT
13 The Lord Yahweh says this: This will be the way that you divide the land up for the twelve tribes of Israel: Joseph will have two portions.

UST
13 In the vision, Yahweh also said this to me: “Here is a list of the twelve tribes of Israel and the territory that each tribe is to receive. The descendants of Joseph will receive two portions.”
Ezekiel 47:14

I lifted up my hand and swore

In those days a person would raise his right hand to show that he realized that God would punish him if he did not do what he swore to do. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• hand
• earth, earthen, earthly
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

• inherit, inheritance, heir
• ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
• hand
• earth, earthen, earthly
• bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
Ezekiel 47:15

boundary
the end of an area of land

Hethlon...Zedad
These are the names of towns. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
15 This will be the boundary of the land on the north side from the Great Sea by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad. [1]

UST
15 These will be the boundaries of the land: On the north side, it will extend from the Mediterranean Sea east along the road to Hethlon, and then on to Zedad,
Ezekiel 47:16

Berothah...Sibraim...Hazer Hattikon...Hauran

These are the names of towns. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT
16 Then the boundary will go to Berothah, to Sibraim, which is between Damascus and Hamath, and then to Hazer Hattikon, which is beside the boundary of Hauran.

UST
16 to Berothah, and then on to Sibraim, which is on the border between Damascus and Hamath. The boundary will run as far as Hazer Hattikon, which is on the border of the region of Hauran.
Ezekiel 47:17

Hazar Enan
the name of a town (See: How to Translate Names)

border
where two areas of land meet

ULT
17 So the boundary will go from the sea to Hazar Enan on the border with Damascus and Hamath to the north. This will be the north side.

UST
17 So the boundary will extend from the Mediterranean Sea to Hazar Enan on the border between Hamath to the north and Damascus to the south. That will be the northern boundary.
Ezekiel 47:18

Hauran

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gilead, Gileadite
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gilead, Gileadite
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

18 On the east side the boundary will run between Hauran and Damascus, along the Jordan River between Gilead and the land of Israel. You will measure from the border to the eastern sea. This will be the eastern border. [2]

UST

18 On the east side, the boundary will extend between Hauran and Damascus, south along the Jordan River between the region of Gilead and the territory of Israel, along the Dead Sea as far as Tamar. That will be the eastern boundary.
Ezekiel 47:19

Tamar...Meribah Kadesh

These are the names of towns. (See: How to Translate Names)

the brook of Egypt

a very large ravine in the northeast part of the Sinai

ULT
19 Then on the south side the boundary will run from Tamar as far as the waters of Meribah Kadesh, then along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. This will be the boundary on the south side.

UST
19 On the south side, the boundary will extend from Tamar to the springs near Meribah Kadesh. Then it will extend west along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. That will be the southern boundary.
Ezekiel 47:20

Hamath

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

20 Then the boundary on the west side will be the Great Sea to a point opposite Lebo Hamath. This will be the west side.

UST

20 On the west side, the boundary will be the Mediterranean Sea, north to a point near Lebo Hamath.
Ezekiel 47:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

21 In this way you will divide this land for yourselves, for the tribes of Israel.

UST

21 You must distribute this land among yourselves, among the tribes of Israel.
Ezekiel 47:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

22 So you will distribute the inheritances for yourselves and for the foreigners in your midst, those who have given birth to children in your midst and who are, with you, like the native born people of Israel. You will cast lots for inheritances among the tribes of Israel.

UST

22 You must assign the land as a permanent possession for yourselves and also for any foreigners who are living and raising their children among you. You must consider them to be like native born Israelites, and they must be assigned land among the tribes of Israel.
Ezekiel 47:23

Then it will happen that

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 21:7.

this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir

ULT

23 Then it will happen that the foreigner will be with the tribe among whom he is living. You must give him an inheritance—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.”

47:15 [1] The Hebrew text reads by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad, but some modern versions imitate 48:1 and add Lebo Hamath.

47:18 [2] The Hebrew text reads You will measure from the border to the eastern sea. However, some ancient and modern versions read to the eastern sea as far as Tamar.

UST

23 Wherever foreigners are living, you must give them some land to belong to them permanently.' That is what the Lord Yahweh declares.”
Ezekiel 48

Ezekiel 48 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There is more dividing of the land between the tribes in this chapter as well.
Ezekiel 48:1

one portion of land
“one piece of the land that you will distribute”

boundary will run...boundary will go
“boundary will be...boundary will be”

Hethlon
This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 47:15.

Lebo Hamath
This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 47:15 or Ezekiel 47:20

Hazar Enan
This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 47:17.

Translation Words - ULT

• name
• hand
• hand (2)
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

• name
• hand
• hand (2)
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT
1 These are the names of the tribes. The tribe of Dan will receive one portion of land; its boundary will run along the northern boundary of Israel by way of Hethlon and Lebo Hamath. Its boundary will go on to Hazar Enan and along the border with Damascus to the north and then on to Hamath. Dan’s boundary will go from east all the way to the Great Sea.

UST
1 Here is a list of the tribes of Israel and the territory that each tribe is to receive. The northern boundary of Israel will start at the Mediterranean Sea and go east to the city of Hethlon, then to Lebo Hamath, and farther on to Hazar Enan, which is south of Damascus, and it will continue to Hamath. Each tribe will receive land that will extend from the eastern boundary of Israel west to the Great Sea. The tribe of Dan will receive land alongside the northern border of Israel.
Ezekiel 48:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
2 Adjoining the border of Dan, from the east side to the west, Asher will have one portion.

UST
2 South of their area will be the territory for the tribe of Asher.
Ezekiel 48:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
3 Adjoining the border of Asher from the east side to the west, Naphtali will have one portion.

UST
3 South of Asher's land will be territory for the tribe of Naphtali.
Ezekiel 48:4

one portion

Translate as you translated “one portion of land” in Ezekiel 48:1.

from the east side to the west

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 48:3.
Ezekiel 48:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim, Ephraimitic

Translation Words - UST

- Ephraim, Ephraimitic

ULT

5 Adjoining the border of Manasseh from the east side to the west, Ephraim will have one portion.

UST

5 South of Manasseh’s land will be territory for the tribe of Ephraim.
Ezekiel 48:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Reuben

Translation Words - UST

- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Reuben

ULT

6 Adjoining the border of Ephraim from the east side to the west, Reuben will have one portion.

UST

6 South of Ephraim's land will be territory for the tribe of Reuben.
Ezekiel 48:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judea
- Reuben

Translation Words - UST

- Judea
- Reuben

ULT

7 Adjoining the border of Reuben from the east side to the west, Judah will have one portion.

UST

7 South of their land will be territory for the tribe of Judah.
Ezekiel 48:8

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

twenty-five thousand cubits
Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT
- sanctuary
- Judea

Translation Words - UST
- sanctuary
- Judea

ULT
8 The offering of land that you will make will be along the border with Judah and extend from the east side to the west side; it will be twenty-five thousand cubits in width. Its length will correspond to one tribe’s portion from the east side to the west side, and the temple will be in the middle of it.

UST
8 South of Judah’s land will be an area that the entire nation will give to me; you will set it apart for special use. The temple will be in the center of this area. It will be as long as any of the portions of land assigned a tribe of Israel.
Ezekiel 48:9

twenty-five thousand cubits...ten thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers...5.4 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh

ULT

9 This land that you will offer up to Yahweh will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width.

UST

9 This special area will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifths kilometers wide. This is what you will give to Yahweh.
Ezekiel 48:10

The priests will have land assigned to them

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The leaders of the Israelites will assign land to the priests” (See: Active or Passive)

twenty-five thousand cubits...ten thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers...5.4 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

10 These will be the assignments of this holy portion of land: The priests will have land assigned to them measuring twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the north side; ten thousand cubits in width on the west side; ten thousand cubits in width on the east side; and twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the south side, with the holy place of Yahweh in the middle of it.

UST

10 Within this special area, these will what you will assign to the priests: you will assign them an area of land measuring thirteen and one-half kilometers on the northern and southern side; and five and two-fifths kilometers on the western and eastern sides. The temple of Yahweh will be in the middle of this special area.
Ezekiel 48:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

11 This will be for the consecration of the priests of the line of Zadok, who have served me faithfully and who did not go astray when the people of Israel went astray, as the Levites did.

UST

11 The temple area will be for the priests, those set apart for my honor, who are descendants of Zadok. They are ones who served me faithfully and did not turn away from Yahweh as the descendants of Levi did.
Ezekiel 48:12

**The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land**

“This smaller portion within the holy portion of the land will belong to these priests, a portion that is more holy than the rest of the holy portion of the land”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- earth, earthen, earthly

**ULT**

12 The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land, extending to the border of the Levites.

**UST**

12 When the land is distributed, you will offer that special area to me, for it to be the priests’ special portion; it is land that you will treat as very special to me. Next to the priests’ territory will be where the other descendants of Levi will live.
Ezekiel 48:13

ten thousand cubits...twenty-five thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers...5.4 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT
• priest, priesthood
• Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST
• priest, priesthood
• Levi, Levite, Levitical
Ezekiel 48:14

this firstfruits

“this land which is the firstfruits.” Here “firstfruits” probably means the best things among all the offerings set aside to give to God. This land is spoken of in that way, as land set aside for Yahweh’s use. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• Yahweh
• firstfruits
• earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

• holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
• Yahweh
• firstfruits
• earth, earthen, earthly

ULT
14 They must not sell it or exchange it; none of this firstfruits of the land of Israel must ever be separated from these tracts, for it all is holy to Yahweh.

UST
14 None of this special land, this best land, may ever be sold or traded or used by other people, because it belongs to Yahweh. It is set apart for him.
Ezekiel 48:15

five thousand cubits...twenty-five thousand cubits

“5000 cubits...25,000 cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “almost 2.3 kilometers...about 13.5 kilometers” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

will be for the collective use of the city

“will be an area that all the people of the city will share and use”

the houses, and the pastureland

“as a place for houses and for an open space”

Translation Words - ULT

• face, facial

Translation Words - UST

• face, facial
**Ezekiel 48:16**

**4,500 cubits**

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 2.4 kilometers” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

**ULT**

16 These will be the city’s measurements: The north side will be 4,500 cubits in length; the south side will be 4,500 cubits in length; the east side will be 4,500 cubits in length; and the west side will be 4,500 cubits in length.

**UST**

16 The city will be square, two and two-fifths kilometers long on each side.
Ezekiel 48:17

250 cubits

“two hundred and fifty cubits.” A cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 135 meters” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

ULT
17 There will be pasture for the city toward the north, 250 cubits deep; to the south, 250 cubits deep; to the east, 250 cubits deep, and to the west, 250 cubits deep.

UST
17 There will be an open area around the city, within the special area, that will be about 135 meters deep in each direction.
Ezekiel 48:18

**ten thousand cubits**

“10,000 cubits.” A cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 5.4 kilometers” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

**its produce**

“the food that grows there”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering (2)

**Translation Words - UST**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering (2)

**ULT**

18 The remaining area of the holy offering will stretch for ten thousand cubits to the east and ten thousand cubits to the west. It will stretch along the border of the holy offering, and its produce will be food for those working in the city.

**UST**

18 Outside the city there will be a farming area that will extend five and two-fifths kilometers on the east side and five and two-fifths kilometers on the west side. Men who work there will produce food for the people who work in the city.
Ezekiel 48:19

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT
19 The people who work in the city, people belong to all the tribes of Israel, will farm that land.

UST
19 Those who come from the various tribes to work in the city may also work in this farmland.
Ezekiel 48:20

**twenty-five thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

**In this way you will make the holy offering of land, together with the land for the city.**

“You will offer the holy offering and also the property of the city”

**you**

This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

**the holy offering**

the land that the people of Israel gave to Yahweh for the Levites, the priests, and the temple

**Translation Words - ULT**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

**Translation Words - UST**

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
Ezekiel 48:21

the holy offering

See how you translated this in Ezekiel 48:18.

twenty-five thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers” (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- face, facial
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- face, facial
- face, facial
- house

ULT

21 The rest of the land on either side of the holy offering and the city area will be for the prince. The prince’s tract of land to the east will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits from boundary of the holy offering to the eastern border—and his tract to the west will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits to the western border. In the middle will be the holy offering, and the holy place of the temple will be in its midst.

UST

21 The tracts of land to the east and to the west of Yahweh’s area and the city will belong to the ruler. One area will extend east to the eastern boundary of Israel, and the other will extend west to the Great Sea. Yahweh’s area, which contains the temple, will be in the middle.
Ezekiel 48:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judea
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- Judea
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT
22 The land extending from the property of the Levites and the area of the city in its midst will be for for the prince; it will be between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin—this land will be for the prince.

UST
22 The area that belongs to the ruler will be between the tribe of Judah to the north and the tribe of Benjamin to the south.
Ezekiel 48:23

one portion

Translate as you translated “one portion of land” in Ezekiel 48:1.

Translation Words - ULT

• Benjamin, Benjamite
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

• Benjamin, Benjamite
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT
23 As for the remaining tribes, their portions will also run from the eastern side to the west side. Benjamin will receive one portion.

UST
23 South of Yahweh’s area, each of the other tribes will receive one portion of land that extends from the eastern boundary of Israel west to the Great Sea. Just south of Yahweh’s area will be territory for the tribe of Benjamin.
Ezekiel 48:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

• Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

24 Adjoining the border of Benjamin from the east side to the west, Simeon will have one portion.

UST

24 South of Benjamin's land will be the land for the tribe of Simeon.
Ezekiel 48:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
25 Adjoining the border of Simeon from the east side to the west, Issachar will have one portion.

UST
25 South of Simeon’s land will be the land for the tribe of Issachar.
Ezekiel 48:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
26 Adjoining the border of Issachar from the east side to the west, Zebulun will have one portion.

UST
26 South of Issachar’s land will be the land for the tribe of Zebulun.
Ezekiel 48:27

General Information:
Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT
- Gad

Translation Words - UST
- Gad

ULT
27 To the south of Zebulun's boundary, running from the east side to the west side, will be the land of Gad—one portion.

UST
27 South of Zebulun's land will be the land for the tribe of Gad.
The southern boundary of Gad will extend from Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea.

The southern boundary of Gad’s land will extend south from En Gedi to the springs at Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea.
Ezekiel 48:29

you
This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

cast lots
See how you translated this in Ezekiel 45:1.

This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration
Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 5:11. Alternate translation: “This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
Ezekiel 48:30

4,500 cubits

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in Ezekiel 40:5. Alternate translation: “about 2.4 kilometers” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

ULT

30 These will be the exits from the city: On the north side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length,

UST

30 Here are the city gates: On the north side, which is two and two-fifths kilometers long,
Ezekiel 48:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• name
• Israel, Israelites
• Judea
• Reuben
• Levi, Levite, Levitical
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

• name
• Israel, Israelites
• Judea
• Reuben
• Levi, Levite, Levitical
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

31 will be three gates, named for tribes of Israel: one gate for Reuben, one gate for Judah, and one gate for Levi.

UST

31 there will be three gates. Each gate will have the name of one of the tribes of Israel. The first one will be named for Reuben, the next for Judah, the next for Levi.
Ezekiel 48:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
32 On the east side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Joseph, one gate for Benjamin, and one gate for Dan.

UST
32 On the east side, also two and two-fifths kilometers long, will be gates named for Joseph, Benjamin, and Dan.
Ezekiel 48:33

4,500 cubits

“four thousand five hundred cubits." This is about 2.4 kilometers. (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
• gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
33 On the south side, which is 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Simeon, one gate for Issachar, and one gate for Zebulun.

UST
33 On the south side, also two-fifths of a kilometer long, will be gates named for Simeon, Issachar, and Zebulun.
Ezekiel 48:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Gad
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- Gad
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT
34 On the west side, which will measure 4,500 cubits, will be three gates: one gate for Gad, one gate for Asher, and one gate for Naphtali.

UST
34 On the west side, also two-fifths of a kilometer long, will be gates named for Gad, Asher, and Naphtali.
Ezekiel 48:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

• Yahweh

ULT

35 The distance around the city will be eighteen thousand cubits; from that day on, the city’s name will be “Yahweh Is There.”

UST

35 The distance around the city would be nine and three-quarters kilometers. From that time on, the name of the city will be “Yahweh is there.”
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial. But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

**Active or Passive**

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

**Description**

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

**Purposes for the passive**

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

**Translation Principles Regarding the Passive**

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

**Examples from the Bible**

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

**Translation Strategies**

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns

[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]
Apostrophe

**Definition**
An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

**Description**
He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

**Reason this is a translation issue**
Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

**Examples from the Bible**
- Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)
  - King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.
  - Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)
  - Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

**Translation Strategies**
If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**
- He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See,...on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)
  - The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.
- He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says about this altar. ‘See,...they will burn people's bones on it.’”
- Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)
  - As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker’s message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be implicit information that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But...
Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you.

or:

...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands...
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

| Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat. |

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:
At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day;” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day;” “that they had brought with them;” and “Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were”, rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “Peter was the best hunter in the village” and “it was his own pig.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
  - Setting includes:
    - where the story takes place
    - when the story takes place
    - who is present when the story begins
    - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus’ age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, “But some of the Pharisees said.”

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother’s wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.
Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

(Go back to: Ezekiel 10:3)
Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The "**long** cubit" is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Metric Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handbreadth</td>
<td>8 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>span</td>
<td>23 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubit</td>
<td>46 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“long” cubit</td>
<td>54 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stadia</td>
<td>185 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.
Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.
“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Liters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>omer</td>
<td>2 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>ephah</td>
<td>22 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>homer</td>
<td>220 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>cor</td>
<td>220 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>seah</td>
<td>7.7 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>lethek</td>
<td>114.8 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>metretete</td>
<td>40 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>22 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>hin</td>
<td>3.7 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>kab</td>
<td>1.23 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>log</td>
<td>0.31 liters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

• The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
• Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
• Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
• If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
• When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.
When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa.”

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters.”

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters 1, and 220 liters 2 of seed will yield only twenty-two liters 3.”

The footnotes would look like:
When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Fractions

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Shekels</th>
<th>Grams</th>
<th>Kilograms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>1 shekel</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bekah</td>
<td>1/2 shekel</td>
<td>5.7 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pim</td>
<td>2/3 shekel</td>
<td>7.6 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerah</td>
<td>1/20 shekel</td>
<td>0.57 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mina</td>
<td>50 shekels</td>
<td>550 grams</td>
<td>1/2 kilogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>3,000 shekels</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>34 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.
Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.

(Exodus 38:29 ULT)

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

““The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.”

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

““The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms.”

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

““The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds.”

4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

““The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).”

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

““The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.

1 This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.”

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:10; 45:12)
**Doublet**

**Description**

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

**Examples from the Bible**

- King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
  
  The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

- ...he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
  
  This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

- You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  
  This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

- ...as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)
  
  This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

**Translation Strategies**

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate only one of the words.

- You have decided to prepare *false*

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- King David was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

- “King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- ...a lamb without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “…a lamb without any blemish at all...”

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

…the wicked will not stand in the judgment, *nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous*. (Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

…nor *will* sinners *stand* in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox*. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, *for your comfort and salvation*; if we are comforted, *for your comfort*, ...

(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:
But if we are afflicted, we are afflicted for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, we are comforted for your comfort,…

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus...Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...May you receive grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:6; 22:29; 23:32; 23:38; 25:5; 34:4; 34:16; 40:44)
Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead". It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he did not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order to be polite, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

"...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
"...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)
Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I do not know a man?” - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- they found Saul and his sons fallen
- “they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa.”

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)
When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah”. The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Ah” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as “how” or “why”, even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God’s judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are”.
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are”.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)
“You are such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God are so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” (Mark 7:36 ULT)

“They were absolutely astonished, saying, ‘Wow! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.’”

Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Oh no, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, what will happen to me? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“His judgments are so unsearchable and his ways are far beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. He was terrified and said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

(Go back to: Ezekiel 11:13; 26:2; 30:2)
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(To go back: Ezekiel 33:21; 40:1)
First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “...Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

This page answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

Pronouns
Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “… Do you have an arm like God’s?

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “… Do you have an arm like mine?

Can you thunder with a voice like me?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

(1385 / 1769)
Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The singular form refers to one person, and the plural form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the formal form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the informal form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

Fractions

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

A third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of parts the whole is divided into</th>
<th>Fraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of parts the whole is divided into</th>
<th>Fraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.
The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

**Translation Strategies**

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

**Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

   A third
   of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

   It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.

   then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths
   of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

   ...then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

   two thirds of a shekel
   (1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

   eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

   three tenths of an ephah
   of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

   six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:11; 5:2)
Hebrew Months

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
• Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
• Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
• The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called Nisan after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.
**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

### Examples from the Bible

- You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the **month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)
- You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the **first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

> At that time, you will appear before me in the **month of Abib**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

**It will always be a statute for you that** in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

(1) **Tell the number of the Hebrew month.**

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) **Use the months that people know.**

> At that time, you will appear before me in the **month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

> It will always be a statute for you that on **the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) **State clearly what season the month occurred in.**

> It will always be a statute for you that in **the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) **Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.**
It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about: Ordinal Numbers

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:1; 8:1; 20:1; 24:1; 29:1; 29:17; 30:20; 31:1; 32:1; 33:21; 40:1; 45:18; 45:21; 45:25)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

_Saul_ was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that _Paul_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the _Jordan_ and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the _Jordan River_ and came to the _city of Jericho_. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with _the tribe of the Amorites_

Shortly after, _some Pharisees_ came and said to him, “Go and leave here because _Herod_ wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

_She named him_ Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

_She named him Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’),_ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

..._she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called_ Beerlahairoi
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul** ¹

The footnote would look like:

[¹] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

**But Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[¹] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

**But Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** ¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:
This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.

  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)
- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.
- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)
- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)
- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.
- And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)
- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
**Examples from the Bible**

**Examples of Hyperbole**

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...

(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should *do whatever extreme things* we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were *many, many* soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about *all things that we need to know*. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that *many people* were looking for him, or that all of Jesus’ closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

**Examples of Generalization**

*Can anything good come out of Nazareth?* (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “*Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.*” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

*A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich.* (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

**Caution**

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

translation strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

examples of translation strategies applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:

Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 22:4; 23:20; 23:23; 30:5; 30:11; 32:12; 34:8; 35:9)
Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...;” “What if the sun stopped shining...;” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...;” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”

(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.
Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

**Hypothetical situations in the present**

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. *If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.* (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

**Hypothetical situation in the future**

*Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;* but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

**Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation**

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

**Translation Strategies**

Find out how people speaking your language show:

• that something could have happened, but did not.
• that something could be true now, but is not.
• that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
• that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
• that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:6)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

- he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)
- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)
- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)
- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

- Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
- the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all belong to the same nation.

He resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter my house.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

“My eyes grow dim from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my eyes out

Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

**Description**

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

**Examples from the Bible**

**Inclusive**

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

**Exclusive**

We have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)
In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 21:10)
**Introduction of a New Event**

**Description**

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

**Examples from the Bible**

*In the days of Herod*, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. **His wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**One day** while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

*After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king*, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after Jesus was born**.

*In those days* John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

*Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council.* This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)
The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: “another time” or “someone.”
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council. One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council, came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said...

As he passed by, there was a man sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, there was a tax collector sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Background Information
[[rc://en/tl/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(2) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(2) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

(2) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

(2) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

(2) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.
Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

• If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large! " (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.
Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

**Translation Strategies**

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker’s words.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

*You think that you are doing well when you reject God’s commandment* so you may keep your tradition!

*You act like it is good to reject God’s commandment* so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people
to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

*You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God* so you may keep your tradition!

“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen* so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Litotes

(Go back to: Ezekiel 21:10; 28:9; 39:18)
Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.

Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:27)
Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere".

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything...
From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

- In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

- I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

- He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

(For back to: Ezekiel 20:47; 21:4; 29:10; 30:6)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love”. This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker’s Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the **Idea** is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the **Topic**) as if they were cows (the **Image**). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic(s)** are “we” and “you,” and the **Image(s)** are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.
Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the Idea) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the Idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

   And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **the** clay
   . You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

   And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

   **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad
   . (Acts 26:14 ULT)

   **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to** kick against a pointed stick.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

   **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay
   . You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

   “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”
   “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

   **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

   be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

   **Yahweh lives; He is my rock.** May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image**, then state it clearly.

   **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

   be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

   **Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies.** May the God of my salvation be exalted.

**Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

   . (Acts 26:14 ULT)

   **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.**

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men

(Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become people who gather men. Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonymy is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

- The blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)
  The blood represents Christ’s death.
- He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)
  The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

- The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)
  A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.
- Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)
  The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.
- …who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)
  The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

...The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man".

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He".

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich", and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way. Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

- The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)
  “The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

- Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULT)
  “The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

- The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous
  . (Psalms 125:3 ULT)
The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

Blessed are people who are meek...

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

- Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

- That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

- When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

- Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

Ordinal Numbers
Fractions

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:5; 4:9; 4:10; 11:1; 39:12; 40:17; 48:15; 48:16; 48:17; 48:18; 48:30; 48:33)
Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.” (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll after breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams’ horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... 10 But Joshua commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.” (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams’ horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... 10 But Joshua had commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.”

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams’ horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... 10 But Joshua commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.” Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Background Information
- Introduction of a New Event
- Verse Bridges

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:4)
**Ordinal Numbers**

**Description**

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

**Ordinal Numbers in English**

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Reason this is a translation issue:*

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

**Examples from the Bible**

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedeaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row
must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim,...another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

(Next we recommend you learn about: Fractions)

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:1; 8:1; 20:1; 21:14; 24:1; 26:1; 29:1; 29:17; 30:20; 31:1; 32:1; 33:21; 39:14; 40:1; 45:18; 45:20; 45:21; 45:25)
Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See Translate Unknowns.)
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand “. (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and planted in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:3; 24:6; 24:7; 24:9; 24:11; 24:13; 24:14; 30:20; 30:21; 30:22; 30:25; 31:3)
Parallelism

Description

In parallelism two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

• It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
• It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
• It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4) **The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

**Translation Strategies**

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

   Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
   “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

   Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
   “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

   For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
   “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

   Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
   “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

You have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:
Personification

**Personification**

**Description**

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

- Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

- sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

**Examples from the Bible**

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

- Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

**Translation Strategies**

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

- ...sin crouches
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...even the winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even controls the winds and the sea.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.
**Pronouns**

**Description**

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are “I”, “you”, “he”, “it”, “this”, “that”, “himself”, “someone”, and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

**Personal Pronouns**

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

**Person**

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

**Number**

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

**Gender**

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

**Relationship to other words in the sentence**

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

**Other Types of pronouns**

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw** himself

  in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.
Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who
  built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- I saw the house that

  John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
  - I saw the man who
  built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- Have you seen this

  here?
  - Who is that
  over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to anyone

- Someone
  fixed it, but I do not know who.
  - They
  say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 43:22; 43:23; 43:25; 43:27; 44:28)
Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches, and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes, so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity, but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for a cold wind to blow in the hot season or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 18:2)
Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)
Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)
So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about 
myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to 
self-purify.

. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him

king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself
“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in its own place.”

(Go back to: Ezekiel 28:4; 34:15; 34:20)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God's high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
• Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
• Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were *like sheep without a shepherd*. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

• A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
• A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
• Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• People may not know how the two items are similar.
• People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky*, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus’ disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

(Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

(Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among *people who will want to harm you*.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to *protect you*, but you refused!

**Next we recommend you learn about:**

*Metaphor*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

- Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)
  Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.
- Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
  Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

• One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
• Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

• When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
• It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, ‘As for the fourth animal, it will be a fourth kingdom on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom ten kings will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)
This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

**Translation Strategies**

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

   After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

   After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

   After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, 1 terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; 2 it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. 3

The footnotes would look like:

   [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
   [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
   [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

*(Go back to: Ezekiel 6:11; 19:10; 29:3; 29:4)*
Symbolic Prophecy

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See Dream and Vision for help translating “dreams” and “visions”.) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images include a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for this. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense “the predictive past”. (See Predictive Past.)

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
• Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
• If God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

Translation Principles

• Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
• When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.
If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.

Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.

Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.

Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The underlined phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest. His head and hair were as white as wool— as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. His feet were like burnished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULT)

As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow, and the hair of his head was like pure wool. (Daniel 7:9 ULT)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and his feet were like polished bronze, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULT)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULT)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The underlined verbs refer to past events.

The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh has spoken:

“I have nourished and brought up children, but they have rebelled against me. (Isaiah 1:1-2 ULT)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The underlined verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish.
In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations.
The people who walked in darkness have seen a great light; those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light has shone on them. (Isaiah 9:1-2 ULT)

(Go back to: Introduction to Ezekiel)
Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

* "My soul exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)
 * "I exalt the Lord."

...the Pharisees said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands
had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

10 See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.
14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” 16\[^1\]

\[^1\] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” 16\[^1\]

\[^1\] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” \[^1\]

\[^1\] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 27:9)
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
• Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

• Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
• Keep expressions short if possible.
• Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

**Translation Strategies**

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

```
Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves
```

(Matthew 7:15 ULT)

```
We have here only five loaves of bread
```

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

```
your sins...will be white like snow
```

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

```
your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon
```

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

```
Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh
```

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

```
Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
```

**We have here only five loaves of bread**
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have here only five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**

( Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked food** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

to him who made **great lights**

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

( Go back to: Ezekiel 4:9; 4:12; 9:2; 9:11; 10:2; 10:9; 27:19; 28:13; 31:8)
Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples from the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

4 However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), 5 if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

16-17 But Yahweh said to him, “You must not eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are evil to do as well as what actions are good to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that day your relationship with me will end. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the garden.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

16 Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. 17 But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

2 you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)

2-3 you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:4; 36:4)
When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes his father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

• In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
• In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise 

man
dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise person dies just like the fool dies.”
“Wise people die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”
(Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: Ezekiel 21:29; 22:2; 22:3)
abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:9; 8:17; 9:4; 18:13; 18:24; 43:8)
Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:06 When Abram arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- 05:04 Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means “father of many.”
- 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- 06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 06:04 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- 21:02 God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: Ezekiel 33:24)
adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

• Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
• When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
• In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
• The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 05:14
• Isaiah 09:11
• Job 06:23
• Lamentations 04:12
• Luke 12:59
• Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: Ezekiel 30:16; 39:23; 39:27)
alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 44:7; 44:9)
Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, power)

Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:01
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:03
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 01:7-8
- Ruth 01:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G3841

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:24; 10:5)
altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar.
- 13:09 A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar.
- 16:06 He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the altar to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: Ezekiel 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:13; 8:5; 8:16; 9:2; 40:46; 41:22; 43:13; 43:18; 43:22; 43:26; 43:27)
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:15; 20:26; 25:3; 27:35; 28:19; 29:12; 30:7; 35:12; 35:15; 36:3)
Amorite

Facts:
The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:07 Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- 15:08 In the early morning they surprised the Amorite armies and attacked them.
- 15:09 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:10 God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the Amorites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:9)
**appoint, appointed**

**Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God's “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

**Word Data:**


Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term "Arabah" often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The "Sea of the Arabah" could also be translated as "sea located in the Arabah desert region." This sea is often referred to as the "Salt Sea" or the "Dead Sea."
- The term "arabah" can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Sea of Reeds, Jordan River, Canaan, Salt Sea, Egypt)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

(Go back to: Ezekiel 47:8)
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:
The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

• In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
• Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

• In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

• Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
• When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
• The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
• A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:14
• Acts 07:38
• Ezra 10:12-13
• Hebrews 12:22-24
• Leviticus 04:20-21
• Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

• Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:02 So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- 20:03 The Assyrians gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to Assyria.
- 20:04 Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H804, H1121

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:28; 23:5; 23:7; 23:9; 23:12; 23:23; 27:23; 31:3; 32:22)
atonement, atone, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

• In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
• As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
• When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone's sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
• Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
• Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

• Ezekiel 43:25-27
• Ezekiel 45:18-20
• Leviticus 04:20
• Numbers 05:08
• Numbers 28:22

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3722, H3725, G2643

(See back to: Ezekiel 45:15; 45:17)
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. So, the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated Babylon.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G2915, G2916

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:12; 13:19; 45:13)
barren, dry

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 03:07

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

(Go back to: Ezekiel 19:13)
beast

Facts:
In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 29:11; 32:13)
Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: Ezekiel 48:22; 48:23; 48:24; 48:32)
bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:
To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:
- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he blessed them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He blessed them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau.
Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:12; 34:26; 44:30)
blood

Definition:
The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

• Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
• When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
• The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
• The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:
• This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
• The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
• Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
• If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

• 1 John 01:07
• 1 Samuel 14:32
• Acts 02:20
• Acts 05:28
• Colossians 01:20
• Galatians 01:16
• Genesis 04:11
• Psalms 016:4
• Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 08:03 Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's blood.
• 10:03 God turned the Nile River into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
• 11:05 All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's blood.
• 13:09 The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
• 38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
• 48:10 When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

**Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bow down.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

bread

Definition:
Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:
- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

bronze

Definition:
The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:7; 9:2; 22:18; 24:11; 27:13; 40:3)
brother

Definition:
The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(See back to: Ezekiel 4:17; 11:15; 18:10; 18:18; 24:23; 33:30; 38:21; 44:25)
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:
A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:
- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:25; 39:13)
burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

• Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
• Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
• God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

• Exodus 40:5-7
• Genesis 08:20
• Genesis 22:1-3
• Leviticus 03:05
• Mark 12:33

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: Ezekiel 43:18; 43:24; 43:27; 45:15; 45:23; 46:2; 46:12; 46:13; 46:15)
bury, buried, burial

Definition:
The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: Ezekiel 39:14; 39:15)
call, call out

Definition:
The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 1 General Notes; Notes; Notes; 10:13)
camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: Ezekiel 25:5)
Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term “Canaan” or the “land of Canaan” also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of Canaan.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of Canaan to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:3)
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:
The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions
- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:
- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, sacrifice, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(Go back to: Ezekiel 27:5; 31:3; 31:8)
Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

• The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
• King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
• After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."
• In the book of Daniel, the term "Chaldean" also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

• Acts 07:4-5
• Ezekiel 01:01
• Genesis 11:27-28
• Genesis 11:31-32
• Genesis 15:6-8
• Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 11:24; 12:13; 16:29; 23:14; 23:15; 23:16; 23:23)
chief

Definition:
The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: Ezekiel 10:11)
Christ, Messiah

Facts:
The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

• Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
• In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
• Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
• Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
• The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
• “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

• This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
• Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
• The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
• Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
• Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

• 1 John 05:1-3
• Acts 02:35
• Acts 05:40-42
• John 01:40-42
• John 03:27-28
• John 04:25
• Luke 02:10-12
• Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 17:07 The Messiah was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
• 17:08 As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
• 21:01 From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
• 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own descendants.
• 21:05 The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
• 21:06 God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
• 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
• 43:07 “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!"
• 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
• 46:06 Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: Ezekiel 37 General Notes)
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God's people” or “rebellious like those who don't belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03
• Judges 15:18
• 2 Samuel 01:20
• Jeremiah 09:26
• Ezekiel 32:25
• Acts 10:44-45
• Acts 11:03
• Acts 15:01
• Acts 11:03
• Romans 02:27
• Galatians 05:03
• Ephesians 02:11
• Philippians 03:03
• Colossians 02:11
• Colossians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 05:03 “You must circumcise every male in your family.”
• 05:05 That day Abraham circumcised all the males in his household.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

clean, wash

Definition:
The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God's eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
• Colossians 03:05
• 1 Thessalonians 04:07
• James 04:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:9; 18:6; Notes; 36:25)
column, pillar

Definition:
The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

(Go back to: Ezekiel 40:49)
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:
The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:14)
command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:


confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:
The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: Ezekiel 13:6)
consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:24; 20:12; 20:20; 37:28; 44:19; 44:24; 44:29; 48:11)
consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone's strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:8; 5:12; 22:31)
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:
The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don't be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, fear, strength)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6
Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:6; 3:9)
court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

1528 / 1769
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a covenant with Abram. A covenant is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- **48:11** But God has now made a New Covenant that is available to everyone. Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:59; 16:60; 16:62; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:18; 17:19; 20:37; 30:5; 34:25; 37:26; 44:7)
**cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox**

**Definition:**

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

**Word Data:**


crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: glory, king, olive)

Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:12; 23:42)
cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:
The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

• The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
• This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
• An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:
• Job 27:09
• Mark 05:5-6
• Mark 06:48-50
• Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezekiel 9:8; 11:13; 27:30)
**cut off**

**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

**Word Data:**


darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: Ezekiel 32:8; 34:12)
David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the “Son of David” because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 God chose a young Israelite named David to be king after Saul. David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:03 David was also a great soldier and leader. When David was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- 17:04 Saul became jealous of the people's love for David. Saul tried many times to kill him, so David hid from Saul.
- 17:05 God blessed David and made him successful. David fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 17:09 David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: Ezekiel 34:23; 34:24; 37:24)
declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:
The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

• A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
• For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
• The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
• The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 16:24
• 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
• 1 Samuel 24:17-18
• Amos 02:16
• Ezekiel 05:11-12
• Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:18; 9:1; 9:3; 20:29; 23:23; 36:29; 38:21; 39:11)
**decree, decreed**

**Definition:**

The term "decree" means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a "decree."

- A "decree" is similar to a "law," but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term "decree" could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: command, declare, law)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

**Word Data:**


(See back to: Ezekiel 37:11)
**delight**

**Definition:**

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to "take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

**Bible References:**

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ezekiel 18:23; 18:32; 33:11)*
**Definition:**

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another deliverer.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ezekiel 13:21; 13:23; 14:22; 34:10; 34:12; 34:22; 34:27; 36:29; 37:23)
descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:09 “The woman’s descendant will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- 04:09 “I give the land of Canaan to your descendants.”
- 05:10 “Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- 17:07 “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your descendants!”
- 18:13 The kings of Judah were descendants of David.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own descendants.
- 48:13 God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his descendants. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special descendant of David.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:5; 17:13; 43:19; 44:22)
desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Definition:
The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabituated region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:


destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means, “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:


devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:
The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death
   • To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
   • The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death
   • Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
   • This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
   • This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:
   • To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
   • In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
   • Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
   • In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
   • In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
   • The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
   • The expression "put to death" could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:
   • 1 Corinthians 15:21
   • 1 Thessalonians 04:17
   • Acts 10:42
   • Acts 14:19
   • Colossians 02:15
   • Colossians 02:20
   • Genesis 02:15-17
   • Genesis 34:27
   • Matthew 16:28
   • Romans 05:10
   • Romans 05:12
   • Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:11 God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and disobeyed me.”
- 13:07 If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 16:02 Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- 35:12 “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never disobeyed you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:6; 20:8; 20:13; 20:21)
dominion

Definition:
The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: Ezekiel 19:11)
donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: Ezekiel 23:20)
earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:


Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

• In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
• Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
• Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
• For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
• Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 04:7-9
• Acts 07:10
• Exodus 03:07
• Genesis 41:29
• Genesis 41:57
• Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 08:04 The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt. Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
• 08:08 Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
• 08:11 So Jacob sent his older sons to Egypt to buy food.
• 08:14 Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt with all of his family, and they all lived there.
• 09:01 After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in Egypt.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

elder, older, old

Definition:
The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:12; 9:6; 20:3; 27:9)
Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: Ezekiel 37:16; 37:19; 48:5; 48:6)
Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an “Ethiopian.”

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called “Cush” or “Nubia.”
- The countries of Ethiopia (“Cush”) and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cush, Egypt, eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:30
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:09
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G128

(Go back to: Ezekiel 29:10; 30:5; 30:9; 38:5)
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 17:02 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- 30:03 To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a shepherd.
- 38:08 Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the sheep will be scattered.’”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:5; 34:2; 34:3; 39:18; 43:23; 43:25; 45:15; 45:23)
exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:
To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:
- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: Ezekiel 10:4; 21:26; 31:10)
exile, exiled

Definition:
The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:57; 22:10; 23:10; 39:23)
**face, facial**

**Definition:**

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!""
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: Ezekiel 9 General Notes; 15:8; 17:20; 18:8; 18:9; 18:24; Notes; 39:23; 39:26)
famine

Definition:
The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

• Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
• Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
• In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
• In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
• Acts 07:11
• Genesis 12:10
• Genesis 45:06
• Jeremiah 11:21-23
• Luke 04:25
• Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:17; 6:11; 6:12; 7:15; 14:13; 34:29; 36:29; 36:30)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:
The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:
- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:6; 3:9; 11:8; 30:13)
feast, feasting

Definition:
The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezekiel 44:24; 45:17; 45:21; 45:25)
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:


**firstfruits**

**Definition:**

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: Ezekiel 20:40; 44:30; 48:14)
**flesh**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 25:5; 34:6; 34:8; 34:10; 34:11; 34:12; 34:15; 34:17; 34:19; 34:31; 36:38)
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 07:10 But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
• **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
• **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
• **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

• H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

*(Go back to: Ezekiel 36 General Notes)*
forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:
The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:12; 9:9; 20:8; 23:8; 24:21)
freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, feast, grain offering, guilt offering, law, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:06
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: Ezekiel 46:12)
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--"that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul's expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:8; 17:9; 17:23; 19:12; 19:14; 25:4; 34:27; 36:8; 36:30; 47:12)
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:04 John fulfilled what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- 40:03 The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they fulfilled a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- 42:07 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be fulfilled.”
- 43:05 “This fills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- 43:07 “This fills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- 44:05 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: Ezekiel 20:8; 20:13; 20:21; Notes)
Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Israel.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: census, prophet, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

(Go back to: Ezekiel 48:27; 48:28; 48:34)
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:
A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

• A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
• To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
• A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
• The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

• Acts 09:24
• Acts 10:18
• Deuteronomy 21:18-19
• Genesis 19:01
• Genesis 24:60
• Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: Ezekiel 47:18)
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: Ezekiel 44:18)
glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s glory if you believe in me?”

Word Data:


God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”

NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** God made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** “I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you.”
- **09:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!”
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **28:01** “There is only one who is good, and that is God.”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **50:16** But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a “carved image” or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false gods.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 8 General Notes)
gold, golden

Definition:
Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling.
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:
- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:19; 16:13; 27:22; 28:4; 28:13; 38:13)
**good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best**

**Definition:**

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
- 01:11 God plantedâ€¦ the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.”
- 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
**28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**'? There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:8; 18:18; 20:25; 24:4; 34:14; 34:18; 36:31)
govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:
A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:
- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezekiel 23:6; 23:12; 23:23)
grain offering

Definition:
A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: Ezekiel 44:29; 45:17; 45:24; 46:5; 46:7; 46:11; 46:14; 46:15; 46:20)
grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 36:29)
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:
The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 32:04 The man lived among the tombs in the area.
- 37:06 Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the tomb. Come and see.”
- 37:07 The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- 40:09 Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a tomb cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the tomb to block the opening.
- 41:04 He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the tomb and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the tomb were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- 41:05 When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the tomb and see.” The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

groan, groans, groanings

Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as, “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: cry)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:02
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:02
- Psalms 032:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 21:6; 21:7)
hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

hang, hung

Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a "tree"), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by "hanging" in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

(Back to: Ezekiel 15:3; 27:10; 27:11)
**head**

**Definition:**

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: grain)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

**Word Data:**


heart

Definition:
The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

• The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
• The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
• In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

• For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
• The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
• The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:22-24
• 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
• 1 Thessalonians 04:17
• Deuteronomy 09:01
• Ephesians 06:9
• Genesis 01:01
• Genesis 07:11
• John 03:12
• John 03:27
• Matthew 05:18
• Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 04:02 They even began building a tall tower to reach heaven.
• 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called “manna.”
• 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
• 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
• 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
• 42:11 Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:1; 8:3; 29:5; 31:6; 31:13; 32:4; 32:7; 32:8; 38:20)
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it *holy*, because on this day he rested from his work.
• **09:12** “You are standing on *holy* ground.”
• **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a *holy* nation.”
• **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day *holy*. ”
• **22:05** “So the baby will be *holy*, the Son of God.”
• **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is *holy* and that honors him.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:13; 16:19; 20:6; 20:15; 27:17)
honor

Definition:
The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 22:25)
**hope, hoped**

**Definition:**

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ezekiel 19:5; 37:11)
horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:
A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:
- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:15; 23:6; 23:12; 23:20; 23:23; 26:7; 26:10; 26:11; 27:14; 38:4; 38:15; 39:20)
horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, horse)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: Ezekiel 38:4)
house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel's descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh's temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

**Inherit, Inheritance, Heir**

**Definition:**

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **35:03** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

iniquity

Definition:
The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means “he grabs the heel” which is an expression meaning “he deceives.” As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to “Israel,” which means “he struggles with God.”
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 07:01 As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau. Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- 07:07 Jacob lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- 07:08 After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- 07:10 The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.
- 08:01 Many years later, when Jacob was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: Ezekiel 20:5; 39:25)
Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- 09:03 The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- 09:05 A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- 10:01 They said, “This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:09 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished Israel again for worshiping idols.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:05 David conquered Jerusalem and made it his capital city.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:02 After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419
Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:02 The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the Promised Land.
- 15:03 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- 19:14 Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the Jordan River.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: Ezekiel 47:18)
Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:02 Joseph’s brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- 08:04 The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt.
- 08:05 Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- 08:07 God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- 08:09 Joseph told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- 09:02 The Egyptians no longer remembered Joseph and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: Ezekiel 37:19; 47:13; 48:32)
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
• **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
• **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:12; 25:6; 36:5)
Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: Ezekiel 9:9; 37:16)
Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2453

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:6; 8:1; 8:17; 21:20; 25:3; 25:8; 25:12; 27:17; 37:19; 48:7; 48:8; 48:22; 48:31)
**judge, judgment**

**Definition:**

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **50:14** But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

**Definition:**

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.”
  (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 44:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:7; 1:23)
**king, kingdom, kingship**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as "supreme chief" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no king, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a king like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king's territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God's reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God's kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the kingdom of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:14; 29:14; 37:22)
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:
The term “know” and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:


lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 05:07 As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?”
- 11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect lamb or goat and kill it.
- 24:06 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”
- 45:08 He read, “They led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word.
- 48:08 When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a lamb for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- 48:09 When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect lamb and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Lamb, Lamb of God

Word Data:

• Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: Ezekiel 46:4; 46:6)
law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will

- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\n
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\n
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.\n
- 16:01 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God’s laws.\n
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\n
- 27:01 Jesus answered, “What is written in God’s law?”\n
1633 / 1769
• **28:01** Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

*(Go back to: Ezekiel 22:26; 43:11; 43:12; 44:5; 44:24)*
Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

• King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
• Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
• The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cedar, cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 04:32-34
• 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
• Deuteronomy 01:7-8
• Psalms 029:3-5
• Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:3)
Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: Ezekiel 40:46; 43:19; 44:10; 44:15; 45:5; 48:11; 48:12; 48:13; 48:22; 48:31)
life, live, living, alive

Definition:
The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives' could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] life he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **35:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life.”
- **44:05** “You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

lion, lioness

Definition:
A lion is a large, cat-like, animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

• Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
• Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
• Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
• When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
• Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
• 1 Kings 07:29
• Proverbs 19:12
• Psalms 017:12
• Revelation 05:05

Word Data:

• Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:10; 10:14)
**Definition:**
In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**
- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord's favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"**
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:6)
love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:33; 16:36; 16:37; 23:5; 23:9; 23:22)
messenger

Facts:
The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:15; 23:16; 23:40; 30:9)
might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:24; 30:22; 32:12; 32:21; 32:27; 34:16; 39:18; 39:20)
**miracle, wonder, sign**

**Definition:**
A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God's power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 16:08 Gideon asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- 19:14 God did many miracles through Elisha.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
• **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ezekiel 12:6; 12:11)
Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

• In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
• Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

• Genesis 19:37
• Genesis 36:34-36
• Ruth 01:1-2
• Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: Ezekiel 25:8; 25:9)
mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:
The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:12; 7:27; 31:15)
name

Definition:
The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

• A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
• In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
• Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
• Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
• The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
• If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
• The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
• In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonjews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
• 2 Chronicles 15:06
• 2 Kings 17:11-12
• Acts 02:05
• Acts 13:19
• Acts 17:26
• Acts 26:04
• Daniel 03:04
• Genesis 10:2-5
• Genesis 27:29
• Genesis 35:11
• Genesis 49:10
• Luke 07:05
• Mark 13:7-8
• Matthew 21:43
• Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:
Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar’s leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the “Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar’s dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:02
- Daniel 04:04
- Ezekiel 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:06 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- 20:06 The king of Judah agreed to be Nebuchadnezzar’s servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- 20:08 To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar’s soldiers killed the king’s sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- 20:09 Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: Ezekiel 26:7; 29:18; 30:10)
Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:09
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

(Go back to: Ezekiel 20:47)
new moon

Definition:
The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

• In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
• The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram's horn.
• The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, earth, festival, horn, sheep)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 23:31
• 1 Samuel 20:05
• 2 Kings 04:23-24
• Ezekiel 45:16-17
• Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: Ezekiel 46:1; 46:6)
noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:23; 32:18)
oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:
The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:8; 17:13; 21:23)
oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

**ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs**

**Definition:**

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: Ezekiel 21:27)
Passover

Facts:
The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 12:14 God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the Passover every year.
- 38:01 Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- 38:04 Jesus celebrated the Passover with his disciples.
- 48:09 When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the Passover.
- 48:10 Jesus is our Passover Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the Passover celebration.

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: Ezekiel 45:21)
peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:25; 13:10; 13:16; 34:25; 37:26)
people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God's people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: Ezekiel 34 General Notes)
people, people group,

Definition:
The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:02 God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. what follows is
- 21:02 God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the people groups of the world.
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

### Word Data:


perish

Definition:
The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or “cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:26; 19:5; 26:17)
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment.”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or persecution, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: Ezekiel 35:6)
Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20
- Daniel 10:13
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

(Go back to: Ezekiel 27:10; 38:5)
Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:27; 16:57; 25:15; 25:16)
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:02 He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- 30:01 Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 45:06 But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 45:07 He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 46:10 Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
• 47:14 Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

• 50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:1; 16:6; 16:8; 20:37; 37:2; 39:15; 46:21; 47:3; 47:4)
priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The “priesthood” was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The “priesthood” was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our “great high priest” who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a “priest” who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “priest” could be translated as “sacrifice person” or “God's intermediary” or “sacrificial mediator” or “person God appoints to represent him.”
- The translation of “priest” should be different from the translation of “mediator.”
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like “Israelite priest” or “Jewish priest” or “Yahweh's priest” or “priest of Baal” to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate “priest” should be different from the terms for “chief priest” and “high priest” and “Levite” and “prophet.”

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:07 “Melchizedek, the priest of God Most High”
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was
sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

- **19:07** So the priests of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite priest was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king's son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:


profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

promise, promised

Definition:
When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:
- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- 03:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise.
- 05:04 “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise.”
- 08:15 The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
- 50:01 Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: Ezekiel 29 General Notes; Notes)
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophecy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:01 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them prophets. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- 19:06 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
• 19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.
• 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
• 43:05 “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
• 43:07 “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
• 48:12 Moses was a great prophet who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1 General Notes; Notes; 2:5; 4:7; 6:2; Notes; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:9; 13:16; 13:17; 14:4; 14:7; 14:9; 14:10; 20:46; 21:2; 22:25; Notes; 25:2; Notes; Notes; Notes; 28:21; Notes; 29:2; Notes; Notes; 33:33; 35:2; 37:7; 37:10; 38:2; 38:17)
prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

• The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
• In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
• A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
• The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
• Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
• The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
• “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
• Deuteronomy 23:06
• Job 36:11
• Leviticus 25:26-28
• Psalms 001:3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:13; 17:9; 26:12; 28:4; 28:5; 29:18; 32:31; 37:10; 38:4)
prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:
The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(Go back to: Ezekiel 6:9; 16:30; 16:33; 16:34; 16:35; 20:30; 23:3; 23:19; 23:30; 23:43; 23:44)
prostrate, worship

Definition:
To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship’ only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of worship.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:16; 46:2; 46:3)
proud, pride, prideful

Definition:
The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very proud, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 24:9; 31:4)
provoke, provoked, provocation

Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

(Go back to: Ezekiel 35:12)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:
To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

• In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
• The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
• In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
• The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:
• The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
• A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
• The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
• Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:
• 1 Timothy 01:05
• Exodus 31:6-9
• Hebrews 09:13-15
• James 04:08
• Luke 02:22
• Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(Go back to: Ezekiel 27:7)
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:14 The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also raise him from the dead.
41:05 “Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would!”

43:07 “Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’ We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

44:05 “You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”

44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

48:04 This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.

49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

49:12 You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 23:22)
rebels, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebels” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebels” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebels” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebels” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebels” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebels” or “rebels” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Samuel 20:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:14 After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had rebelled against God were dead.
- 18:07 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam.
- 18:09 Jeroboam rebelled against God and caused the people to sin.
- 18:13 Most of the people of Judah also rebelled against God and worshiped other gods.
- 20:07 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon.
- 45:03 Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and rebellious people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:3; 17:15)
redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: Ezekiel 11:15)
reign, rule

Definition:
The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:16)
**remnant**

**Definition:**

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:10; 9:8; 11:13; 25:16; 36:5)
repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:02 After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites repent and asked God to rescue them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
- 19:18 They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not repent.
- 24:02 Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins.”
- 44:05 “So now, repent and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: Ezekiel 33 General Notes)
report, reported, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don't talk about this with anyone” or “Don't tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:18; 33:8; 33:13; 36:20)
rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:13; 16:42; 21:17; 24:13; 37:1; 40:2)
restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

• When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
• A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
• If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
• Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
• When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
• Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

• 2 Kings 05:10
• Acts 03:21
• Acts 15:15-18
• Isaiah 49:5-6
• Jeremiah 15:19-21
• Lamentations 05:22
• Leviticus 06:5-7
• Luke 19:08
• Matthew 12:13
• Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

**return**

**Definition:**

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Joseph (OT), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

(Go back to: Ezekiel 48:6; 48:7; 48:31)
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:
The term “righteousness” refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:
- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God's laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:


robe, robed

Definition:
A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 9:11)
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 19:14)
Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

• After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
• The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
• Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
• Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

• This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
• Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
• Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

• 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
• Acts 13:26-27
• Exodus 31:14
• Isaiah 56:6-7
• Lamentations 02:06
• Leviticus 19:03
• Luke 13:14
• Mark 02:27
• Matthew 12:02
• Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 13:05 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
• 26:02 Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the Sabbath, he went to the place of worship.
• 41:03 The day after Jesus was buried was a Sabbath day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: Ezekiel 20:12; 20:13; 20:16; 20:20; 20:21; 20:24; 22:8; 23:38; 44:24; 46:1; 46:3; 46:4; 46:12)
sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:18; 27:31)
**sacrifice, sacrifices, offering**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

**sacrifice**

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

**offering**

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice. God was happy with the sacrifice and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac.
• **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a *sacrifice* to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was *sacrificed* covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.

• **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him *sacrifices*.

• **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only *sacrifice* that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.

• **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a *sacrifice* to die in our place.

• **49:11** Because Jesus *sacrificed* himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:22; 20:28; 20:40; 34:3; 39:17; 39:19; 44:30; 45:1; 45:6; 45:7; 45:15; 46:24; 48:10; 48:18; 48:20; 48:21)*
Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a Samaritan. (Samaritans were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. Samaritans and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The Samaritan then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:46; 16:53; 23:4; 23:33)
sanctuary

Definition:

The term "sanctuary" literally means "holy place" and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sanctuary" was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the "holy place" and "most holy place" were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a "sanctuary" or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of "holy place" or "place that is set apart."
- Depending on the context, the term "sanctuary" could be translated as "holy place" or "sacred building" or "God's holy dwelling place" or "holy place of protection" or "sacred place of safety."
- The phrase "shekel of the sanctuary" could be translated as "kind of shekel given for the tabernacle" or "shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple."
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple, )

Bible References:

- Amos 07:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:03
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:01
- Psalms 078:69

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4720, H6944, G39

(Go back to: Ezekiel 44:1; 44:5; 45:3; 45:4; 45:18; 47:12; 48:8)
save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:
The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm's way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God's rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved.**”
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:18; 33:5)
scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: Ezekiel 9:2; 9:3)
seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman's “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17:5)
seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:18; 3:20; 7:25; 7:26; 14:3; 14:7; 20:1; 20:3; 20:31; 20:40; 22:30; 26:21; 33:6; 33:8; 34:4; 34:6; 34:8; 34:16; 36:37)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- **29:03** “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

set apart

Definition:
The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God's will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: holy, sanctify, appoint)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when they have done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
• Psalms 006:8-10
• Psalms 123:03
• 1 Timothy 05:7-8
• 1 Timothy 06:13-14
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Job 16:9-10
• Proverbs 18:03

**Word Data:**


sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

• Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  ◦ The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  ◦ God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  ◦ In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.

• Signs can reveal or point to something:
  ◦ An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  ◦ Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

• Signs can prove that something is true:
  ◦ The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  ◦ The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
• To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
• In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

• Acts 02:18-19
• Exodus 04:8-9
• Exodus 31:12-15
• Genesis 01:14
• Genesis 09:12
• John 02:18
• Luke 02:12
• Mark 08:12
• Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:


(See back to: Ezekiel 4:3)
silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God's will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”

13:12 God was very angry with them because of their sin and planned to destroy them.

20:01 The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both sinned against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.

21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin.

35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.

43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”

48:08 We all deserve to die for our sins!

49:17 Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to sin. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against sin.

Word Data:


slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 16:21)
son

Definition:
The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:
- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- 04:09 God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
- 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- 05:08 When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
- 09:07 When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- 11:06 God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.
- 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- 26:04 “Is this the son of Joseph?â€” they said.
Word Data:


spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a spiritual descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: Ezekiel 11:12; 16:27; 18:9; 20:25; 23:45; 36:27; 45:9; 45:14)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

sword, swordsmen

Definition:
A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

• In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
• Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
• Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
• Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions
• A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
• One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
• Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
• If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
• A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:
• Acts 12:02
• Genesis 27:40
• Genesis 34:25
• Luke 02:33-35
• Luke 21:24
• Matthew 10:34
• Matthew 26:55
• Revelation 01:16

Word Data:
• Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God's holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple. God came and was present in the Temple, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city of the city and the Temple.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the Temple was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485
**testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness**

**Definition:**

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: Ezekiel 14:4; 14:7)
threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: gate, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Isaiah 06:04
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: Ezekiel 41:16)
throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

• A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
• The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
• In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
• Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

• Colossians 01:15-17
• Genesis 41:40
• Luke 01:32
• Luke 22:30
• Matthew 05:34
• Matthew 19:28
• Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:26; 10:1; 26:16; 43:7)
time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

• In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
• In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
• “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
• To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
• Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
• The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

• Acts 01:07
• Daniel 12:1-2
• Mark 11:11
• Matthew 08:29
• Psalms 068:28-29
• Revelation 14:15

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 7:7; 7:12)
**transgress, transgression**

**Definition:**

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word "trespass," but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: Ezekiel 14:13; 15:8; 17:20; 20:27; 39:26)

1738 / 1769
tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezekiel 26:10; 26:15; 27:28; 31:16)
trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, sin, transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: Ezekiel 18:24)
tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:
The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: Ezekiel 33:3; 33:4; 33:5; 33:6)
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:06 Then Jesus told a story about people who trusted in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: Ezekiel 11 General Notes)
Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, cedar, Israel, the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: Ezekiel 26:2; 26:3; 26:4; 26:7; 27:2; 27:3; 27:8; 28:2; 28:12; 29:18)
unleavened bread

Definition:
The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:
- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: Ezekiel 45:21)
vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: Ezekiel 15:2; 15:6; 17:7)
**vineyard**

**Definition:**
A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: *Metaphor*)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, *Israel*, *vine*)

**Bible References:**
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

**Word Data:**
- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: *Ezekiel 28:26*)
**virgin, virginity**

**Definition:**

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, “How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?”
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: Ezekiel 44:22)
**voice**

**Definition:**

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: synecdoche)
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: metaphor)

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor.)

**Bible References:**

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(See back to: Ezekiel 27:30)
**VOW**

**Definition:**

A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: promise, oath)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(Go back to: Ezekiel 17 General Notes)
walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God's commands or God's ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God's commands” could be translated by “live by God's commands” or “obey God's commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:


**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

**Word Data:**


wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:9; 45:13)
wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: Ezekiel 27:18; 44:21)
**winnow, sift**

**Definition:**

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chaff, grain)

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 21:10
- Matthew 03:12
- Proverbs 20:08
- Ruth 03:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G4425, G4617

(Go back to: Ezekiel 5:2; 5:12; 12:14)
wise men, advisor

Definition:
The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

• Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
• The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
• Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

• The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
• When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
• Daniel 02:1-2
• Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(Go back to: Ezekiel 27:8; 28:3)
wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's “wrath,” make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The “wrath of God” can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include “intense anger” or “righteous judgment” or “anger.”
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:


Yahweh

Facts:
The term “Yahweh” is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

• Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
• The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
• The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
• In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

• “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
• This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
• Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
• It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
• Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 21:20
• 1 Samuel 16:07
• Daniel 09:03
• Ezekiel 17:24
• Genesis 02:04
• Genesis 04:3-5
• Genesis 28:13
• Hosea 11:12
• Isaiah 10:04
• Isaiah 38:08
• Job 12:10
• Joshua 01:09
• Lamentations 01:05
• Leviticus 25:35
• Malachi 03:04
• Micah 02:05
• Micah 06:05
• Numbers 08:11

1758 / 1769
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”

- **13:05** “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”

- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.

- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3050, H3068, H3069
zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: Ezekiel 31:9; 39:25)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Karen Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota
Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Broucher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreicher
Paul Holloway

1765 / 1769
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

1768 / 1769
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community